Lecture Notes on

Undergraduate Physics

Kevin Zhou
`kzhou7@gmail.com`

These notes review the undergraduate physics curriculum, with an emphasis on quantum mechanics. They cover, essentially, the material that every working physicist should know. The notes are not self-contained, but rather assume everything in the high school Physics Olympiad syllabus as prerequisite knowledge. The primary sources were:

- David Tong's Classical Dynamics lecture notes. A friendly set of notes that covers Lagrangian and Hamiltonian mechanics with neat applications, such as the gauge theory of a falling cat.

- Arnold, *Mathematical Methods of Classical Mechanics*. The classic advanced mechanics book. The first half of the book covers Lagrangian mechanics compactly, with nice and tricky problems, while the second half covers Hamiltonian mechanics geometrically.

- Griffiths, *Introduction to Electrodynamics*. This is the definitive introduction to undergraduate electromagnetism: it's clear, comprehensive, and comes with great problems. There are also many neat references to the literature, especially in the 4th edition. As you'll see from following them, many subtle issues in classical electromagnetism were worked out by Griffiths himself! The only flaw of the book is that it largely sticks with traditional vector notation, even when index notation is clearer and faster. For an introduction to vector calculus that uses index notation, which is an essential tool in physics, see David Tong's Vector Calculus lecture notes.

- David Tong's Electrodynamics lecture notes. Briefly covers electromagnetism at the same level as Griffiths, but freely uses index notation to simplify some tricky calculations, and perform some essential derivations that Griffiths avoids.

- David Tong's Statistical Mechanics lecture notes. Has an especially good discussion of phase transitions, which leads in well to a further course on statistical field theory.

- Blundell and Blundell, *Concepts in Thermal Physics*. A good first statistical mechanics book filled with applications, briefly touching on information theory, non-equilibrium thermodynamics, the Earth's atmosphere, and much more.

- Sethna, *Entropy, Order Parameters, and Complexity*. An entertaining second statistical mechanics book that touches on many foundational issues and modern topics. The exposition itself is very brief, but supplemented with extensive and useful exercises.

- Lautrup, *Physics of Continuous Matter*. A introduction to fluid dynamics and solids, with emphasis on real-world examples drawn from fields ranging from astrophysics to aerodynamics, and clear conceptual discussion.

- David Tong's Applications of Quantum Mechanics lecture notes. A conversational set of notes, with a focus on solid state physics. Also contains a nice section on quantum foundations.

- Griffiths, *Introduction to Quantum Mechanics*. This is the easiest book to start, but in college, I disliked it. The text is very chatty, full of distracting parentheticals and footnotes, but most of them are about the trivial details of calculations. The main purpose of the book seems to be to ensure that students are absolutely comfortable with the mechanics of solving the time-independent Schrodinger equation, but that means there's little coverage of the conceptual, historical, experimental, or mathematical background. But in retrospect, I think the book is very valuable because of its problems, which guide readers through important results, including some from the research literature and real-world applications. The 3rd edition also fixes some of the book's glaring omissions, such as by adding a chapter on symmetries.

- Robert Littlejon's Physics 221 notes. An exceptionally clear set of graduate-level quantum mechanics notes, with a focus on atomic physics: you read it and immediately understand the world better than before. Complex material is developed elegantly, often in a cleaner and more rigorous way than in standard textbooks. These notes were developed as a replacement for Sakurai's *Modern Quantum Mechanics*, which becomes rather unclear in the latter half, and thus covers roughly the same topics. Much of my notes are just an imperfect summary of Littlejon's notes.

The most recent version is here; please report any errors found to kzhou7@gmail.com.

Contents

1 Classical Mechanics

1.1 Lagrangian Formalism

We begin by carefully considering generalized coordinates.

- Consider a system with Cartesian coordinates x_A. Hamilton's principle, also called the principle of least action, states that solutions of the equations of motion are critical points of the action $S = \int L \, dt$. Then we have the Euler–Lagrange equation

$$\frac{d}{dt}\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{x}} = \frac{\partial L}{\partial x}$$

  where we have dropped indices for simplicity. Here, we have $L = L(x, \dot{x})$ and the partial derivative is defined by holding all other arguments of the function constant.

- It follows directly from the chain rule that the Euler–Lagrange equations are preserved by any invertible coordinate change, to generalized coordinates $q_a = q_a(x_A)$, because the action is a property of a path and hence is extremized regardless of the coordinates used to describe the path. The ability to use any generalized coordinates we want is a key practical advantage of Lagrangian mechanics over Newtonian mechanics.

- It is a little less obvious this holds for time-dependent transformations $q_a = q_a(x_A, t)$, so we will prove this explicitly. Again dropping indices,

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial q} = \frac{\partial L}{\partial x}\frac{\partial x}{\partial q} + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{x}}\frac{\partial \dot{x}}{\partial q}$$

  where we have $\dot{q} = \dot{q}(x, \dot{x}, t)$ and hence by invertibility $x = x(q, t)$ and $\dot{x} = \dot{x}(q, \dot{q}, t)$, and

$$\dot{x} = \frac{\partial x}{\partial q}\dot{q} + \frac{\partial x}{\partial t}.$$

  This yields the 'cancellation of dots' identity

$$\frac{\partial \dot{x}}{\partial \dot{q}} = \frac{\partial x}{\partial q}.$$

- As for the other side of the Euler–Lagrange equation, note that

$$\frac{d}{dt}\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} = \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{x}}\frac{\partial \dot{x}}{\partial \dot{q}}\right) = \frac{\partial L}{\partial x}\frac{\partial x}{\partial q} + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{x}}\frac{d}{dt}\frac{\partial x}{\partial q}$$

  where, in the first step, we used $\partial x/\partial \dot{q} = 0$ since x is not a function of $\dot{q}$, and in the second step, we used cancellation of dots and the Euler–Lagrange equation.

- To finish the derivation, we note that

$$\frac{d}{dt}\frac{\partial q}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial \dot{q}}{\partial x}$$

  which may be shown by direct expansion.

- It is a bit confusing why these partial derivatives are allowed. The point is that we are working on the tangent bundle of some manifold, where the position and velocity are independent. They are only related once we evaluate quantities on a specific path $x(t)$. All total time derivatives here implicitly refer to such a path.

Next we show that if constraints exist, we can work in a reduced set of generalized coordinates.

- A holonomic constraint is a relationship of the form

$$f_\alpha(x_A, t) = 0$$

which must hold on all physical paths. Holonomic constraints are useful because each one can be used to eliminate a generalized coordinate; note that inequalities are not holonomic.

- Velocity-dependent constraints are holonomic if they can be "integrated". For example, consider a ball rolling without slipping. In one dimension, this is holonomic, since $v = R\dot\theta$. In two dimensions, it's possible to roll the ball in a loop and have it come back in a different orientation. Formally, a velocity constraint is holonomic if there is no nontrivial holonomy.

- To find the equations of motion, we use the Lagrangian

$$L' = L(x^A, \dot{x}^A) + \lambda_\alpha f_\alpha(x^A, t).$$

We think of the λ_α as additional, independent coordinates; then the Euler–Lagrange equation $\partial L'/\partial \lambda_\alpha = 0$ reproduces the constraint. The Euler–Lagrange equations for the x^A now have constraint forces equal to the Lagrange multipliers.

- Now we switch coordinates from x^A, λ_α to $q^a, f_\alpha, \lambda_\alpha$, continuing to use the Lagrangian L'. The Euler–Lagrange equations are simply

$$\frac{d}{dt}\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}^a} - \frac{\partial L}{\partial q_i} = \frac{\partial}{\partial q^a}\lambda_\alpha f_\alpha = 0, \quad \lambda_\alpha = f_\alpha = 0.$$

Thus, in these generalized coordinates, the constraint forces have disappeared. We may restrict to the coordinates q^a and use the original Lagrangian L. Note that in such an approach, we cannot solve for the values of the constraint forces.

- In problems with symmetry, there will be conserved quantities, which may be formally written as constraints on the positions and velocities. However, it's important to remember that they are not genuine constraints, because they only hold on-shell. Treating a conserved quantity as a constraint and using the procedure above will give incorrect results.

- We may think of the coordinates q^a as contravariant under changes of coordinates. Then the conjugate momenta are covariant, so the quantity $p_i\dot{q}^i$ is invariant. Similarly, the differential form $p_i dq^i$ is invariant.

- We say a Lagrangian is regular if

$$\det \frac{\partial^2 L}{\partial \dot{q}_i \partial \dot{q}_j} \neq 0.$$

In this case, the equation of motion can be solved for $\ddot{q}$. We'll mostly deal with regular Lagrangians, but irregular ones can appear in relativistic particle mechanics.

Example. Purely kinetic Lagrangians. Let's consider free particles propagating on a curved space. The Lagrangian takes the form

$$L = \frac{1}{2}g_{ab}(q_c)\dot{q}^a\dot{q}^b$$

for a general metric g_{ab}, and the equation of motion is the so-called geodesic equation

$$\ddot{q}^a + \Gamma^a_{bc}\dot{q}^b\dot{q}^c = 0, \quad \Gamma^a_{bc} = \frac{1}{2}g^{ad}\left(\partial_c g_{bd} + \partial_b g_{cd} - \partial_d g_{bc}\right)$$

where we have assumed the metric is invertible, and symmetrized the geodesic coefficients. In general relativity a very similar result applies, except that the metric and velocities include a time component. The solutions, also called geodesics, have stationary proper time.

Example. A particle in an electromagnetic field. The Lagrangian is

$$L = \frac{1}{2}m\dot{\mathbf{r}}^2 - e(\phi - \dot{\mathbf{r}}\cdot\mathbf{A}).$$

With a little index manipulation, this reproduces the Lorentz force law, with

$$\mathbf{B} = \nabla\times\mathbf{A}, \quad \mathbf{E} = -\nabla\phi - \frac{\partial\mathbf{A}}{\partial t}.$$

The momentum conjugate to $\mathbf{r}$ is

$$\mathbf{p} = \frac{\partial L}{\partial\dot{\mathbf{r}}} = m\dot{\mathbf{r}} + e\mathbf{A}$$

and is called the canonical momentum, in contrast to the kinetic momentum $m\dot{\mathbf{r}}$. The canonical momentum is what becomes the gradient operator in quantum mechanics, but it is not gauge invariant; instead the kinetic momentum is. The switch from partial to covariant derivatives in gauge theory is analogous to the switch from canonical to kinetic momentum.

Example. A particle in a rotating frame. For simplicity, work in two dimensions, where

$$L = \frac{1}{2}m(\dot{r}^2 + r^2\dot{\theta}^2).$$

In Lagrangian mechanics, transforming into the rotating frame is just a matter of changing generalized coordinates. We set $\phi = \theta - \omega t$ and reexpress the Lagrangian in terms of r and ϕ, giving

$$L = \frac{1}{2}m(\dot{r}^2 + r^2\dot{\phi}^2) + mr^2\omega\dot{\phi} + \frac{1}{2}mr^2\omega^2.$$

The first term is the same as before, the second term represents the Coriolis force, and the final term represents the centrifugal force. We can rewrite the second term as $m\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{A}$ where $\mathbf{A} = \omega r\,\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$. This is simply the term you would add for a uniform magnetic field $2\boldsymbol{\omega}$ for a particle with $q = m$, which makes sense because the Coriolis and magnetic forces are so similar in form.

Example. Small oscillations with n degrees of freedom. Let's start with the most general Lagrangian up to second order in $\mathbf{q}$ and $\dot{\mathbf{q}}$. We can throw away constant terms, since they don't do anything, and $\dot{q}_i$ terms, because they are total derivatives and don't affect the equations of motion. If we further suppose that $\mathbf{q} = 0$ is an equilibrium point, then we rule out q_i terms as well. Finally, $q_i\dot{q}_j$ terms represent velocity-dependent forces, and for simplicity we'll throw those out too. Then we arrive at the Lagrangian

$$L = \frac{1}{2}\dot{\mathbf{q}}^T T\dot{\mathbf{q}} - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{q}^T V\mathbf{q}.$$

Here, T and V can be taken symmetric with no loss of generality. The kinetic energy should always be positive, so we further assume T is positive definite. Now the Euler–Lagrange equation is

$$\ddot{\mathbf{q}} = T^{-1}V\mathbf{q}$$

where the inverse exists since T is positive definite. The general solution to this linear equation of motion can be found by superposing normal modes. Specifically, if we let $\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{q}_0 e^{i\omega t}$, then

$$(T^{-1}V + \omega^2)\mathbf{q}_0 = 0.$$

Thus, the normal modes correspond to the eigenvectors of $T^{-1}V$. Since this matrix is symmetric, there is a complete basis of normal modes, and all of the ω^2 are real, so ω is either real (representing oscillations) or pure imaginary (representing exponential growth from an instability). We can avoid the latter type of solution by demanding that V also be positive definite.

To make the simplicity of the solutions more manifest, we may switch to "normal coordinates". Defining $\mathbf{q} = A\boldsymbol{\xi}$, the Lagrangian becomes

$$L = \frac{1}{2}\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}^T(A^TTA)\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} - \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\xi}^T(A^TVA)\boldsymbol{\xi}.$$

It is possible to simultaneously diagonalize T and V. To see this, let $A = BC$ where C is orthogonal. Then B can be chosen so that $B^TTB = I$, by constructing B out of an orthogonal matrix that diagonalizes T, and a diagonal matrix that scales its diagonal entries to one. We then have

$$A^TTA = I, \quad A^TVA = C^T(B^TVB)C.$$

Now B^TVB is just another symmetric matrix, so C can be chosen to diagonalize it. Then

$$L = \frac{1}{2}\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}^T\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} - \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\xi}^TW\boldsymbol{\xi}$$

where W is the diagonal matrix with elements ω_i^2. To relate this to the previous paragraph, note that $T^{-1}VA = AW$, so that the columns of A contain the normal modes introduced above.

Example. A free relativistic particle. Setting $c = 1$, it's straightforward to check that

$$L = -m\sqrt{1 - v^2}$$

yields the correct momenta $\mathbf{p} = \gamma m\mathbf{v}$, and the Euler–Lagrange equations say that $\mathbf{p}$ is constant. Furthermore, expanding the square root at leading order gives $L = -m + mv^2/2 + O(v^4)$, which is the usual free particle Lagrangian up to a constant.

The deeper reason that this is the correct Lagrangian is that it makes the action Lorentz invariant,

$$S = \int L\,dt = -m\int d\tau.$$

Thus, the principle of least action corresponds to the maximization of proper time. In relativity, it's really the action that's fundamental; the Lagrangian follows from choosing a particular parametrization of the action integral. Thus, we can derive the equations of motion in a more covariant way by choosing a general parametrization $x^\mu(\lambda)$ of the particle's path, and defining

$$S = \int L(x^\mu(\lambda), \dot{x}^\mu(\lambda))\,d\lambda$$

where a dot denotes a derivative with respect to λ. Since the action is reparametrization invariant, the Lagrangian must be a homogeneous function of degree 1 with respect to $\dot{x}^\mu(\lambda)$. Thus, Euler's theorem on homogeneous functions implies the restriction

$$\dot{x}^\mu \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{x}^\mu} - L = 0.$$

There are four Euler–Lagrange equations,

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial x^\mu} - \frac{d}{d\lambda} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{x}^\mu} = 0.$$

However, only three are independent, because for any path $x^\mu(\lambda)$,

$$\dot{x}^\mu \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial x^\mu} - \frac{d}{d\lambda} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{x}^\mu} \right) = \dot{x}^\mu \frac{\partial L}{\partial x^\mu} - \frac{d}{d\lambda} \left(\dot{x}^\mu \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{x}^\mu} \right) + \frac{d\dot{x}^\mu}{d\lambda} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{x}^\mu}$$

$$= \frac{d}{d\lambda} \left(L - \dot{x}^\mu \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{x}^\mu} \right)$$

by the restriction above. In the case of the free particle, we have

$$L = -m \sqrt{-\eta_{\mu\nu} \dot{x}^\mu \dot{x}^\nu}$$

and the corresponding conserved momenta are $m\dot{x}^\mu / \sqrt{-\eta_{\mu\nu} \dot{x}^\mu \dot{x}^\nu}$. As expected, one of the equations is redundant since the four-momentum has fixed norm. We recover our earlier Lagrangian by setting $\lambda = t$. Of course, given that this example is somewhat trivial, there are many other ways of setting it up. For example, one can specialize to parametrizing by proper time, or introduce an einbein (discussed in the notes on String Theory), which has the benefit of removing the square root.

Note. How can we describe interacting relativistic particles? The first point to make is that, even for two particles, you can't simply add some potential term $V(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2)$. To see the problem, consider two identical charged particles approaching each other, with equal and opposite momenta. The particles repel by the Coulomb force, momentarily come to rest, and then move apart. Now, if you consider the same situation in a moving frame, the loss of simultaneity effect implies that one particle will decelerate before the other, so that four-momentum is not conserved during the process!

Elementary treatments of special relativity don't run into this problem because they only apply four-momentum conservation long before and after the process, neglecting what happens during the collision. For our purposes, it means we cannot have particles interacting at a distance in special relativity, a fact sometimes called the van Dam–Wigner no interaction theorem. We can only have contact interactions between particles, or local interactions between particles and fields. (Though, to be fair, even though there are various no-go theorems, you can still construct relativistic multiparticle dynamics if you give up some cherished properties, as described here.)

Here we will focus on the simpler task of coupling a particle to a background field. An obvious way is to just add on a potential energy term,

$$L = -m \sqrt{1 - v^2} - V(\mathbf{r}).$$

This is good enough for simple problems, like treating a relativistic particle in a weak gravitational or electric field, but it's not very satisfying because it's not Lorentz invariant; it only makes sense

in the rest frame of whatever is sourcing the field. There are essentially three ways to modify this to get a Lorentz invariant action. First, for a scalar field, we can set

$$S_0 = -\int d\tau \, (m + g\phi).$$

Second, we can extend the potential to a vector field, giving

$$S_1 = -m \int d\tau + e \int A_\mu \, dx^\mu$$

and yielding the theory of electromagnetism; parametrizing by time recovers the action given above. Finally, we can note that it would have been equivalent, at leading order, to pull the potential term inside the square root, giving

$$S = -m \int \sqrt{\left(1 + \frac{2V}{m}\right) dt^2 - d\mathbf{r}^2}.$$

The simplest covariant generalization of this action is to promote V to a tensor field, giving

$$S_2 = -m \int \sqrt{-g_{\mu\nu} dx^\mu dx^\nu}$$

for a general metric $g_{\mu\nu}$. This yields general relativity! In the nonrelativistic limit, $g_{\mu\nu} = \eta_{\mu\nu} + h_{\mu\nu}$ for small $h_{\mu\nu}$, and $h_{00}/2$ becomes the gravitational potential. In addition, the fact that the metric is inside the square root implies that there's no room to include a separate coupling constant for each kind of particle, which leads to the equivalence principle.

Note. Why couldn't gravity have been described by a vector field A_μ, like electromagnetism is? The fundamental reason is that electromagnetic fields are sourced by the current four-vector j^μ, which couples to the field as $A^\mu j_\mu$. By contrast, gravitational fields are sourced by stress-energy $T^{\mu\nu}$, which is rank 2 rather than rank 1.

In the nonrelativistic limit, most of the elements of the stress-energy tensor are negligible; all that matters is the matter current $j^\mu = T^{\mu 0} \approx (\rho, \rho\mathbf{v})$. In that case, one can build a theory of gravity in terms of vector fields called gravitoelectromagnetism, which is formally very similar to ordinary electromagnetism. It's not Lorentz invariant because its j^μ is not truly a four-vector, but it's a very useful approximation to general relativity in certain limits.

Note. More about the equations of motion. In the case of S_1, the simplest equations of motion follow from parametrizing by proper time and writing things in terms of the four-velocity $u^\mu = dx^\mu/d\tau$, giving four-force

$$f^\mu = m\frac{du^\mu}{d\tau} = eF^{\mu\nu} u_\nu.$$

If we wish to consider backreaction, i.e. the effect of the particle on the field, its current is

$$j^\mu(x) = e \int d\tau \, \frac{dx^\mu}{d\tau} \delta(x - x(\tau))$$

which goes into the right-hand side of Maxwell's equations as usual. As for S_2, the equation of motion is the geodesic equation shown above, though getting rid of the square root requires a trick

described in the notes on General Relativity. The odd one out is the scalar field action S_0, which is less familiar than the other two. The Euler–Lagrange equations for general parametrization are

$$\frac{d}{d\lambda}\left(\frac{(m+g\phi)\dot{x}^\mu}{\sqrt{-\eta_{\nu\rho}\dot{x}^\nu\dot{x}^\rho}}\right) = -g(\partial^\mu\phi)\sqrt{-\eta_{\nu\rho}\dot{x}^\nu\dot{x}^\rho}.$$

Again, the final result is simplest when parametrizing by proper time, giving

$$f^\mu = -\frac{g}{1+(g/m)\phi}(\partial^\mu\phi + u^\mu u^\nu\partial_\nu\phi).$$

The function of ϕ in the denominator is not particularly important, because we could have made it anything we wanted, by choosing a more general interaction term $-\int d\tau\, f(\phi)$. The tensor structure in parentheses ensures that $u_\mu f^\mu = 0$, so that the force doesn't change the rest mass of the particle. Historically, the first proposed relativistic theories of gravity were based on scalar fields, since they are the simplest possibility, but they were soon discarded because general relativity fit the data better. For more on this subject, see the notes on General Relativity.

1.2 Rigid Body Motion

We begin with the kinematics of rigid bodies.

- A rigid body is a collection of masses constrained so that $\|\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{r}_j\|$ is constant for all i and j. Then a rigid body has six degrees of freedom, from translations and rotations.

- If we fix a point to be the origin, we have only the rotational degrees of freedom. Define a fixed coordinate system $\{\widetilde{\mathbf{e}}_a\}$ as well as a moving body frame $\{\mathbf{e}_a(t)\}$ which moves with the body. Both sets of axes are orthogonal and thus related by an orthogonal matrix,

$$\mathbf{e}_a(t) = R_{ab}(t)\widetilde{e}_b(t), \quad R_{ab} = \mathbf{e}_a \cdot \widetilde{\mathbf{e}}_b.$$

  Since the body frame is specified by $R(t)$, the configuration space C of orientations is $SO(3)$.

- Every point $\mathbf{r}$ in the body can be expanded in the space frame or the body frame as

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \widetilde{r}_a(t)\widetilde{\mathbf{e}}_a = r_a\mathbf{e}_a(t).$$

  Note that the body frame changes over time as

$$\frac{d\mathbf{e}_a}{dt} = \frac{dR_{ab}}{dt}\widetilde{e}_b = \left(\frac{dR}{dt}R^{-1}\right)_{ab}\mathbf{e}_b$$

  This prompts us to define the matrix $\omega = \dot{R}R^{-1}$, so that $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_a = \omega_{ab}\mathbf{e}_b$.

- The matrix ω is antisymmetric, so we take the Hodge dual to get the angular velocity vector

$$\omega_a = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_{abc}\omega_{bc}, \quad \boldsymbol{\omega} = \omega_a\mathbf{e}_a.$$

  Inverting this relation, we have $\omega_a\epsilon_{abc} = \omega_{bc}$. Substituting into the above,

$$\frac{d\mathbf{e}_a}{dt} = -\epsilon_{abc}\omega_b\mathbf{e}_c = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_a$$

  where we used $(\mathbf{e}_a)_d = \delta_{ad}$.

- The above is just a special case of the formula

$$\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{r}$$

which can be derived from simple vector geometry. Using that picture, the physical interpretation of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ is $\hat{\mathbf{n}} \, d\phi/dt$, where $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ is the instantaneous axis of rotation and $d\phi/dt$ is the rate of rotation. Generally, both $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ and $d\phi/dt$ change with time.

Example. To get an explicit formula for $R(t)$, note that $\dot{R} = \omega R$. The naive solution is the exponential, but since ω doesn't commute with itself at different times, we must use the path ordered exponential,

$$R(t) = P \, \exp\left(\int_0^t \omega(t') dt' \right).$$

For example, the second-order term here is

$$\int_0^{t''} \left(\int_{t'}^t \omega(t'') \, dt'' \right) \omega(t') \, dt'$$

where the ω's are ordered from later to earlier. Then when we differentiate with respect to t, it only affects the dt'' integral, which pops out a factor of ω on the left as desired. This exponential operation relates rotations R in $SO(3)$ with infinitesimal rotations ω in $\mathfrak{so}(3)$.

We now turn from kinematics to dynamics.

- Using $\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{r}$, the kinetic energy is

$$T = \frac{1}{2} \sum m_i \mathbf{v}^2 = \frac{1}{2} \sum m_i \|\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{r}_i\|^2 = \frac{1}{2} \sum m_i \left(\omega^2 r_i^2 - (r_i \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega})^2 \right).$$

This implies that

$$T = \frac{1}{2} \omega_a I_{ab} \omega_b$$

where I_{ab} is the symmetric tensor

$$I_{ab} = \sum_i m_i \left(r_i^2 \delta_{ab} - (\mathbf{r}_i)_a (\mathbf{r}_i)_b \right)$$

called the inertia tensor. Note that since the components of ω are in the body frame, so are the components of I and $\mathbf{r}_i$ that appear above; hence the I_{ab} are constant.

- Explicitly, for a continuous rigid body with mass density $\rho(\mathbf{r})$, we have

$$I = \int d^3\mathbf{r} \, \rho(\mathbf{r}) \begin{pmatrix} y^2 + z^2 & -xy & -xz \\ -xy & x^2 + z^2 & -yz \\ -xz & -yz & x^2 + y^2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

- Since I is symmetric, we can rotate the body frame to diagonalize it. The eigenvectors are called the principal axes and the eigenvalues I_a are the principal moments of inertia. Since T is nonnegative, I is positive semidefinite, so $I_a \geq 0$.

- Parallel axis theorem states that if I_0 is the inertia tensor about the center of mass, the inertia tensor about the point $\mathbf{c}$ is

$$(I_{\mathbf{c}})_{ab} = (I_0)_{ab} + M(c^2 \delta_{ab} - \mathbf{c}_a \mathbf{c}_b).$$

The proof is similar to the two-dimensional parallel axis theorem, with contributions proportional to $\sum m_i \mathbf{r}_i$ vanishing. The extra contribution the inertia tensor we would get if the object's mass was entirely at the center of mass.

- Similarly, the translational and rotational motion of a free spinning body 'factorize'. If the center of mass position is $\mathbf{R}(t)$, then

$$T = \frac{1}{2} M \dot{\mathbf{R}}^2 + \frac{1}{2} \omega_a I_{ab} \omega_b.$$

This means we can indeed ignore the center of mass motion for dynamics.

- The angular momentum is

$$\mathbf{L} = \sum m_i \mathbf{r}_i \times \mathbf{v}_i = \sum m_i \mathbf{r}_i \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{r}_i) = \sum m_i (r_i^2 \boldsymbol{\omega} - (\boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot \mathbf{r}_i) \mathbf{r}_i).$$

We thus recognize

$$\mathbf{L} = I \boldsymbol{\omega}, \quad T = \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot \mathbf{L}.$$

For general I, the angular momentum and angular velocity are not parallel.

- To find the equation of motion, we use $d\mathbf{L}/dt$ in the center of mass frame, for

$$0 = \frac{dL_a}{dt} \mathbf{e}_a + L_a \frac{d\mathbf{e}_a}{dt} = \frac{dL_a}{dt} \mathbf{e}_a + L_a \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_a.$$

Dotting both sides by $\mathbf{e}_b$ gives $0 = \dot{L}_a + \epsilon_{aij} \omega_I L_j$. In the case of principle axes ($L_1 = I_1 \omega_1$),

$$I_1 \dot{\omega}_1 + \omega_2 \omega_3 (I_3 - I_2) = 0$$

along with cyclic permutations thereof. These are Euler's equations. In the case of a torque, the components of the torque (in the principle axis frame) appear on the right.

We now analyze the motion of free tops. We consider the time evolution of the vectors $\mathbf{L}$, $\boldsymbol{\omega}$, and $\mathbf{e}_3$. In the body frame, $\mathbf{e}_3$ is constant and points upward; in the space frame, $\mathbf{L}$ is constant, and for convenience we take it to point upward. In general, we know that $\mathbf{L}$ and $2T = \boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot \mathbf{L}$ are constant.

Example. A spherical top. In this trivial case, $\dot{\omega}_a = 0$, so $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ doesn't move in the body frame, nor does $\mathbf{L}$. In the space frame, $\mathbf{L}$ and $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ are again constant, and the axis $\mathbf{e}_3$ rotates about them. As a simple example, the motion of $\mathbf{e}_3$ looks like the motion of a point on the globe as it rotates about its axis.

Example. The symmetric top. Suppose $I_1 = I_2 \neq I_3$, e.g. for a top with radial symmetry. Then

$$I_1 \dot{\omega}_1 = \omega_2 \omega_3 (I_1 - I_3), \quad I_2 \dot{\omega}_2 = -\omega_1 \omega_3 (I_1 - I_3), \quad I_3 \dot{\omega}_3 = 0.$$

Then ω_3 is constant, while the other two components rotate with frequency

$$\Omega = \omega_3 (I_1 - I_3) / I_1.$$

This implies that $|\boldsymbol{\omega}|$ is constant. Moreover, we see that $\mathbf{L}$, $\boldsymbol{\omega}$, and $\mathbf{e}_3$ all lie in the same plane.

In the body frame, both $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ and $\mathbf{L}$ precess about $\mathbf{e}_3$. Similarly, in the space frame, both $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ and $\mathbf{e}_3$ precess about $\mathbf{L}$. To visualize this motion, consider the point $\mathbf{e}_2$ and the case where $\Omega, \omega_1, \omega_2 \ll \omega_3$. Without the precession, $\mathbf{e}_2$ simply rotates about $\mathbf{L}$, tracing out a circle. With the precession, the orbit of $\mathbf{e}_2$ also 'wobbles' slightly with frequency Ω.

Example. The Earth is an oblate ellipsoid with $(I_1 - I_3)/I_1 \approx -1/300$, with $\omega_3 = (1\,\text{day})^{-1}$. Since the oblateness itself is caused by the Earth's rotation, the angular velocity is very nearly aligned with $\mathbf{e}_3$, though not exactly. We thus expect the Earth to wobble with a period of about 300 days; this phenomenon is called the Chandler wobble.

Example. The asymmetric top. If all of the I_i are unequal, the Euler equations are much more difficult to solve. Instead, we can consider the effect of small perturbations. Suppose that

$$\omega_1 = \Omega + \eta_1, \quad \omega_2 = \eta_2, \quad \omega_3 = \eta_3.$$

To first order in η, the Euler equations become

$$I_1\dot{\eta}_1 = 0, \quad I_2\dot{\eta}_2 = \Omega\eta_3(I_3 - I_1), \quad I_3\dot{\eta}_3 = \Omega\eta_2(I_1 - I_2).$$

Combining the last two equations, we have

$$I_2\ddot{\eta}_2 = \frac{\Omega^2}{I_3}(I_3 - I_1)(I_1 - I_2)\eta_2.$$

Therefore, we see that rotation about $\mathbf{e}_1$ is unstable iff I_1 is in between I_2 and I_3. An asymmetric top rotates stably only about the principal axes with largest and smallest moment of inertia.

Note. We can visualize the Euler equations with the Poinsot construction. In the body frame, we have conserved quantities

$$2T = I_1\omega_1^2 + I_2\omega_2^2 + I_3\omega_3^2, \quad L^2 = I_1^2\omega_1^2 + I_2^2\omega_2^2 + I_3^2\omega_3^2$$

defining two ellipsoids. The first ellipsoid is called the inertia ellipsoid, and its intersection with the L^2 ellipsoid gives the polhode curve, which contains possible values of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$.
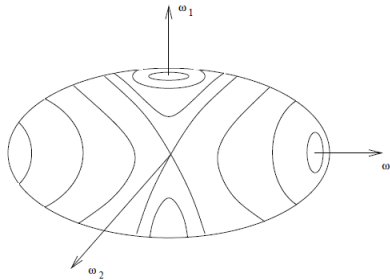
An inertia ellipsoid with some polhode curves is shown above. Since polhode curves are closed, the motion is periodic in the body frame. This figure also gives an intuitive proof of the intermediate axis theorem: polhodes are small loops near minima and maxima of L^2, but not near the intermediate axis, which corresponds to a saddle point.

Note. The space frame is more complicated, as our nice results for the symmetric top no longer apply. The only constraint we have is that $\mathbf{L} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}$ is constant, which means that $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ must lie on a plane perpendicular to $\mathbf{L}$ called the invariable plane. We imagine the inertial ellipsoid as an abstract object embedded inside the top.
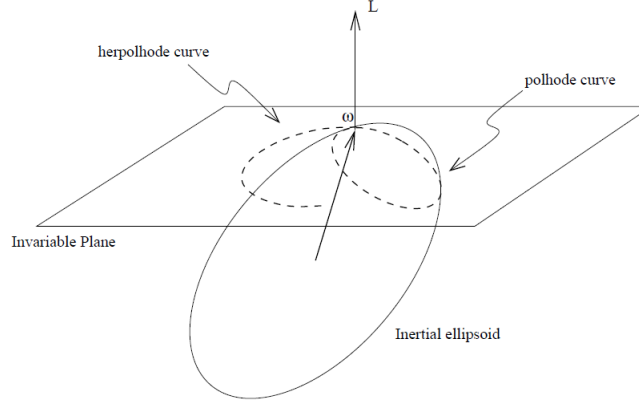
Since $\mathbf{L} = \partial T / \partial \boldsymbol{\omega}$, $\mathbf{L}$ is perpendicular to the inertial ellipsoid, which implies that the invariable plane is tangent to the inertial ellipsoid. We can thus imagine this ellipsoid as rolling without slipping on the invariable plane, as shown above. The angular velocity traces a path on this plane called the herpolhode curve, which is not necessarily closed.

1.3   Hamiltonian Formalism

- Hamiltonian mechanics takes place in phase space, and we switch from $(q, \dot{q})$ to (q, p) by Legendre transformation. Specifically, letting F be the generalized force, we have

$$dL = F \, dq + p \, d\dot{q}$$

and so taking $H = p\dot{q} - L$ switches this to

$$dH = \dot{q} \, dp - F \, dq.$$

In the language of thermodynamics, the Lagrangian and Hamiltonian have "natural" arguments $L = L(q, \dot{q})$ and $H = H(q, p)$, because their total differentials are very simple in these variables. (However, note that in order to write H in terms of q and p, we must be able to eliminate $\dot{q}$ in favor of p, which is generally only possible if L is convex in $\dot{q}$.)

- From this, we read off Hamilton's equations,

$$\dot{p}_i = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial q_i}, \quad \dot{q}_i = \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_i}.$$

The explicit time dependence just comes along for the ride, giving

$$\frac{dH}{dt} = \frac{\partial H}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial L}{\partial t}$$

where the first equality follows from Hamilton's equations and the chain rule.

- We may also derive Hamilton's equations by minimizing the action

$$S = \int (p_i \dot{q}_i - H) \, dt.$$

In this context, the variations in p_i and q_i are independent. However, as before, $\delta \dot{q} = (\dot{\delta q})$. Plugging in the variation, we see that δq must vanish at the endpoints to integrate by parts, while δp doesn't have to, so our formulation isn't totally symmetric.

- When L is time-independent with $L = T - V$, and L is a quadratic homogeneous function in $\dot{q}$, we have $p\dot{q} = 2T$, so $H = T + V$. Then the value of the Hamiltonian is the total energy.

Example. The Hamiltonian for a nonrelativistic particle in an electromagnetic field is

$$ H = \frac{(\mathbf{p} - e\mathbf{A})^2}{2m} - e\phi $$

where $\mathbf{p} = m\dot{\mathbf{r}} + e\mathbf{A}$ is the canonical momentum. We see that the Hamiltonian is numerically unchanged by the addition of a magnetic field, reflecting the fact that magnetic fields do no work, but the time evolution is affected, since the canonical momentum is different.

For a relativistic particle, we may carry out the same procedure for S_1, where the Lagrangian is parametrized by proper time. The result is

$$ H = \sqrt{m^2 c^2 + c^2(\mathbf{p} - e\mathbf{A})^2} + e\phi. $$

We can also try to treat the problem in a more covariant way, by regarding the four $x^\mu(\lambda)$ as independent and λ as the "time" parameter, and Legendre transforming the Lagrangian corresponding to an arbitrary parametrization. However, the result is the trivial $H = 0$, which generally occurs for reparametrization-invariant actions, and stems from the fact that the $x^\mu(\lambda)$ only represent three independent physical degrees of freedom. The Hamiltonian can be treated this way, but it requires a more careful treatment of the constraints involved, as described in the notes on String Theory.

Note. Both of the Hamiltonians above could also be guessed by the minimal coupling prescription: to incorporate an interaction with the electromagnetic field, we replace

$$ p^\mu \to p^\mu - e A^\mu $$

which corresponds, in nonrelativistic notation, to

$$ E \to E - e\phi, \quad \mathbf{p} \to \mathbf{p} - e\mathbf{A}. $$

In general, minimal coupling is a good first guess, because it is the simplest Lorentz invariant option. In field theory, it translates to adding a term $\int d\mathbf{x}\, J^\mu A_\mu$ where J^μ is the matter 4-current. However, we would need a non-minimal coupling to account for, e.g. the dipole moments of the particle.

Hamiltonian mechanics leads to some nice theoretical results.

- Liouville's theorem states that volumes of regions of phase space are constant. To see this, consider the infinitesimal time evolution

$$ q_i \to q_i + \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_i} dt, \quad p_i \to p_i - \frac{\partial H}{\partial q_i} dt. $$

Then the Jacobian matrix is

$$ J = \begin{pmatrix} I + (\partial^2 H/\partial p_i \partial q_j)dt & (\partial^2 H/\partial p_i \partial p_j)dt \\ -(\partial^2 H/\partial q_i \partial q_j)dt & I - (\partial^2 H/\partial q_i \partial p_j)dt \end{pmatrix}. $$

Using the identity $\det(I + \epsilon M) = 1 + \epsilon \operatorname{tr} M$, we have $\det J = 1$ by equality of mixed partials.

- In statistical mechanics, we might have a phase space probability distribution $\rho(q, p, t)$. The convective derivative $d\rho/dt$ is the rate of change while comoving with the phase space flow,

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial p_i} \frac{\partial H}{\partial q_i} - \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial q_i} \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_i}$$

  and Liouville's theorem implies that $d\rho/dt = 0$.

- Liouville's theorem holds even if energy isn't conserved, as in the case of an external field. It fails in the presence of dissipation, where there isn't a Hamiltonian description at all.

- Poincare recurrence states that for a system with bounded phase space, given an initial point p, every neighborhood D_0 of p contains a point that will return to D_0 in finite time.

  Proof: consider the neighborhoods D_k formed by evolving D_0 with time kT for an arbitrary time T. Since the phase space volume is finite, and the D_k all have the same volume, we must have some overlap between two of them, say D_k and $D_{k'}$. Since Hamiltonian evolution is reversible, we may evolve backwards, yielding an overlap between D_0 and $D_{k-k'}$.

- As a corollary, it can be shown that Hamiltonian evolution is generically either periodic or fills some submanifold of phase space densely. We will revisit this below in the context of action-angle variables.

1.4 Poisson Brackets

The formalism of Poisson brackets is closely analogous to quantum mechanics.

- The Poisson bracket of two functions f and g on phase space is defined as

$$\{f, g\} = \sum_i \frac{\partial f}{\partial q_i} \frac{\partial g}{\partial p_i} - \frac{\partial f}{\partial p_i} \frac{\partial g}{\partial q_i}.$$

  Geometrically, it is possible to associate g with a vector field X_g on phase space, and $\{f, g\}$ is the rate of change of f along the flow of X_g.

- The Poisson bracket is antisymmetric, linear, and obeys the product rule

$$\{fg, h\} = f\{g, h\} + \{f, h\}g.$$

  It also obeys a chain rule: if $f = f(h_i)$, then

$$\{f, g\} = \sum_i \frac{\partial f}{\partial h_i} \{h_i, g\}.$$

- Applying Hamilton's equations, for any function $f(p, q, t)$,

$$\frac{df}{dt} = \{f, H\} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}$$

  where the total derivative is a convective derivative, following the point $(q(t), p(t))$ as it time evolves. This result states that the flow associated with H is time translation.

- If $f(p, q)$ satisfies $\{H, f\} = 0$, then it corresponds to a symmetry of the system, because it yields a flow along which the Hamiltonian is invariant. And $\{H, f\}$ vanishes if and only if $\{f, H\}$ vanishes, which indicates that f is conserved under time evolution. This is the analogue of Noether's theorem in Hamiltonian mechanics, linking symmetries and conservation laws.

- The Poisson bracket satisfies the Jacobi identity,

$$\{f, \{g, h\}\} + \{g, \{h, f\}\} + \{h, \{f, g\}\} = 0$$

so the space of functions with the Poisson bracket is a Lie algebra. As a result, Lie brackets of conserved quantities are also conserved, so conserved quantities form a Lie subalgebra.

- The Poisson brackets of position and momentum are always

$$\{q_i, q_j\} = 0, \quad \{q_i, p_j\} = \delta_{ij}, \quad \{p_i, p_j\} = 0.$$

The flow generated by momentum is translation along its direction, and vice versa for position.

Example. In statistical mechanics, ensembles are time-independent distributions on phase space. Applying Liouville's equation, we require $\{\rho, H\} = 0$. If the conserved quantities of a system are f_i, then ρ may be any function of the f_i, i.e. any member of the subalgebra of conserved quantities.

We typically take the case where only the energy is conserved for simplicity. In this case, the microcanonical ensemble is $\rho \propto \delta(H - E)$ and the canonical ensemble is $\rho \propto e^{-\beta H}$.

Example. Angular momentum. Defining $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p}$, we have

$$\{L_i, L_j\} = \epsilon_{ijk} L_k, \quad \{L^2, L_i\} = 0.$$

The L_i generate rotations, so the first equation shows the commutation relation of infinitesimal rotations. A Hamiltonian is rotationally symmetric if $\{L_i, H\}$, leading to conservation of angular momentum.

We now consider the changes of coordinates that preserve the form of Hamilton's equations; these are called canonical transformations. Generally, they are more flexible than coordinate transformations in the Lagrangian formalism, since we can mix position and momentum.

- Define $\mathbf{x} = (q_1, \ldots, q_n, p_1, \ldots, p_n)^T$ and define the matrix J as

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & I_n \\ -I_n & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Then Hamilton's equations become

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = J \frac{\partial H}{\partial \mathbf{x}}.$$

Also note that the canonical Poisson brackets are $\{x_i, x_j\} = J_{ij}$.

- Now consider a transformation $q_i \to Q_i(q, p)$ and $p_i \to P_i(q, p)$, written as $x_i \to y_i(x)$. Then

$$\dot{\mathbf{y}} = (\mathcal{J} J \mathcal{J}^T) \frac{\partial H}{\partial \mathbf{y}}$$

where $\mathcal{J}$ is the Jacobian matrix $\mathcal{J}_{ij} = \partial y_i / \partial x_j$. We say the Jacobian is symplectic if $\mathcal{J} J \mathcal{J}^T$ is the identity, and in this case, the transformation is called canonical.

- The Poisson bracket is invariant under canonical transformations. To see this, note that

$$\{f, g\}_x = (\partial_x f)^T J (\partial_x g)$$

where $(\partial_x f)_i = \partial f / \partial x_i$. By the chain rule, $\partial_x = \mathcal{J}^T \partial_y$, giving the result. Then if we only consider canonical transformations, we don't have to specify which coordinates the Poisson bracket is taken in.

- Conversely, if a transformation preserves the canonical Poisson brackets $\{y_i, y_j\}_x = J_{ij}$, it is canonical. To see this, apply the chain rule for

$$J_{ij} = \{y_i, y_j\}_x = \left(\mathcal{J} J \mathcal{J}^T \right)_{ij}$$

which is exactly the condition for a canonical transformation.

Example. Consider a 'point transformation' $q_i \to Q_i(q)$. We have shown that these leave Lagrange's equations invariant, but in the Hamiltonian formalism, we also must transform the momentum accordingly. Dropping indices and defining $\Theta = \partial Q / \partial q$,

$$\mathcal{J} = \begin{pmatrix} \Theta & 0 \\ \partial P / \partial q & \partial P / \partial p \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathcal{J} J \mathcal{J}^T = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Theta (\partial P / \partial p)^T \\ -\Theta^T \partial P / \partial p & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

which implies that $P_i = (\Theta_{ji}^{-1}) p_j$, in agreement with the formula $P_i = \partial L / \partial \dot{Q}_i$. Since Θ depends on q, the momentum P is a function of both p and q.

We now consider infinitesimal canonical transformations.

- Consider a canonical transformation $Q_i = q_i + \alpha F_i(q, p)$ and $P_i = p_i + \alpha E_i(q, p)$ where α is small. Expanding the symplectic condition to first order yields

$$\frac{\partial F_i}{\partial q_j} = -\frac{\partial E_j}{\partial p_i}, \quad \frac{\partial F_i}{\partial p_j} = \frac{\partial F_j}{\partial p_i}, \quad \frac{\partial E_i}{\partial q_j} = \frac{\partial E_j}{\partial q_i}.$$

There are all automatically satisfied if

$$F_i = \frac{\partial G}{\partial p_i}, \quad E_i = -\frac{\partial G}{\partial q_i}$$

for some $G(q, p)$, and we say G generates the transformation.

- More generally, consider a one-parameter family of canonical transformations parametrized by α. Then by the above,

$$\frac{dq_i}{d\alpha} = \frac{\partial G}{\partial p_i}, \quad \frac{dp_i}{d\alpha} = -\frac{\partial G}{\partial q_i}, \quad \frac{df}{d\alpha} = \{f, G\}.$$

Interpreting the transformation actively, this looks just like evolution under a Hamiltonian, with G in place of H and α in place of t. The infinitesimal canonical transformation generated by $G(p, q, \alpha)$ is flow under its vector field.

- We say G is a symmetry of H if the flow generated by G does not change H, i.e. $\{H, G\} = 0$. But this is just the condition for G to be conserved: since the Poisson bracket is antisymmetric, flow under H doesn't change G either. This is Noether's theorem in Hamiltonian mechanics.

- For example, using $G = H$ simply generates time translation, $y(t) = x(t - t_0)$. Less trivially, $G = p_k$ generates $q_i \to q_i + \alpha \delta_{ik}$, so momentum generates translations.

Now we give a very brief glimpse of the geometrical formulation of classical mechanics.

- In Lagrangian mechanics, the configuration space is a manifold M, and the Lagrangian is a function on its tangent bundle $L \colon TM \to \mathbb{R}$. The action is a real-valued function on paths through the manifold.

- The momentum $\mathbf{p} = \partial L / \partial \dot{\mathbf{q}}$ is a covector on M, and we have a map

$$F \colon TM \to T^*M, \quad (\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}) \mapsto (\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p})$$

called the Legendre transform, which is invertible if the Lagrangian is regular. The cotangent bundle T^*M can hence be identified with phase space.

- A cotangent bundle has a canonical one-form $\omega = p_i dq^i$, where the q^i are arbitrary coordinates and the p_i are coordinates in the dual basis. Its exterior derivative $\Omega = dp_i \wedge dq^i$ is a symplectic form, i.e. a closed and nondegenerate two-form on an even-dimensional manifold.

- Conversely, the Darboux theorem states that for any symplectic form we may always choose coordinates so that locally it has the form $dp_i \wedge dq^i$.

- The symplectic form relates functions f on phase space to vector fields X_f by

$$i_{X_f} \Omega = df, \quad \Omega_{\mu\nu} X_f^\mu = \partial_\nu f$$

where i_{X_f} is the interior product with X_f, and the indices range over the $2 \dim M$ coordinates of phase space. The nondegeneracy condition means the form can be inverted, giving

$$X_f^\mu = \Omega^{\mu\nu} \partial_\nu f$$

and thus X_f is unique given f.

- Time evolution is flow under X_H, so the rate of change of any phase space function f is $X_H(f)$.

- The Poisson bracket is defined as

$$\{f, g\} = \Omega(X_f, X_g) = \Omega^{\mu\nu} \partial_\mu f \partial_\nu g.$$

The closure of Ω implies the Jacobi identity for the Poisson bracket.

- If flow under the vector field X preserves the symplectic form, $\mathcal{L}_X \Omega = 0$, then X is called a Hamiltonian vector field. In particular, using Cartan's magic formula and the closure of Ω, this holds for all X_f derived from the symplectic form.

- If Ω is preserved, so is any exterior power of it. Since Ω^n is proportional to the volume form, its conservation recovers Liouville's theorem.

Note. Consider a single particle with a parametrized path $x^\mu(\tau)$. Then the velocity is naturally a Lorentz vector and the canonical momentum is a Lorentz covector. However, the physical energy and momentum are vectors, because they are the conserved quantities associated with translations, which are vectors. Hence we must pick up signs when converting canonical momentum to physical momentum, which is the fundamental reason why $\mathbf{p} = -i\nabla$ but $H = +i\partial_t$ in quantum mechanics.

1.5 Action-Angle Variables

The additional flexibility of canonical transformations allows us to use even more convenient variables than the generalized coordinates of Lagrangian mechanics. Often, the so-called action-angle variables are a good choice, which drastically simplify the problem.

Example. The simple harmonic oscillator. The Hamiltonian is

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}m\omega^2 q^2$$

and we switch from (q, p) to (θ, I), where

$$q = \sqrt{\frac{2I}{m\omega}}\sin\theta, \quad p = \sqrt{2Im\omega}\cos\theta.$$

To confirm this is a canonical transformation, we check that Poisson brackets are preserved; the simplest way to do this is to work backwards, noting that

$$\{q, p\}_{(\theta,I)} = 2\{\sqrt{I}\sin\theta, \sqrt{I}\cos\theta\}_{(\theta,I)} = 1$$

as desired. In these new coordinates, the Hamiltonian is simply

$$H = \omega I, \quad \dot\theta = \omega, \ \dot I = 0.$$

We have "straightened out" the phase space flow into straight lines on a cylinder. This is the simplest example of action angle variables.

- In general, for n degrees of freedom, we would like to find variables (θ_i, I_i) so that the Hamiltonian is only a function of the I_i. Then the I_i are conserved, and $\dot\theta_i = \omega_i$, where the ω_i depend on the I_i but are time independent. When the system is bounded, we scale θ_i to lie in $[0, 2\pi)$. The resulting variables are called action-angle variables, and the system is integrable.

- Liouville's theorem states that if there are n mutually Poisson commuting constants of motion I_i, then the system is integrable. (At first glance, this seems to be a trivial criterion – how could one possibly prove that such constants of motion *don't* exist? However, it is possible; for instance, Poincare famously proved that there were no such conserved quantities for the general three body problem, analytic in the canonical variables and the masses.)

- Integrable systems are rare and special; chaotic systems are not integrable. The question of whether a system is integrable has to do with global structure, since one can always straighten out the phase space flow lines locally.

- The motion of an integrable system lies on a surface of constant I_i. These surfaces are topologically tori $\mathbb{T}^n$, called invariant tori.

Example. Action-angle variables for a general one-dimensional system. Let

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + V(x).$$

The value of H is the total energy E, so the action variable I must satisfy

$$\dot\theta = \omega = dE/dI$$

where the period of the motion is $2\pi/\omega$. Now, by conservation of energy

$$dt = \sqrt{\frac{m}{2}} \frac{dq}{\sqrt{E - V(q)}}.$$

Integrating over a single orbit, we have

$$\frac{2\pi}{\omega} = \sqrt{\frac{m}{2}} \oint \frac{dq}{\sqrt{E - V(q)}} = \oint \sqrt{2m} \frac{d}{dE} \sqrt{E - V(q)} \, dq = \frac{d}{dE} \oint \sqrt{2m(E - V(q))} \, dq = \frac{d}{dE} \oint p \, dq.$$

Note that by pulling the d/dE out of the integral, we neglected the change in phase space area due to the change in the endpoints of the path, because this contribution is second order in dE.

   Therefore, we have the nice results

$$I = \frac{1}{2\pi} \oint p \, dq, \quad T = \frac{d}{dE} \oint p \, dq.$$

We can thus calculate T without finding a closed-form expression for θ, which can be convenient. For completeness, we can also determine θ, by

$$\theta = \omega t = \frac{dE}{dI} \frac{d}{dE} \int p \, dq = \frac{d}{dI} \int p \, dq.$$

Here the value of θ determines the upper bound on the integral, and the derivative acts on the integrand.

We now turn to adiabatic invariants.

- Consider a situation where the Hamiltonian depends on a parameter $\lambda(t)$ that changes slowly. Then energy is not conserved; taking $H(q(t), p(t), \lambda(t)) = E(t)$ and differentiating, we have

$$\dot{E} = \frac{\partial H}{\partial \lambda} \dot{\lambda}.$$

  However, certain "adiabatic invariants" are approximately conserved.

- We claim that in the case
$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + V(q; \lambda(t))$$
  the adiabatic invariant is simply the action variable I. Since I is always evaluated on an orbit of the Hamiltonian at a fixed time, it is only a function of E and λ, so

$$\dot{I} = \frac{\partial I}{\partial E}\bigg|_{\lambda} \dot{E} + \frac{\partial I}{\partial \lambda}\bigg|_{E} \dot{\lambda}.$$

  These two contributions are due to the nonconservation of energy, and from the change in the shape of the orbits at fixed energy, respectively.

- When λ is constant, $E = E(I)$ as before, so

$$\frac{\partial I}{\partial E}\bigg|_{\lambda} = \frac{1}{\omega(\lambda)} = \frac{T(\lambda)}{2\pi}.$$

As for the second term, we have

$$\frac{\partial I}{\partial \lambda}\bigg|_E = \frac{1}{2\pi} \oint \frac{\partial p}{\partial \lambda}\bigg|_E dq = \frac{1}{2\pi} \oint \frac{\partial p}{\partial \lambda}\bigg|_E \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}\bigg|_{\lambda,q} dt'$$

where we applied Hamilton's equations, and neglected a higher-order term from the change in the endpoints.

- To simplify the integrand, take $H(q, p(q, \lambda, E), \lambda) = E$ and differentiate with respect to λ at fixed E. Then

$$\frac{\partial H}{\partial q}\bigg|_{\lambda,p} \frac{\partial q}{\partial \lambda}\bigg|_E + \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}\bigg|_{\lambda,q} \frac{\partial p}{\partial \lambda}\bigg|_E + \frac{\partial H}{\partial \lambda}\bigg|_{q,p,E} = 0.$$

By construction, the first term is zero. Then we conclude that

$$\frac{\partial I}{\partial \lambda}\bigg|_E = -\frac{1}{2\pi} \oint \frac{\partial H}{\partial \lambda}\bigg|_E dt'.$$

Finally, combining this with our first result, we conclude

$$\dot{I} = \left(T(\lambda)\frac{\partial H}{\partial \lambda}\bigg|_E - \int \frac{\partial H}{\partial \lambda}\bigg|_E dt'\right) \frac{\dot{\lambda}}{2\pi}.$$

Taking the time average of $\dot{I}$ and noting that the change in λ is slow compared to the period of the motion, the two quantities above cancel, so $\langle \dot{I} \rangle = 0$ and I is an adiabatic invariant.

Example. The simple harmonic oscillator has $I = E/\omega$. Then if ω is changed slowly, the ratio E/ω remains constant. The above example also manifests in quantum mechanics; for example, for quanta in a harmonic oscillator, we have $E = n\hbar\omega$. If the ω of the oscillator is changed slowly, the energy can only remain quantized if E/ω remains constant, as it does in classical mechanics.

Example. The adiabatic theorem can also be proved heuristically with Liouville's theorem. We consider an ensemble of systems with fixed E but equally spaced phase θ, which thus travel along a single closed curve in phase space. Under any time variation of λ, the phase space curve formed by the systems remains closed, and the area inside it is conserved because none can leak in or out.

Now suppose λ is varied extremely slowly. Then every system on the ring should be affected in the same way, so the final ring remains a curve of constant energy E'. By the above reasoning, the area inside this curve is conserved, proving the theorem.

Example. A particle in a magnetic field. Consider a particle confined to the xy plane, experiencing a magnetic field

$$\mathbf{B} = B(x, y, t)\hat{\mathbf{z}}$$

which is slowly varying. Also assume that $\mathbf{B}$ is such that the particle forms closed orbits. If the variation of the field is slow, then the adiabatic theorem holds. Integrating over a cycle gives

$$I = \frac{1}{2\pi} \oint \mathbf{p} \cdot d\mathbf{q} \propto \int m\mathbf{v} \cdot d\mathbf{q} - e \int \mathbf{A} \cdot d\mathbf{q} = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} mv^2 - e\Phi_B.$$

In the case of a uniform magnetic field, we have

$$v = R\omega, \quad \omega = \frac{eB}{m}$$

which shows that the two terms are proportional; hence the magnetic flux is conserved. Alternatively, since $\Phi_B = AB$ and $B \propto \omega$, the magnetic moment of the current loop made by the particle is conserved; this is called the first adiabatic invariant by plasma physicists. One consequence is that charged particles can be heated by increasing the field.

Alternatively, suppose that $B = B(r)$ and the particle performs circular orbits centered about the origin. Then the adiabatic invariant can be written as

$$I \propto r^2(2B - B_{\mathrm{av}})$$

where B_{av} is the average field inside the circular orbit. This implies that as $B(r, t)$ changes in time, the orbit will get larger or smaller unless we have $2B = B_{\mathrm{av}}$, a condition which betatron accelerators, which accelerate particles by changing the magnetic field in this way, are designed to satisfy.

The first adiabatic invariant is also the principle behind magnetic mirrors. Suppose one has a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}(x, y, z)$ where B_z dominates, and varies slowly in space. Particles can perform helical orbits, spiraling along magnetic field lines. The speed is invariant, so

$$v_x^2 + v_y^2 + v_z^2 = \mathrm{const.}$$

On the other hand, if we boost to match the v_z of a spiraling particle, then the situation looks just like a particle in the xy plane with a time-varying magnetic field. Approximating the orbit as small and the B_z inside as roughly constant, we have

$$I \propto \frac{mv^2}{\omega} \propto \frac{v_x^2 + v_y^2}{B_z} = \mathrm{const.}$$

Therefore, as B_z increases, v_z decreases, and at some point the particle will be "reflected" and spiral back in the opposite direction. This is the principle behind magnetic mirrors, which can be used to confine plasmas in fusion reactors.

1.6   The Hamilton–Jacobi Equation

We begin by defining Hamilton's principal function.

- Given initial conditions (q_i, t_i) and final conditions (q_f, t_f), there can generally be multiple classical paths between them. Often, paths are discrete, so we may label them with a branch index b. However, note that for the harmonic oscillator we need a continuous branch index.

- For each branch index, we define Hamilton's principal function as

$$S_b(q_i, t_i; q_f, t_f) = A[q_b(t)] = \int_{t_i}^{t_f} dt\, L(q_b(t), \dot{q}_b(t), t)$$

  where A stands for the usual action. We suppress the branch index below, so the four arguments of S alone specify the entire path.

- Consider an infinitesimal change in q_f. Then the new path is equal to the old path plus a variation δq with $\delta q(t_f) = \delta q_f$. Integrating by parts gives an endpoint contribution $p_f \delta q_f$, so

$$\frac{\partial S}{\partial q_f} = p_f.$$

- Next, suppose we simply extend the existing path by running it for an additional time dt_f. Then we can compute the change in S in two ways,

$$dS = L_f dt_f = \frac{\partial S}{\partial t_f} dt_f + \frac{\partial S}{\partial q_f} dq_f$$

where $dq_f = \dot{q}_f dt_f$. Therefore,

$$\frac{\partial S}{\partial t_f} = -H_f.$$

By similar reasoning, we have

$$\frac{\partial S}{\partial q_i} = -p_i, \quad \frac{\partial S}{\partial t_i} = H_i.$$

- The results above give $p_{i,f}$ in terms of $q_{i,f}$ and $t_{i,f}$. We can then invert the expression for p_i to write $q_f = q_f(p_i, q_i, t_i, t_f)$, and plug this in to get $p_f = p_f(p_i, q_i, t_i, t_f)$. That is, given an initial condition (q_i, p_i) at $t = t_i$, we can find (q_f, p_f) at $t = t_f$ given S.

- Henceforth we take q_i and t_i as fixed and implicit, and rename q_f and t_f to q and t. Then we have $S(q, t)$ with

$$dS = -H \, dt + p \, dq$$

where q_i and t_i simply provide the integration constants. The signs here are natural if one imagines them descending from special relativity.

- To evaluate S, we use our result for $\partial S / \partial t$, called the Hamilton–Jacobi equation,

$$H(q, \partial S/\partial q, t) + \frac{\partial S}{\partial t} = 0.$$

That is, S can be determined by solving a PDE. The utility of this method is that the PDE can be separated whenever the problem has symmetry, reducing the problem to a set of *independent* ODEs. We can also run the Hamilton–Jacobi equation in reverse to solve PDEs by identifying them with mechanical systems.

- For a time-independent Hamiltonian, the value of the Hamiltonian is just the conserved energy, so the quantity $S^0 = S + Et$ is time-independent and satisfies the time-independent Hamilton–Jacobi equation

$$H(q, \partial S^0/\partial q) = E.$$

The function S^0 can be used to find the paths of particles of energy E.

We now connect Hamilton's principal function to semiclassical mechanics.

- We can easily find the paths by solving the first-order equation

$$\dot{q} = \left. \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} \right|_{p = \partial S/\partial q}.$$

That is, Hamilton's principal function can reduce the equations of motion to first-order equations on configuration space.

- As a check, we verify that Hamilton's second equation is satisfied. We have

$$\dot{p} = \frac{d}{dt}\frac{\partial S}{\partial q} = \frac{\partial^2 S}{\partial t \partial q} + \frac{\partial^2 S}{\partial q^2}\dot{q}$$

  where the partial derivative $\partial/\partial q$ keeps t constant, and

$$\frac{\partial^2 S}{\partial t \partial q} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial q}H(q, \partial S/\partial q, t) = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial q} - \frac{\partial^2 S}{\partial q^2}\dot{q}.$$

  Hence combining these results gives $\dot{p} = -\partial H/\partial q$ as desired. Note that the "active ingredient" in this derivation was the equality of mixed partial derivatives, which is why Hamilton's equations kind of look like Maxwell relations.

- The quantity $S(q, t)$ acts like a real-valued 'classical wavefunction'. Given a position, its gradient specifies the momentum. To see the connection with quantum mechanics, let

$$\psi(q, t) = R(q, t)e^{iW(q,t)/\hbar}.$$

  We assume the wavefunction varies slowly, in the sense that

$$\hbar\left|\frac{\partial^2 W}{\partial q^2}\right| \ll \left|\frac{\partial W}{\partial q}\right|.$$

  Some care needs to be taken here. We assume R and W are analytic in $\hbar$, but this implies that ψ is not.

- Expanding the Schrodinger equation to lowest order in $\hbar$ gives

$$\frac{\partial W}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{2m}\left(\frac{\partial W}{\partial q}\right)^2 + V(q) = O(\hbar).$$

  Then in the semiclassical limit, W obeys the Hamilton–Jacobi equation. The action $S(q, t)$ is the semiclassical phase of the quantum wavefunction. This result anticipates the de Broglie relations $\mathbf{p} = \hbar\mathbf{k}$ and $E = \hbar\omega$ classically, and inspires the path integral formulation.

- With this intuition, we can read off the Hamilton–Jacobi equation from a dispersion relation. For example, a free relativistic particle has $p_\mu p^\mu = m^2$, which means the Hamilton–Jacobi equation is

$$\eta^{\mu\nu}\partial_\mu S \partial_\nu S = m^2.$$

  This generalizes immediately to curved spacetime by using a general metric.

- To see how classical paths emerge in one dimension, consider forming a wavepacket by superposing solutions with the same phase at time $t_i = 0$ but slightly different energies. The solutions constructively interfere when $\partial S/\partial E = 0$, because

$$\frac{\partial S}{\partial E} = -t + \int\frac{\partial p}{\partial E}dq = -t + \int\frac{dq}{\partial H/\partial p} = -t + \int\frac{dq}{\dot{q}} = 0$$

  where we used Hamilton's equations.

There is also a useful analogy with optics.

- Fermat's principle of least time states that light travels between two points in the shortest possible time. We consider an inhomogeneous anisotropic medium. Consider the set of all points that can be reached from point $\mathbf{q}_0$ within time t. The boundary of this set is the wavefront $\Phi_{\mathbf{q}_0}(t)$.

- Huygen's theorem states that

$$\Phi_{\mathbf{q}_0}(s+t) \text{ is the envelope of the fronts } \Phi_{\mathbf{q}}(s) \text{ for } \mathbf{q} \in \Phi_{\mathbf{q}_0}(t).$$

  This follows because $\Phi_{\mathbf{q}_0}(s+t)$ is the set of points we need time $s+t$ to reach, and an optimal path to one of these points should be locally optimal as well. In particular, note that each of the fronts $\Phi_{\mathbf{q}}(s)$ is tangent to $\Phi_{\mathbf{q}_0}(s+t)$.

- Let $S_{\mathbf{q}_0}(\mathbf{q})$ be the minimum time needed to reach point $\mathbf{q}$ from $\mathbf{q}_0$. We define

$$\mathbf{p} = \frac{\partial S}{\partial \mathbf{q}}$$

  to be the vector of normal slowness of the front. It describes the motion of wavefronts, while $\dot{\mathbf{q}}$ describes the motion of rays of light. We thus have $dS = \mathbf{p}\, d\mathbf{q}$.

- The quantities $\mathbf{p}$ and $\dot{\mathbf{q}}$ can be related geometrically. Let the indicatrix at a point be the surface defined by the possible velocity vectors; it is essentially the wavefront at that point for infinitesimal time. Define the conjugate of $\dot{\mathbf{q}}$ to be the plane tangent to the indicatrix at $\dot{\mathbf{q}}$.

- The wave front $\Phi_{\mathbf{q}_0}(t)$ at the point $\mathbf{q}(t)$ is conjugate to $\dot{\mathbf{q}}(t)$. By decomposing $t = (t - \epsilon) + \epsilon$ and applying the definition of an indicatrix, this follows from Huygen's theorem.

- Everything we have said here is perfectly analogous to mechanics; we simply replace the total time with the action, and hence the indicatrix with the Lagrangian. The rays correspond to trajectories. The main difference is that the speed the rays are traversed is fixed in optics but variable in mechanics, so our space is $(\mathbf{q}, t)$ rather than just $\mathbf{q}$, and $dS = \mathbf{p}\, d\mathbf{q} - H\, dt$ instead.

(finish)

2 Electromagnetism

2.1 Electrostatics

> *The subject which I am now going to recommend to your attention almost terrifies me. The variety it presents is immense, and the enumeration of facts serves rather to confound than to inform. The subject I mean is Electricity.*
>
> – Euler, Letters to a German Princess (1761)

The fundamental equations of electrostatics are

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = \frac{\rho}{\epsilon_0}, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{E} = 0.$$

The latter equation allows us to introduce the potential $\mathbf{E} = -\nabla\phi$, giving Poisson's equation

$$\nabla^2 \phi = -\frac{\rho}{\epsilon_0}.$$

The case $\rho = 0$ is Laplace's equation and the solutions are called harmonic functions.

Example. The field of a point charge is spherically symmetric with $\nabla^2 \phi = 0$ except at the origin. Guessing the form $\phi \propto 1/r$, we have

$$\nabla \left(\frac{1}{r} \right) = \frac{-\nabla r}{r^2} = -\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3}.$$

Next, we can take the divergence by the product rule,

$$\nabla^2 \left(\frac{1}{r} \right) = - \left(\frac{\nabla \cdot \mathbf{r}}{r^3} - \frac{3\hat{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \mathbf{r}}{r^4} \right) = - \left(\frac{3}{r^3} - \frac{3}{r^3} \right) = 0$$

as desired. To get the overall constant, we use Gauss's law, for $\phi = q/(4\pi\epsilon_0 r)$.

Example. The electric dipole has

$$\phi = \frac{Q}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \left(\frac{1}{r} - \frac{1}{|\mathbf{r} + \mathbf{d}|} \right).$$

To approximate this, we use the Taylor expansion

$$f(\mathbf{r} + \mathbf{d}) = \sum_n \frac{(\mathbf{d} \cdot \nabla)^n}{n!} f(\mathbf{r})$$

which can be understood by expanding in components with $\mathbf{d} \cdot \nabla = d_i \partial_i$. Then

$$\phi \approx \frac{Q}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \left(-\mathbf{d} \cdot \nabla \frac{1}{r} \right) = \frac{Q}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \frac{\mathbf{d} \cdot \mathbf{r}}{r^3}.$$

We see the potential falls off as $1/r^2$, and at large distances only depends on the dipole moment $\mathbf{p} = Q\mathbf{d}$. Differentiating using the usual quotient rule,

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{1}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \frac{3(\mathbf{p} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{r}})\hat{\mathbf{r}} - \mathbf{p}}{r^3}.$$

Taking only the first term of the Taylor series is justified if $r \gg d$. More generally, for an arbitrary charge distribution

$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \int d\mathbf{r}' \frac{\rho(\mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}$$

and approximating the integrand with Taylor series gives the multipole expansion.

Note. Electromagnetic field energy. The energy needed to assemble a set of particles is

$$U = \frac{1}{2} \sum_i q_i \phi(\mathbf{r}_i).$$

This generalizes naturally to the energy to assemble a continuous charge distribution,

$$U = \frac{1}{2} \int d\mathbf{r} \, \rho(\mathbf{r}) \phi(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\epsilon_0}{2} \int d\mathbf{r} \, E^2$$

where in the second step we integrated by parts and discarded a surface term. However, there's a subtlety when we go back to considering point charges, where these two expressions no longer agree. The first explicitly doesn't include a charge's self-interaction, as the potential $\phi(\mathbf{r}_i)$ is supposed to be determined by all other charges. The second does, and hence the final result is positive definite. It can be thought of as additionally including the energy needed to assemble each point charge from scratch.

Example. Dipole-dipole interactions. Consider a dipole moment $\mathbf{p}_1$ at the origin, and a second dipole with charge Q at $\mathbf{r}$ and $-Q$ at $\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{d}$, with dipole moment $\mathbf{p}_2 = Q\mathbf{d}$. The potential energy is

$$U = \frac{Q}{2}(\phi(\mathbf{r}) - \phi(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{d})) = \frac{1}{8\pi\epsilon_0}(\mathbf{d} \cdot \nabla)\frac{\mathbf{p}_1 \cdot \mathbf{r}}{r^3} = \frac{1}{8\pi\epsilon_0}\frac{\mathbf{p}_1 \cdot \mathbf{p}_2 - 3(\mathbf{p}_1 \cdot \hat{\mathbf{r}})(\mathbf{p}_2 \cdot \hat{\mathbf{r}})}{r^3}$$

where we used our dipole potential and the product rule. Then the interaction energy between permanent dipoles falls off as $1/r^3$.

Example. Boundary value problems. Consider a volume bounded by surfaces S_i, which could include a surface at infinity. Then Laplace's equation $\nabla^2 \phi = 0$ has a unique solution (up to constants) if we fix ϕ or $\nabla\phi \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} \propto \mathbf{E}_\perp$ on each surface. These are called Dirichlet and Neumann boundary conditions respectively. To see this, let f be the difference of two solutions. Then

$$\int dV \, (\nabla f)^2 = \int dV \, \nabla \cdot (f \nabla f) = \int f \nabla f \cdot d\mathbf{S}$$

where we used $\nabla^2 f = 0$ in the first equality. However, boundary conditions force the right-hand side to be zero, so the left-hand side is zero, which requires f to be constant.

In the case where the surfaces are conductors, it also suffices to specify the charge on each surface. To see this, note that potential is constant on a surface, so

$$\int f \nabla f \cdot d\mathbf{S} = f \int \nabla f \cdot d\mathbf{S} = 0$$

because the total charge on a surface is zero if we subtract two solutions. Then $\nabla f = 0$ as before, giving the same conclusion.

2.2 Magnetostatics

- The fundamental equations of magnetostatics are

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mu_0 \mathbf{J}, \quad \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0.$$

- Since the divergence of a curl is zero, we must have $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{J} = 0$. This is simply a consequence of the continuity equation

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{J} = 0$$

and the fact that we're doing statics.

- Integrating Ampere's law yields

$$\oint \mathbf{B} \cdot d\mathbf{s} = \mu_0 I.$$

This shows that the magnetic field of an infinite wire is $B_\theta = \mu_0 I / 2\pi r$.

- A uniform surface current $\mathbf{K}$ produces discontinuities in the field,

$$\Delta B_\| = \mu_0 K, \quad \Delta B_\perp = 0.$$

This is similar to the case of a surface charge, except there $E_\perp$ is discontinuous instead.

- Consider an infinite cylindrical solenoid. Then $\mathbf{B} = B(r)\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ by symmetry. Both inside and outside the solenoid, we have $\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = 0$ which implies $\partial B / \partial r = 0$. Since fields vanish at infinity, the field outside must be zero, and by Ampere's law, the field inside is

$$B = \mu_0 K$$

where K is the surface current density, equal to nI where n is the number of turns per length.

- Define the vector potential as

$$\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}.$$

The vector potential is ambiguous up to the addition of a gradient $\nabla \chi$.

- By adding such a gradient, the divergence of $\mathbf{A}$ is changed by $\nabla^2 \chi$. Then by the existence theorem for Poisson's equation, we can choose any desired $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A}$ by gauge transformations.

- One useful choice is Coulomb gauge $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} = 0$. As a result, Ampere's law becomes

$$\nabla^2 \mathbf{A} = -\mu_0 \mathbf{J}$$

where we used the curl-of-curl identity,

$$\nabla^2 \mathbf{A} = \nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A}) - \nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{A}).$$

Note. What is the vector Laplacian? Formally, the Laplacian of any tensor is defined as

$$\nabla^2 T = \nabla \cdot (\nabla T).$$

In a general manifold with metric, the operations on the right-hand side are defined through covariant derivatives, and depend on a connection. Going to the other extreme of generality, it can be defined in Cartesian components in $\mathbb{R}^n$ as the tensor whose components are the scalar Laplacians of those of T; we can then generalize to, e.g. spherical coordinates by a change of coordinates.

In the case of the vector Laplacian, the most practical definition for curvilinear coordinates on $\mathbb{R}^n$ is to use the curl-of-curl identity in reverse, then plug in the known expressions for divergence, gradient, and curl. This route doesn't require any tensor operations.

We now use our mathematical tools to derive the Biot–Savart law.

- By analogy with the solution to Poisson's equation by Green's functions,

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \int d\mathbf{x}' \, \frac{\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{x}')}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|}.$$

  We can explicitly prove this by working in components in Cartesian coordinates. This equation also shows a shortcoming of vector notation: read literally, it is ambiguous what the indices on the vectors should be.

- To check whether the Coulomb gauge condition is satisfied, note that

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x}) \propto \int d\mathbf{x}' \, \nabla \cdot \left(\frac{\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{x}')}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|} \right) = \int d\mathbf{x}' \, \mathbf{J}(\mathbf{x}') \cdot \nabla \frac{1}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|} = -\int d\mathbf{x}' \, \mathbf{J}(\mathbf{x}') \cdot \nabla' \frac{1}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|}.$$

  The vector notation has some problems: it's ambiguous what index the divergence acts on (so we try to keep it linked to $\mathbf{J}$ with dots), and it's ambiguous what coordinate it differentiates (so we mark this with primes). In the final step, we used antisymmetry to turn ∇ into $-\nabla'$.

  This expression can be integrated by parts (clearer in index notation) to yield a surface term and a term proportional to $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{J} = 0$, giving $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} = 0$ as desired.

- Taking the curl and using the product rule,

$$\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \int d\mathbf{x}' \, \nabla \times \frac{\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{x}')}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|} = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \int d\mathbf{x}' \left(\nabla \frac{1}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|} \right) \times \mathbf{J}(\mathbf{x}') = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \int d\mathbf{x}' \, \frac{\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{x}') \times (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}')}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|^3}$$

  which is the Biot–Savart law.

Next, we investigate magnetic dipoles and multipoles.

- A current loop tracing out the curve C has vector potential

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \oint_C \frac{d\mathbf{r}'}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}$$

  by the Biot–Savart law.

- Just as for electric dipoles, we can expand

$$\frac{1}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|} = \frac{1}{r} + \frac{\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{r}'}{r^3} + \cdots$$

  for small $\mathbf{r}'$. The first term always integrates to zero about a closed loop, as there are no magnetic monopoles, while the next term gives

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) \approx \frac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi} \oint_C d\mathbf{r}' \frac{\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{r}'}{r^3}.$$

- To simplify, pull the $1/r^3$ out of the integral, then dot the integral with $\mathbf{g}$ for

$$\oint_C g_i r_j r_j' \, dr_i' = \int_S \epsilon_{ijk} \partial_i'(g_j r_\ell r_\ell') \, dS_k' = \int_S \epsilon_{ijk} r_i g_j \, dS_k' = \mathbf{g} \cdot \int d\mathbf{S}' \times \mathbf{r}$$

  by Stokes' theorem. Since both $\mathbf{g}$ and $\mathbf{r}$ are constants, we conclude

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \frac{\mathbf{m} \times \mathbf{r}}{r^3}, \quad \mathbf{m} = I\mathbf{S}, \quad \mathbf{S} = \int_S d\mathbf{S}.$$

  Here, $\mathbf{S}$ is the vector area, and $\mathbf{m}$ is the magnetic dipole moment.

- Taking the curl straightforwardly gives the magnetic field,

$$\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \frac{3(\mathbf{m} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{r}})\hat{\mathbf{r}} - \mathbf{m}}{r^3}$$

which is the same as the far-field of an electric dipole.

- Near the dipoles, the fields differ because the electric and magnetic fields are curlless and divergenceless, respectively. For instance, the field inside an electric dipole is opposite the dipole moment, while the field inside a magnetic dipole is in the same direction.

- One can show that, in the limit of small dipoles, the fields are

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \frac{3(\mathbf{p} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{r}})\hat{\mathbf{r}} - \mathbf{p}}{r^3} - \frac{1}{3\epsilon_0}\mathbf{p}\,\delta(\mathbf{r}), \quad \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \frac{3(\mathbf{m} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{r}})\hat{\mathbf{r}} - \mathbf{m}}{r^3} + \frac{2\mu_0}{3}\mathbf{m}\,\delta(\mathbf{r}).$$

These are the fields of so-called "physical" dipoles. These expressions can both be derived by considering dipoles of finite size, such as uniformly polarized/magnetized spheres, and taking the radius to zero.

Example. We can do more complicated variants of these tricks for a general current distribution,

$$A_i(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \int d\mathbf{r}' \left(\frac{J_i(\mathbf{r}')}{r} + \frac{J_i(\mathbf{r}')(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{r}')}{r^3} + \dots \right).$$

To simplify the first term, note that

$$\partial_j(J_j r_i) = (\partial_j J_j)r_i + J_i = J_i$$

where we used $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{J} = 0$. Then the monopole term is a total derivative and hence vanishes. The intuitive interpretation is that currents must go around in loops, with no net motion; our identity then says something like 'the center of charge doesn't move'.

To simplify the second term, note that

$$\partial_j(J_j r_i r_k) = J_i r_k + J_k r_i.$$

We can thus use this to 'antisymmetrize' the integrand,

$$\int d\mathbf{r}' \, J_i r_j r_j' = \int d\mathbf{r}' \frac{r_j}{2}(J_i r_j' - J_j r_i') = \left(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{2} \times \int d\mathbf{r}' \, \mathbf{J} \times \mathbf{r}' \right)_i$$

where we used the double cross product identity. Then we conclude the dipole field has the same form as before, with the more general dipole moment

$$\mathbf{m} = \frac{1}{2} \int d\mathbf{r}' \, \mathbf{r}' \times \mathbf{J}(\mathbf{r}')$$

which is equivalent to our earlier result by the vector identity

$$\frac{1}{2} \int \mathbf{r} \times d\mathbf{s} = \int d\mathbf{S}.$$

Example. The force on a magnetic dipole. The force on a general current distribution is

$$\mathbf{F} = \int d\mathbf{r}\, \mathbf{J}(\mathbf{r}) \times \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}).$$

For small distributions localized about $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{R}$, we can Taylor expand for

$$\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{R}) + (\mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla')\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}')\Big|_{\mathbf{r}'=\mathbf{R}}$$

where a prime denotes a derivative with respect to $\mathbf{r}'$. The first term contributes nothing, by the same logic as the previous example. In indices, the second term gives

$$\mathbf{F} = \int d\mathbf{r}\, \mathbf{J}(\mathbf{r}) \times \left((\mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla')\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}')\right) = \int d\mathbf{r}\, \epsilon_{ijk} J_i r_\ell \left(\partial'_\ell B_j(\mathbf{r}')\right) \hat{\mathbf{e}}_k.$$

Now we focus on the terms in parentheses. We assume the curl of $\mathbf{B}$ vanishes, which holds in almost all relevant situations (though see the caveats here). Since the curl is just the exterior derivative,

$$\partial_i B_j - \partial_j B_i = 0.$$

This looks different from the usual (3D) expression for vanishing curl, which contains ϵ_{ijk}, because there we additionally take the Hodge dual. This means that we can swap the indices for

$$\int d\mathbf{r}\, \epsilon_{ijk} J_i r_\ell \left(\partial'_j B_\ell(\mathbf{r}')\right) \hat{\mathbf{e}}_k = -\nabla' \times \int d\mathbf{r}\, (\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}'))\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{r}).$$

Now the integral is identical to our magnetic dipole integral from above, with a constant vector of $\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}')$ instead. Therefore

$$\mathbf{F} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{m}) = (\mathbf{m} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{B}.$$

where we used a product rule and the vanishing of the curl yet again.

If we assume $\mathbf{m}$ is constant, then we can rewrite the force as $\mathbf{F} = \nabla(\mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{m})$, again because the curl of $\mathbf{B}$ vanishes. Integrating that force yields the potential energy $U = -\mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{B}$, which is commonly given in introductory textbooks. However, this expression is tricky to interpret. When a magnetic dipole is moved through a field, generally emfs will be induced that can change the current. Therefore, treating $\mathbf{m}$ as a constant neglects the energy required to keep the magnetic dipole moment the same. (If we count backreaction on the field, it also neglects the energy required to keep the external magnetic field the same.) The potential energy here is only useful in the sense that its derivative gives the mechanical force on the dipole. Similarly, differentiating with respect to angle and assuming m stays the same gives the torque on a dipole, $\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{m} \times \mathbf{B}$.

2.3 Electrodynamics

The first fundamental equation of electrodynamics is Faraday's law,

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = 0.$$

In particular, defining the emf as

$$\mathcal{E} = \frac{1}{q} \int_C \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r}$$

where $\mathbf{F}$ is the Lorentz force on a charge q, we have

$$\mathcal{E} = -\frac{d\Phi}{dt}$$

where Φ is the flux through a surface with boundary C.

- For conducting loops, the resulting emf will create a current that creates a field that opposes the change in flux; this is Lenz's law. This is simply a consequence of energy conservation; if the sign were flipped, we would get runaway positive feedback.

- The integrated form of Faraday's law still holds for moving wires. Consider a loop C with surface S whose points have velocity $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r})$ in a static field. After a small time dt, the surface becomes S'. Since the flux through any closed surface is zero,

$$d\Phi = \int_{S'} \mathbf{B} \cdot d\mathbf{S} - \int_{S} \mathbf{B} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = - \int_{S_c} \mathbf{B} \cdot d\mathbf{S}$$

where S_c is the surface with boundary C and C'. Choosing this surface to be straight gives $d\mathbf{S} = (d\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{v}) \, dt$, so

$$\frac{d\Phi}{dt} = - \int_{C} \mathbf{B} \cdot (d\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{v}) = - \int_{C} (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot d\mathbf{r}.$$

Then Faraday's law holds as before, though the emf is now supplied by a magnetic force.

- Define the self-inductance of a curve C with surface S to be

$$L = \frac{\Phi}{I}$$

where Φ is the flux through S when current I flows through C. Then

$$\mathcal{E} = -L\frac{dI}{dt}, \quad U = \frac{1}{2}LI^2 = \frac{1}{2}I\Phi.$$

Inductors thus store energy when a current flows through them.

- As an example, a solenoid has $B = \mu_0 nI$ with total flux $\Phi = BAn\ell$ where ℓ is the total length. Therefore $L = \mu_0 n^2 V$ where $V = A\ell$ is the total volume.

- We can use our inductor energy expression to get the magnetic field energy density,

$$U = \frac{1}{2}I \int_{S} \mathbf{B} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{2}I \int_{C} \mathbf{A} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \frac{1}{2} \int d\mathbf{x} \, \mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{A}$$

where we turned the line integral into a volume integral.

- Using $\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mu_0 \mathbf{J}$ and integrating by parts gives

$$U = \frac{1}{2\mu_0} \int d\mathbf{x} \, \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{B}.$$

This does *not* prove the total energy density of an electromagnetic field is $u \sim E^2 + B^2$ because there can be $\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{B}$ terms, and we've only worked with static fields. Later, we'll derive the energy density properly by starting from a Lagrangian.

Finally, we return to Ampere's law,

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mu_0 \mathbf{J}.$$

As noted earlier, this forces $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{J} = 0$, so it must fail in general. The true equation is

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mu_0 \left(\mathbf{J} + \epsilon_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} \right)$$

so that taking the divergence now gives the full continuity equation. We see a changing electric field behaves like a current; it is called displacement current. This leads to propagating wave solutions.

- In vacuum, we have

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0, \quad \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t}, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mu_0 \epsilon_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t}.$$

Combining these equations, we find

$$\mu_0 \epsilon_0 \frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{E}}{\partial t^2} = -\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{E}) = \nabla^2 \mathbf{E}$$

with a similar equation for $\mathbf{B}$, so electromagnetic waves propagate at speed $c = 1/\sqrt{\mu_0 \epsilon_0}$.

- Taking plane waves with amplitudes $\mathbf{E}_0$ and $\mathbf{B}_0$, we read off from Maxwell's equations

$$\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{E}_0 = \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{B}_0 = 0, \quad \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{E}_0 = \omega \mathbf{B}_0$$

using the correspondence $\nabla \sim i\mathbf{k}$. In particular, $E_0 = cB_0$.

- The rate of change of the field energy is

$$\dot{U} = \int d\mathbf{x} \left(\epsilon_0 \mathbf{E} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{E}} + \frac{1}{\mu_0} \mathbf{B} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{B}} \right) = \int d\mathbf{x} \left(\frac{1}{\mu_0} \mathbf{E} \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{B}) - \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{J} - \frac{1}{\mu_0} \mathbf{B} \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{E}) \right).$$

Using a product rule, we have

$$\dot{U} = -\int d\mathbf{x} \, \mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{E} - \frac{1}{\mu_0} \int (\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot d\mathbf{S}.$$

This is a continuity equation for field energy; the first term is the rate work is done on charges, while the second describes the flow of energy along the boundary. In particular, the energy flow at each point in space is given by the Poynting vector

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{\mu_0} \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}.$$

- In an electromagnetic wave, the average field energy density is $\bar{u} = \epsilon_0 E^2 / 2$, where we get a factor of $1/2$ from averaging a square trigonometric function and a factor of 2 from the magnetic field. As expected, the Poynting vector obeys $S = c\bar{u}$.

- Electromagnetic waves can also be written in terms of potentials, though these have gauge freedom. A common choice for plane waves is to set the electric potential ϕ to zero.

2.4 Relativity

Next, we rewrite our results relativistically.

Note. Conservation of charge is specified by the continuity equation

$$\partial_\mu J^\mu = 0, \quad J^\mu = (\rho, \mathbf{J}).$$

For example, transforming an initially stationary charge distribution gives

$$\rho' = \gamma \rho_0, \quad \mathbf{J}' = -\gamma \rho \mathbf{v}.$$

Though the charge density is not invariant, the total charge is. To see this, note that

$$Q = \int d^3x \, J^0(x) = \int d^4x \, J^\mu(x) n_\mu \delta(n \cdot x).$$

Taking a Lorentz transform, we have

$$Q' = \int d^4x \, \Lambda^\mu{}_\nu J^\nu(\Lambda^{-1}x) n_\mu \delta(n \cdot x).$$

Now define $n' = \Lambda^{-1}n$ and $x' = \Lambda^{-1}x$. Changing variables to x',

$$Q' = \int d^4x' \, J^\nu(x') n'_\nu \delta(n' \cdot x').$$

This is identical to the expression for Q, except that n has been replaced with n'. Said another way, we can compute the total charge measured in another frame by doing an integral over a tilted spacelike surface in our original frame. Then by the continuity equation, we must have $Q = Q'$. More formally, we can use $n_\mu \delta(n \cdot x) = \partial_\mu \theta(n \cdot x)$ to show the difference is a total derivative.

Example. Deriving magnetism. Consider a wire with positive charges q moving with velocity v and negative charges $-q$ moving with velocity $-v$. Then

$$I = 2nAqv.$$

Now consider a particle moving in the same direction with velocity u, who measures the velocities of the charges to be $v_\pm = u \oplus (\mp v)$. Let n_0 be the number density in the rest frame of each kind of charge, so that $n = \gamma(v)n_0$. Using the property

$$\gamma(u \oplus v) = \gamma(u)\gamma(v)(1 + uv)$$

we can show the particle sees a total charge density of

$$\rho' = q(n_+ - n_-) = -q(uv\gamma(u))n$$

in its rest frame. It thus experiences an electric force of magnitude $F' \sim uv\gamma(u)$. Transforming back to the original frame gives $F \sim uv$, in agreement with our results from magnetostatics.

We now consider gauge transformations and the Faraday tensor.

- The fields are defined in terms of potentials as

$$\mathbf{E} = -\nabla\phi - \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}, \quad \mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}.$$

  Gauge transformations are of the form

$$\phi \to \phi - \frac{\partial \chi}{\partial t}, \quad \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{A} + \nabla\chi$$

  and leave the fields invariant.

- In relativistic notation, we define $A^\mu = (\phi, \mathbf{A})$ (noting that this makes the components of A_μ metric dependent), and gauge transformations are

$$A_\mu \to A_\mu - \partial_\mu \chi.$$

- The Faraday tensor is defined as

$$F_{\mu\nu} = \partial_\mu A_\nu - \partial_\nu A_\mu$$

and is gauge invariant. It contains the electric and magnetic fields in its components,

$$F_{\mu\nu} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & E_x & E_y & E_z \\ -E_x & 0 & -B_z & B_y \\ -E_y & B_z & 0 & -B_x \\ -E_z & -B_y & B_x & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

- In terms of indices or matrix multiplications,

$$F'^{\mu\nu} = \Lambda^\mu{}_\rho \Lambda^\nu{}_\sigma F^{\rho\sigma} \quad F' = \Lambda F \Lambda^T.$$

In the latter, F has both indices up, and Λ is the matrix that transforms vectors, $v \to \Lambda v$.

- Under rotations, $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ also rotate. Under boosts along the x direction,

$$E'_x = E_x, \quad E'_y = \gamma(E_y - vB_z), \quad E'_z = \gamma(E_z + vB_y),$$

$$B'_x = B_x, \quad B'_y = \gamma(B_y + vE_z), \quad B'_z = \gamma(B_z - vE_y).$$

- We can construct the Lorentz scalars

$$F_{\mu\nu}F^{\mu\nu} \propto \mathbf{E}^2 - \mathbf{B}^2, \quad F_{\mu\nu}\widetilde{F}^{\mu\nu} \propto \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{B}.$$

A quick way to arrive at the second result is to note that taking the dual maps $\mathbf{E} \to \mathbf{B} \to -\mathbf{E}$.

Note. The Helmholtz decomposition states that a general vector field can be written as a curl-free part plus a divergence-free part, as long as the field falls faster than $1/r$ at infinity. The slickest way to show this is to take the Fourier transform $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}(\mathbf{k})$, which is guaranteed to exist by the decay condition. Then the curl-free part is the part parallel to $\mathbf{k}$ (i.e. $(\tilde{\mathbf{F}}(\mathbf{k}) \cdot \hat{\mathbf{k}})\hat{\mathbf{k}}$), and the divergence-free part is the part perpendicular to $\mathbf{k}$. Since $\mathbf{A}$ can always be taken to be divergence-free, our expression for $\mathbf{E}$ above is an example of the Helmholtz decomposition.

Example. Slightly boosting the field of a line charge at rest gives a magnetic field $-\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{E}$ which wraps around the wire, thus yielding Ampere's law. For larger boosts, we pick up a Lorentz contraction factor γ due to the contraction of the charge density.

Example. A boosted point charge. Ignoring constants, the field is

$$\mathbf{E} \sim \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r^3} = \frac{1}{(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{3/2}} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}.$$

Now consider a frame moving with velocity $\mathbf{v} = v\hat{\mathbf{i}}$. Then the boosted field is

$$\mathbf{E}' \sim \frac{1}{(x^2 + y^2 + z^2)^{3/2}} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ \gamma y \\ \gamma z \end{pmatrix}$$

using the coordinates in the original field. Switching the coordinates to the boosted ones,

$$\mathbf{E}' \sim \frac{\gamma}{(\gamma^2(x' + vt')^2 + y'^2 + z'^2)^{3/2}} \begin{pmatrix} x' + vt' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix}$$

where we used $x = \gamma(x' + vt')$. Interestingly, the field remains radial. However, the x' coordinate in the denominator is effectively $\gamma x'$, so it's as if electric field lines have been length contracted. By charge invariance and Gauss's law, the total flux remains constant, so the field is stronger than usual along the perpendicular direction and weaker than usual along the parallel direction.

We conclude by rewriting Maxwell's equations and the Lorentz force law relativistically.

- Maxwell's equations are
$$\partial_\mu F^{\mu\nu} = \mu_0 J^\nu, \quad \partial_\mu \widetilde{F}^{\mu\nu} = 0.$$

  Note that this automatically implies current conservation. Also note that the second one holds automatically given $F = dA$.

- The relativistic generalization of the Lorentz force law is
$$\frac{dp^\mu}{d\tau} = qF^{\mu\nu}u_\nu$$

  where u is velocity. The spatial part is the usual Lorentz force, while the temporal part is
$$\frac{dE}{d\tau} = q\gamma\mathbf{E}\cdot\mathbf{u}.$$

  This simply says that electric fields do work, while magnetic fields don't.

- This can also be rewritten in terms of the canonical momentum $p^\mu + qA^\mu$,
$$\frac{d}{d\tau}(p^\mu + qA^\mu) = qu_\nu\partial^\mu A^\nu.$$

  As we mentioned above, in Hamiltonian mechanics this is the more relevant quantity. In the nonrelativistic limit, the components of this equation are
$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{1}{2}mv^2 + q\phi\right) = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}q(\phi - \mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{A}), \quad \frac{d}{dt}(m\mathbf{v} + q\mathbf{A}) = -\nabla q(\phi - \mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{A}).$$

- One neat trick is that whenever $\mathbf{E}\cdot\mathbf{B} = 0$, we can boost to get either zero electric or zero magnetic field. For example, a particle in crossed fields either goes a cycloid-like motion, or falls arbitrarily far; the sign of $E^2 - B^2$ separates the two cases.

Note. What is the physical meaning of the vector potential? A common reply is that it's physically meaningless because it's gauge-dependent, but this is too restrictive: under that standard, the scalar potential and the Hamiltonian itself are also physically meaningless! The common meaning of the scalar potential, that of the potential energy per charge, only makes sense for certain gauges. Similarly, the vector potential is the potential momentum per charge, again in certain gauges.

This was how Maxwell thought about the vector potential, which he actually called the "electromagnetic momentum", but this interpretation of it tends to be less useful. The reason is that the

time component of $p^\mu + qA^\mu$ is conserved whenever A_μ is time-independent, which can easily be arranged with a proper gauge choice in static problems, but it is much harder for the spatial part to be conserved. It can be arranged when A_μ is space-independent, but this renders everything trivial. However, if the problem has translational symmetry in one direction, we can choose a gauge where a component of $\mathbf{p} + q\mathbf{A}$ is conserved, while if the problem has rotational symmetry, then a component of the canonical angular momentum $\mathbf{r} \times (\mathbf{p} + q\mathbf{A})$ can be made to be conserved. For instance, this yields the conserved quantities of a particle in a magnetic field, which we previously derived using the adiabatic theorem.

We can also understand the idea of potential momentum by considering the particle and field together. The total field is a superposition of the background field and the particle's field,

$$\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{E}_0 + \mathbf{E}_p, \quad \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B}_0 + \mathbf{B}_p,$$

where the equations of motion above only involve the background field. The total energy and momentum are always conserved, but since they are quadratic in the fields, there are contributions specific to each, plus a cross term. For example, for a static particle, the field energy is

$$U = \int \frac{E^2}{2} + \frac{B^2}{2}\, dV = \int \left(\frac{E_0^2}{2} + \frac{B_0^2}{2} + E_0 E_p + \frac{E_p^2}{2} \right) dV = U_{00} + U_{0p} + U_{pp}.$$

When the fields is static and we work in a static gauge, where A_μ is constant, then

$$U_{pp} = p^0, \quad U_{0p} = qA^0.$$

Conservation of $p^0 + qA^0$ thus follows from conservation of U_{00}. Similarly, the field momentum is

$$\mathbf{P} = \int \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}\, dV = \int \mathbf{E}_0 \times \mathbf{B}_0 + \mathbf{E}_p \times \mathbf{B}_0\, dV$$

and the cross term, representing the interaction between the particle and field, is precisely $q\mathbf{A}$. To see this, we note that in a static gauge,

$$\int \mathbf{E}_p \times \mathbf{B}_0\, dV = -\int \nabla \phi_p \times \mathbf{B}_0\, dV = \int \phi_p \nabla \times \mathbf{B}_0\, dV = \int \phi_p \mathbf{J}_0\, dV$$

where we discarded a boundary term. Further restricting to Coulomb gauge, we have

$$\int \phi_p \mathbf{J}_0\, dV = \int \phi_p \nabla^2 \mathbf{A}_0\, dV = \int (\nabla^2 \phi_p) \mathbf{A}_0\, dV = \int q\mathbf{A}_0 \delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_p)\, dV = q\mathbf{A}_0(\mathbf{r}_p)$$

as desired.

2.5   Radiation

In this section, we show how radiation is produced by accelerating charges.

- Expanding the equation of motion, we have

$$\partial_\nu F^{\nu\mu} = \mu_0 J^\mu, \quad \partial^2 A^\mu - \partial^\mu \partial_\nu A^\nu = \mu_0 J^\mu.$$

  To simplify, we work on Lorenz gauge $\partial_\mu A^\mu = 0$, so

$$\partial^2 A^\mu = \mu_0 J^\mu.$$

  That is, the potential solves the wave equation, and its source is the current.

- Lorenz gauge exists if we can always pick a gauge transformation χ so that $\partial^2 \chi = -\partial_\mu A^\mu$. Thus solving the wave equation will also show us how to get to Lorenz gauge in the first place.

- The equation of motion in nonrelativistic notation is

$$\nabla^2 \phi + \frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A}) = -\frac{\rho}{\epsilon_0}$$

and

$$\nabla^2 \mathbf{A} - \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{A}}{\partial t^2} - \nabla\left(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} + \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial t}\right) = -\mu_0 \mathbf{J}.$$

This form is useful for gauge that break Lorentz invariance, such as Coulomb gauge, $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} = 0$.

- In Coulomb gauge, the expression for ϕ in terms of ρ is the same as in electrostatics, with no retardation, which appears to violate causality. This is physically acceptable because ϕ is not directly measurable, but it makes the analysis more confusing. However, Coulomb gauge is useful for certain calculation, as we will see for the Darwin Lagrangian.

- In Coulomb gauge, it is useful to break the current into transverse and longitudinal components,

$$\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{J}_\ell + \mathbf{J}_t, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{J}_\ell = 0, \quad \nabla \cdot \mathbf{J}_t = 0.$$

These can be computed explicitly from $\mathbf{J}$ by

$$\mathbf{J}_t(\mathbf{x}) = -\frac{1}{4\pi}\nabla \int \frac{\nabla' \cdot \mathbf{J}(\mathbf{x}')}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|}\, d\mathbf{x}', \quad \mathbf{J}_t = \frac{1}{4\pi}\nabla \times \nabla \times \int \frac{\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{x}')}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|}\, d\mathbf{x}'.$$

- Then the first equation of motion gives

$$\frac{1}{c^2}\nabla \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial t} = \mu_0 \mathbf{J}_t$$

which means that in the second equation of motion, only the transverse current sources $\mathbf{A}$,

$$\nabla^2 \mathbf{A} - \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{A}}{\partial t^2} = -\mu_0 \mathbf{J}_t$$

which makes sense because $\mathbf{A}$ has no longitudinal component.

Returning to Lorenz gauge, we are thus motivated to find the Green's function for ∂^2.

- Our first approach is to perform a Fourier transform in time only, for

$$(\nabla^2 + \omega^2)A_\mu = -\mu_0 J_\mu.$$

This is called the Helmholtz equation; the Poisson equation is the limit $\omega \to 0$. The function $J_\mu(\mathbf{x}, \omega)$ is the time Fourier transform of $J_\mu(\mathbf{x}, t)$ at every point $\mathbf{x}$.

- Define the Green's function for the Helmholtz equation as

$$(\nabla^2 + \omega^2)G_\omega(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \delta^3(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}').$$

Translational and rotational symmetry mean $G_\omega(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = G_\omega(r)$ where $r = |\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|$. We can think of $G_\omega(r)$ as the spatial response to a sinusoidal source of frequency ω at the origin.

- In spherical coordinates,
$$\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{d}{dr}\left(r^2\frac{dG_\omega}{dr}\right) + \omega^2 G_\omega = \delta(r).$$

  This equation has solutions
$$G_\omega(r) = -\frac{1}{4\pi}\frac{e^{\pm i\omega r}}{r}.$$

  One can arrive at this result by guessing that amplitudes fall as $1/r$, and hence working in terms of rG instead of G. The constant is found by integrating in a ball around $r = 0$.

- Plugging this result in, we have
$$A_\mu(\mathbf{x},\omega) = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi}\int d\mathbf{x}' \frac{e^{\pm i\omega|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|}}{|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|} J_\mu(\mathbf{x}',\omega).$$

  Therefore, taking the inverse Fourier transform,
$$A_\mu(\mathbf{x},t) = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi}\int d\!\!\!\!\,\omega \int d\mathbf{x}' \frac{e^{-i\omega(t\mp|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|)}}{|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|} J_\mu(\mathbf{x}',\omega) = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi}\int d\mathbf{x}' \frac{J_\mu(\mathbf{x}',t\mp|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|)}{|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|}.$$

- The result is like the solution to the Poisson equation, except that the current must be evaluated at the retarded or advanced time; we take the retarded time as physical, defining
$$t_{\text{ret}} = t - |\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|.$$

  We see that the Helmholtz equation contains the correct speed of light travel delay.

- Note that while the potentials just depend on the current in the usual way, but evaluated at the retarded time, the same is *not* true of the fields! When we differentiate the potentials, we pick up extra terms from differentiating t_{ret}. These extra terms are crucial because they provide the radiation fields which fall off as $1/r$, rather than $1/r^2$.

We can also take the Fourier transform in both time and space.

- The Green's function for the wave equation satisfies
$$\partial^2 G(\mathbf{x},t,\mathbf{x}',t') = \delta(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}')\delta(t-t').$$

  By translational symmetry in both space and time, $G = G(\mathbf{r},t)$.

- Taking a Fourier transform and solving, we have
$$G(\mathbf{k},\omega) = -\frac{1}{k^2 - \omega^2/c^2}.$$

- Inverting the Fourier transform gives
$$G(\mathbf{r},t) = -\int d\!\!\!\!\,^4 k \frac{e^{i(\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{r}-\omega t)}}{k^2 - \omega^2/c^2}.$$

  Switching to spherical coordinates with $\hat{\mathbf{z}} \parallel \mathbf{k}$ and doing the angular integration,
$$G(\mathbf{r},t) = \frac{1}{4\pi^3}\int_0^\infty dk\, c^2 k^2 \frac{\sin kr}{kr}\int_{-\infty}^\infty d\omega \frac{e^{-i\omega t}}{(\omega - ck)(\omega + ck)}.$$

- In order to perform the $d\omega$ integration, we need to deal with the poles. By adding an infinitesimal damping forward in time, we can push the poles below the real axis. Now, when $t < 0$, the integration contour can be closed in the upper-half plane, giving zero. When $t > 0$, we close in the lower-half plane, picking up both poles, so

$$\int_C d\omega \, \frac{e^{-i\omega t}}{(\omega - ck)(\omega + ck)} = -\frac{2\pi}{ck} \theta(t) \sin(ckt).$$

Finally, doing the dk integral gives some delta functions, for

$$G_{\text{ret}}(\mathbf{r}, t) = -\frac{\theta(t)}{4\pi r} \delta(t_{\text{ret}}).$$

This is the retarded Green's function; plugging it into the wave equation gives us the same expression for the retarded potential as derived earlier.

- We can also apply antidamping, getting the advanced Green's function

$$G_{\text{adv}}(\mathbf{r}, t) = -\frac{\theta(-t)}{4\pi r} \delta(t_{\text{adv}}).$$

- Both of these conventions can be visualized by pushing the integration contour above or below the real axis. If we instead tilt it about the origin, we get the Feynman propagator.

Note. Checking Lorenz gauge. Our retarded potential solution has the form

$$A_\mu(x) \sim \int d^4x' \, G(x, x') J_\mu(x').$$

Now consider computing $\partial_\mu A^\mu$. Since the Green's function only depends on $x - x'$, we have

$$\partial_\mu A^\mu \sim \int d^4x' \, \partial_\mu G(x, x') J_\mu(x') = -\int d^4x' \, (\partial'_\mu G(x, x')) J_\mu(x').$$

We can then integrate by parts; since $\partial_\mu J^\mu = 0$, Lorenz gauge holds.

We now use our results to analyze radiation from small objects.

- Consider an object centered on the origin with lengthscale d, with potential

$$A_\mu(\mathbf{x}, t) = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \int d\mathbf{x}' \, \frac{J_\mu(\mathbf{x}', t_{\text{ret}})}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|}.$$

We would like to compute the field at a distance $r = |\mathbf{x}| \gg d$. Taylor expanding,

$$\frac{1}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|} = \frac{1}{r} + \frac{\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{x}'}{r^3} + \dots, \quad J_\mu(\mathbf{x}', t_{\text{ret}}) = J_\mu(\mathbf{x}', t - r/c + \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{x}'/rc + \dots).$$

- Going to leading order in d/r gives the electric dipole approximation,

$$A_\mu(\mathbf{x}, t) \approx \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi r} \int d\mathbf{x}' \, J_\mu(\mathbf{x}', t - r/c).$$

This approximation only makes sense if the motion is nonrelativistic: the next correction term to t_{ret} is of order d/c, which is only small if the characteristic timescale of changes in the current is much greater than d/c.

- It's easiest to compute the field starting with the vector potential. We use the identity

$$\partial_j(J_j x_i) = -\dot\rho x_i + J_i, \quad \int d\mathbf{x}' J(\mathbf{x}') = \dot{\mathbf{p}}$$

which is like our results in magnetostatics, but allowing for a varying dipole moment $\mathbf{p}$. Evaluating this at the time $t - r/c$,

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x}, t) \approx \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi r} \dot{\mathbf{p}}(t - r/c).$$

- Applying the product rule, we have

$$\mathbf{B} \approx \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \left(-\frac{\hat{\mathbf{x}} \times \dot{\mathbf{p}}(t - r/c)}{r^2} - \frac{\hat{\mathbf{x}} \times \ddot{\mathbf{p}}(t - r/c)}{rc} \right).$$

The former is just the usual magnetic field but time-delayed, and the latter is the $1/r$ radiation field. If the dipole has characteristic frequency ω, then the latter dominates if $r \gg \lambda = c/\omega$, the far-field/radiation zone.

- In the radiation zone, the fields look like plane waves, with $\mathbf{E} = -c\hat{\mathbf{x}} \times \mathbf{B}$. Then

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{\mu_0} \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{c}{\mu_0} B^2 \hat{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{\mu_0}{16\pi^2 r^2 c} |\hat{\mathbf{x}} \times \ddot{\mathbf{p}}|^2 \hat{\mathbf{x}}$$

where we used the triple cross product rule.

- The total instantaneous power is thus

$$\mathcal{P} = \frac{\mu_0}{16\pi^2 c} \int \sin^2\theta \, d\Omega = \frac{\mu_0}{6\pi c} |\ddot{\mathbf{p}}|^2.$$

- Consider a particle of charge Q oscillating in the $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ direction with frequency ω and amplitude d, and hence dipole moment $p = Qz$. Expanding and time averaging,

$$\mathcal{P}_{\text{av}} = \frac{\mu_0 p^2 \omega^4}{12\pi c} = \frac{Q^2 a^2}{12\pi \epsilon_0 c^3}.$$

This is the Larmor formula; note that it is quadratic in charge and acceleration (the field is linear, but energy is bilinear). Since we used the electric dipole approximation, it only applies for nonrelativistic motion.

- Note that the radiation fields are zero along the $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ axis. This is related to the hairy ball theorem: since the radiation fields are everywhere tangent to spheres about the charge, they must vanish somewhere.

- By taking higher-order terms in our Taylor series, we can get magnetic dipole and electric quadrupole terms, and so on. The magnetic dipole term is dominant in situations where there is no electric dipole moment (e.g. a current loop), but for moving charges its power is suppressed by v^2/c^2 and hence is much smaller in the nonrelativistic limit.

We can apply our results to scattering.

- As a warmup, we consider Thomson scattering. Consider a free particle in light, and assume that it never moves far compared to the wavelength of the light. Equivalently, we assume it never moves relativistically fast. Then

$$m\ddot{\mathbf{x}}(t) \approx q\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{x} = 0, t), \quad \mathbf{x}(t) = -\frac{q\mathbf{E}_0}{m\omega^2}\sin(\omega t).$$

  Applying the Larmor formula,

$$\mathcal{P}_{\mathrm{av}} = \frac{\mu_0 q^4 E_0^2}{12\pi m^2 c}.$$

- The averaged Poynting vector for the light is

$$\mathcal{S}_{\mathrm{av}} = \frac{cE_0^2}{2\mu_0}.$$

  Therefore, Thomson scattering has a cross section of

$$\sigma = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{\mathrm{av}}}{\mathcal{S}_{\mathrm{av}}} = \frac{8\pi}{3}r_q^2, \quad \frac{q^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r_q} = mc^2.$$

  Here, r_q is called the classical electron radius. Note that it is independent of frequency.

- Thomson scattering is elastic, but if the particle moves relativistically fast, the scattered light can be redshifted by radiation recoil effects.

- Experimentally, it was found that the scattered light had a shifted wavelength for high frequencies and arbitrarily low intensities (Compton scattering), which provided support for the particle nature of light.

- Rayleigh scattering describes the scattering of light off a neutral but polarizable atom or molecule. We effectively add a spring and damping to the model of Thomson scattering, so

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = -\frac{q\mathbf{E}(t)/m}{\omega^2 - \omega_0^2 + i\gamma\omega}.$$

- In the limit $\omega \ll \omega_0$, which is a good approximation for visible light and molecules in the atmosphere, the amplitude is constant (rather than the $1/\omega^2$ for Thomson scattering), giving

$$\sigma = \frac{8\pi r_q^2}{3}\left(\frac{\omega}{\omega_0}\right)^4.$$

  The fact that $\sigma \propto \omega^4$ explains why the sky is blue. Intuitively, scattering of low frequency light is suppressed because the 'molecular springs' limit how far the electrons can go.

- Rayleigh scattering holds when the size of the molecules involved is much smaller than the wavelength of the light. In the case where they are comparable, we get Mie scattering, which preferentially scatters longer wavelengths. The reason is that nearby molecules oscillate in phase, so their amplitudes superpose, giving a quadratic increase in power. Mie scattering applies for water droplets in the atmosphere, explaining why clouds are visible, and white. In the case where the scattering particles are much larger, we simply use geometric optics.

Note. As a final note, we can generalize our results to a relativistically moving charge. Suppose a point charge has position $\mathbf{r}(t)$. Then its retarded potential is

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}, t) \propto \int d\mathbf{x}' \, \frac{\delta(\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{r}(t_{\text{ret}}))}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|}.$$

The tricky part is that t_{ret} depends on $\mathbf{x}'$ nontrivially. Instead, it's easier to switch the delta function to be over time,

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}, t) \propto \int d\mathbf{x}' \, dt \, \frac{\delta(\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{r}(t))\delta(t - t_{\text{ret}})}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|} = \int dt' \, \frac{\delta(t - t' - |\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{r}(t')|/c)}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{r}(t')|}.$$

The argument of the delta function changes both because of the t' and because of the velocity of the particle towards the point $\mathbf{x}$, giving an extra contribution akin to a Doppler shift. Then

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}, t) = \frac{q}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \frac{1}{R(t')(1 - \hat{\mathbf{R}}(t') \cdot \mathbf{v}(t')/c)}, \quad \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x}, t) = \frac{q\mu_0}{4\pi} \frac{\mathbf{v}(t')}{R(t')(1 - \hat{\mathbf{R}}(t') \cdot \mathbf{v}(t')/c)}, \quad t' + R(t')/c = t$$

where $\mathbf{R}$ is the separation vector $\mathbf{R}(t) = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{r}(t)$. These are the Lienard–Wiechert potentials. Carrying through the analysis, we can find the fields of a relativistic particle and the relativistic analogue of the Larmor formula. The result is that the radiation rate is greatly enhanced, and concentrated along the direction of motion of the particle.

Note. A cheap, very heuristic estimate of radiation power. Consider sound waves emitted by a speaker. The relevant field is the velocity field $\mathbf{v}$, and sources correspond to adding mass $\dot{M}$ (which the speaker simulates by pushing mass outward). The "coupling" is the inverse of the air density, $1/\rho$, in the sense that the static field and energy density are

$$v = \frac{\dot{M}}{4\pi\rho r^2}, \quad u = \frac{1}{2}\rho v^2.$$

Now we consider the power radiated by a spherically symmetric speaker, which has amplitude $\dot{M}$ and angular frequency ω. A simple estimate would be to take the energy density at some radius, and multiply it by $4\pi r^2 c$, where c is the speed of sound. However, at small radii, the $1/r$ radiation field is overwhelmed by a $1/r^2$ quasistatic field, which does not count as radiation.

By dimensional analysis, the two types of fields must be equally important at the intermediate field distance $r \sim c/\omega$. Evaluating the field there, we have

$$P \sim (4\pi r^2 c) \left(\frac{1}{2}\rho \left(\frac{\dot{M}}{4\pi\rho r^2} \right)^2 \right) \Bigg|_{r=c/\omega} = \frac{1}{8\pi} \frac{\dot{M}^2 \omega^2}{\rho c}.$$

This is a correct estimate of the radiation power; evaluating the static field at $r = c/\omega$ has saved us from having to think about how to *compute* the radiation field at all.

To convert this to electromagnetism, we convert $\dot{M}$ to q and the coupling $1/\rho$ to $1/\epsilon_0$, giving

$$P \sim \frac{1}{8\pi} \frac{q^2 \omega^2}{\epsilon_0 c}.$$

However, this is incorrect, because monopole radiation does not exist for electromagnetism, because of charge conservation. Instead, we need to use the static dipole field, which is smaller by a factor of ℓ/r where ℓ is the separation between the charges. This gives

$$P \sim \frac{1}{8\pi} \frac{q^2 \ell^2 \omega^4}{\epsilon_0 c^3}.$$

which is the Larmor formula up to an $O(1)$ factor. We can recast this in a more familiar form using $a \sim \ell \omega^2$. A similar argument can be used to estimate (electric) quadrupole radiation power,

$$P \sim \frac{1}{8\pi} \frac{q^2 \ell^4 \omega^6}{\epsilon_0 c^5}.$$

This is especially relevant for gravitational waves, where the quadrupole is the leading contribution, due to energy and momentum conservation. The charge is M and the coupling is $4\pi G$, giving

$$P \sim \frac{G}{2} \frac{M^2 \ell^4 \omega^6}{c^5}.$$

For a binary system of separation ℓ and masses M, we have

$$\omega^2 = \frac{GM}{\ell^3}$$

which gives

$$P \sim \frac{1}{2} \frac{G^4 M^5}{\ell^5 c^5}.$$

This matches the quadrupole formula, derived in the notes on General Relativity, up to a numeric factor.

Note. Two slowly moving charges can be approximately described by the Lagrangian

$$L = \sum_i \frac{1}{2} m_i v_i^2 - \frac{q_1 q_2}{r}.$$

It is difficult to account for radiation effects without having to think about the dynamics of the entire electromagnetic field, drastically increasing the number of degrees of freedom. A typical procedure is to compute the power radiated using the formulas above, then introduce it here as an ad hoc energy loss. Radiation can also be accounted for more directly through a "self-force" on each charge, but this is infamously tricky.

However, it is more straightforward to account for relativistic effects at lowest order. At order $(v/c)^2$, the two effects are the retardation of propagation of the Coulomb field, and the magnetic forces between the charges. We set $c = 1$ and work in Coulomb gauge. In this gauge, the scalar potential has no retardation at all, instead propagating instantaneously, so the desired effect is absorbed entirely into the vector potential. The new terms we want are

$$L_1 = q_1 \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{A}_2(\mathbf{r}_1) + q_2 \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{A}_1(\mathbf{r}_2).$$

Since there is already a prefactor linear in v, the vector potential can be taken to first order in v. This is the lowest order, so it can be found from the magnetostatic expression,

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \int d\mathbf{r}' \frac{\mathbf{J}_t(\mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}.$$

The transverse part of the current can be calculated by starting from the current of a point charge and taking the transverse part as described above. This leads to the Darwin Lagrangian,

$$L_1 = \frac{q_1 q_2}{2r} \left(\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{v}_2 + \frac{(\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{r})(\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{r})}{r^2} \right).$$

Going to higher order requires accounting for the field degrees of freedom.

2.6   Electromagnetism in Matter

In this section, we review basic, classical results involving electromagnetic fields in matter. We begin by considering insulators, which in this context are called dielectrics, in electric fields.

- For small, static electric fields, each atom of the material gains an average electric dipole moment $\mathbf{p} = \alpha \mathbf{E}$. The field may induce dipole moments, or simply align existing ones.

- To see where linearity breaks down, note that the only other electric fields in the problem are the fields in the atoms and molecules themselves. On dimensional grounds, we expect a linear result as long as the external field is much weaker than the internal fields, i.e. as long as the external field is far from being able to rip electrons off.

- As a result, the material gains a dipole moment density $\mathbf{P} = n\mathbf{p}$ where n is the atomic number density. Note that we are implicitly coarse-graining so that $n(\mathbf{x})$ is well-defined and $\mathbf{p}$ is averaged over atomic scales. This avoids rapid microscopic variations in $\mathbf{P}$.

- Though polarized materials are electrically neutral, there can still be accumulations of bound charge since $\mathbf{P}$ need not be uniform. To see this, note that

$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \int_V d\mathbf{r}' \, \frac{\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}') \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|^3}$$

where we set $4\pi\epsilon_0 = 1$ and used the dipole potential. Then

$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \int_V d\mathbf{r}' \, \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}') \cdot \nabla' \left(\frac{1}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|} \right) = \int_{\partial V} d\mathbf{S} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|} - \int_V d\mathbf{r}' \, \frac{\nabla' \cdot \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}$$

where we integrated by parts, which implies

$$\sigma_{\text{bound}} = \mathbf{P} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}}, \quad \rho_{\text{bound}} = -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{P}$$

at surfaces and in the bulk respectively. This latter result shows that polarization $\mathbf{P}$ creates an electric field $-\mathbf{P}/\epsilon_0$.

- In a linear isotropic dielectric, we have

$$\mathbf{P} = \epsilon_0 \chi_e \mathbf{E}$$

where χ_e is the electric susceptibility. Generally, χ_e is positive. Materials with $\mathbf{P} \neq 0$ even in zero external electric field are called ferroelectric. For strong fields we must account for higher-order terms, and if the dielectric is a crystalline solid we must account for the anisotropy, promoting χ_e to a tensor.

- In the previous equation, $\mathbf{E}$ is the total average field in the dielectric, counting both external fields and the fields sourced by the dielectric itself. For example, consider a parallel plate capacitor, whose plates alone produce field $\mathbf{E}_{\text{ext}}$. Then

$$\mathbf{P} = \epsilon_0 \chi_e \mathbf{E}, \quad \mathbf{E} = \mathbf{E}_{\text{ext}} - \mathbf{P}/\epsilon_0.$$

Solving for $\mathbf{P}$ and eliminating it, we find

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{\mathbf{E}_{\text{ext}}}{1 + \chi_e}$$

so we may identify the dielectric constant as $\kappa = 1 + \chi_e$. Since generally $\chi_e > 0$, the field is shielded by charge screening.

- To generalize this analysis, define free charge to be all charge besides bound charge, so that

$$\rho = \rho_{\text{bound}} + \rho_{\text{free}}.$$

  The electric field in Gauss's law is sourced by all charge,

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = \frac{\rho}{\epsilon_0}.$$

  We define the electric displacement so that it is sourced only by free charge,

$$\mathbf{D} = \epsilon_0 \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{P}, \quad \nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = \rho_{\text{free}}.$$

  This implies that at boundaries, $D_\perp$ is continuous. The name "electric displacement" is due to Maxwell, who thought of it as a literal displacement of the ether.

- For linear dielectrics, we then have

$$\mathbf{D} = \epsilon \mathbf{E}, \quad \epsilon = \epsilon_0 (1 + \chi_e)$$

  where ϵ is called the permittivity of the material. For example, a point charge in a dielectric medium would result in the electric field

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{q}{4\pi \epsilon r^2} \hat{\mathbf{r}}.$$

  The dielectric constant $\kappa = \epsilon/\epsilon_0$ is also called the relative permittivity ϵ_r.

- We may heuristically think of $\mathbf{D}$ as the "external field" $\epsilon_0 \mathbf{E}_{\text{ext}}$ alone. However, this analogy isn't perfect, because the above equation does not determine $\nabla \times \mathbf{D}$. We know that in electrostatics $\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = 0$, but the relation $\mathbf{D} = \epsilon \mathbf{E}$ means that at boundaries $\nabla \times \mathbf{D}$ is generically nonzero.

- Moreover, at a boundary we have

$$\Delta \mathbf{E}_\parallel = 0, \quad \Delta E_\perp = \frac{\sigma}{\epsilon_0}, \quad \Delta \mathbf{D}_\parallel = \Delta \mathbf{P}_\parallel, \quad \Delta D_\perp = \sigma_f.$$

Now we consider the confusing subject of dielectric energy.

- In situations with free and bound charge, the total energy has four terms,

$$U_{\text{tot}} = U_{\text{free}} + U_{\text{free/bound}} + U_{\text{bound}} + U_{\text{spring}}$$

  where the first three terms count electrostatic interactions, and U_{spring} is the non-electrostatic energy stored in the "springs" that hold each atom or molecule together.

- The standard energy density $\epsilon_0 E^2/2$ counts only the electrostatic energy, so it is missing U_{spring}. However, if we want to compute the work needed to bring free charges to a fixed dielectric, then we need the total energy U_{tot}. If we consider doing this gradually, we have

$$dU_{\text{tot}} = \int d\mathbf{r}\, V \, d\rho_f = \int d\mathbf{r}\, V \, \nabla \cdot (d\mathbf{D}) = \int d\mathbf{r}\, \mathbf{E} \cdot d\mathbf{D}$$

  where we integrated by parts and threw away a boundary term. This implies that

$$dU_{\text{spring}} = \int d\mathbf{r}\, \mathbf{E} \cdot d\mathbf{P}.$$

- For a linear dielectric, integrating gives

$$U_{\text{tot}} = \frac{1}{2} \int d\mathbf{r} \, \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{D}, \quad U_{\text{spring}} = \frac{1}{2} \int d\mathbf{r} \, \mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{P}.$$

  This implies that free charge is attracted to regions where ϵ is large.

- In the thermodynamics of dielectrics, it is ambiguous what to count as the "internal" energy of the material. A standard choice is to exclude all of the field energy, because it extends well outside of the atoms and molecules, so that only U_{spring} is counted. For a point dipole,

$$dU_{\text{spring}} = \mathbf{E} \cdot d\mathbf{p}.$$

- On the other hand, when thinking about mechanics, we might want a completely different quantity. Suppose that a fixed background field $\mathbf{E}_0$ is created, by charges artificially held in place, so that U_{free} is fixed. Then we might want to know the energy associated with bringing a dielectric into this field.

- To understand this, it's easier to start by thinking about bringing in a single point dipole. Assuming linear polarization for simplicity, the spring energy is quadratic,

$$U_{\text{spring}} = \frac{p^2}{2\alpha}.$$

  Let's suppose that the dipole moment $\mathbf{p}$ is artificially *fixed*, and then this fixed dipole is brought into the field. The resulting change in energy is

$$U_{\text{free/bound}} + U_{\text{bound}} = -\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{E}_0.$$

  This expression implies, for example, that a dipole with fixed dipole moment experiences a torque to align it with the external field. We could thus regard it as the "mechanical" energy.

- If we no longer fix the dipole moment, then minimizing the total energy of the dipole gives

$$\mathbf{p} = \alpha \mathbf{E}_0, \quad U_{\text{free/bound}} + U_{\text{bound}} + U_{\text{spring}} = -\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{E}_0 \cdot \mathbf{p}.$$

  The analogous expression for a linear dielectric turns out to be

$$U_{\text{free/bound}} + U_{\text{bound}} + U_{\text{spring}} = -\frac{1}{2} \int d\mathbf{r} \, \mathbf{E}_0 \cdot \mathbf{P}.$$

  This implies that dielectrics are attracted to regions with higher external field.

Note. In solids, there is no definite distinction between bound charge and free charge. For example, consider the ionic lattice of NaCl. We might divide the crystal into unit cells and treat each one as a molecule. Then the dipole moment of each unit cell due to "bound charge" depends on how the cell is chosen. Similarly, the "free" charge due to atoms on the boundary not in full unit cells also depends on the cell. Of course, the sum of these contributions must be independent of the cell.

Example. Consider a sphere of radius R with uniform polarization $\mathbf{P}$. This is equivalent to having two uniformly charged balls of total charge $\pm Q$ displaced by $\mathbf{d}$ so that $Q\mathbf{d} = (4\pi R^3/3)\mathbf{P}$. By the shell theorem, the field inside is

$$\mathbf{E}_p = -\frac{\mathbf{P}}{3\epsilon_0}$$

and the field outside is exactly a dipole field. Now suppose such a dielectric sphere is in a uniform field. The total field is

$$\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{E}_0 + \mathbf{E}_p$$

where $\mathbf{E}_0$ is the applied external field, and we know that

$$\mathbf{P} = \chi_e \epsilon_0 \mathbf{E}.$$

Solving the system, we find

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{3}{\kappa + 2}\mathbf{E}_0, \quad \mathbf{P} = 3\frac{\kappa - 1}{\kappa + 2}\epsilon_0 \mathbf{E}_0 = \frac{\chi_e}{1 + \chi_e/3}\epsilon_0 \mathbf{E}_0.$$

For small χ_e this is about equal to the naive result $\mathbf{P} = \chi_e \epsilon_0 \mathbf{E}_0$, but it is smaller because the sphere itself shields the field that it sees. This is important for relating χ_e to atomic measurements. The polarizability of an atom is defined as

$$\mathbf{p} = \alpha \mathbf{E}_0$$

where we only count the applied field $\mathbf{E}_0$, because the field produced by the atom itself is negligible. Then naively for a medium with a number density n of atoms, $\chi_e = n\alpha/\epsilon_0$. But instead we have

$$\alpha = \frac{3\epsilon_0}{n}\frac{\kappa - 1}{\kappa + 2}$$

which is called the Clausius–Mossotti formula, or the Lorentz–Lorenz equation in optics. One might worry that this result only applies for a spherical sample, but we need only imagine a spherical surface around each atom, much larger than the atomic size, for the argument to work.

Next, we turn to the analogous statements for magnetic fields. From the beginning, there is an additional subtlety.

- As discussed earlier, the "mechanical" potential energy of a magnetic dipole is

$$U_{\text{mech}} = -\boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B}.$$

It does not account for the energy required to maintain the magnetic dipole $\mathbf{m}$ or the field $\mathbf{B}$, which could be supplied by an electromagnet, but its derivative yields the correct mechanical forces on the dipole.

- The total field energy density is $B^2/2\mu_0$, so the interaction energy between two current distributions, the first of which is a dipole, is

$$U_{12} = \frac{1}{\mu_0}\int d\mathbf{r}\, \mathbf{B}_1 \cdot \mathbf{B}_2 = \int d\mathbf{r}\, \mathbf{J}_1 \cdot \mathbf{A}_2 = \boldsymbol{\mu}_1 \cdot \mathbf{B}_2.$$

This is precisely the opposite of U_{mech}.

- To see the two results are consistent, one can show the work required to maintain the dipole's current is $U_1 = \boldsymbol{\mu}_1 \cdot \mathbf{B}_2$. Then $U_1 + U_{\text{mech}} = 0$, reflecting the fact that magnetic fields do no work. Similarly the work required to maintain the external field is $U_2 = \boldsymbol{\mu}_2 \cdot \mathbf{B}_1 = \boldsymbol{\mu}_1 \cdot \mathbf{B}_2$ by reciprocity. Therefore, we have

$$U_{12} = U_{\text{mech}} + U_1 + U_2$$

  which means the energy U_{12} is correctly accounted for, once we include all contributions.

- In summary, U_{12} is the total interaction energy, but U_{mech} is the energy one should use when computing forces on dipoles. The subtleties here have nothing to do with the ones we encountered for dielectrics. They instead arise from using the wrong variables to describe the situation. In electrostatics, one can describe the interaction of two conductors by fixing their voltages or fixing their charges; in the former case we pick up an extra sign because batteries must do work to maintain the voltages. Similarly, in magnetostatics we can describe the interaction of two current distributions by fixing their currents or fixing their fluxes. Fluxes can be fixed for free, assuming perfect conductors, but currents must be fixed using batteries.

- Conceptually, the opposite sign in the total energy compared to the electric dipole case is because electric and magnetic dipoles have opposite internal fields. A magnetic dipole aligned with a magnetic field increases the total field energy, while an electric dipole decreases it.

Now we consider the magnetization and magnetizing field.

- Define the magnetization $\mathbf{M}$ as the dipole moment density. In a linear medium, we define

$$\mathbf{M} = \frac{1}{\mu_0} \frac{\chi_m}{1 + \chi_m} \mathbf{B}.$$

  This is not fully analogous to the definition of χ_e, and we'll see why later.

  - Diamagnetic materials have $-1 < \chi_m < 0$.
  - Superconductors, or permanent diamagnets have $\chi_m = -1$ and hence $\mathbf{B} = 0$. Superconductivity should not be confused with perfect conductivity, which ensures $\mathbf{E} = 0$ inside a solid. This makes $\mathbf{B}$ constant, but the constant need not be zero.
  - Paramagnets have $\chi_m > 0$.
  - Ferromagnets can have $\mathbf{M} \neq 0$ even when $\mathbf{B} = 0$.

  Diamagnets are repelled by regions of higher $\mathbf{B}$ field while paramagnets are attracted.

- Note that a dielectric has $\chi_e > 0$ but is attracted to regions of higher $\mathbf{E}$. These sign flips are again because of the differences in the internal fields. Both dielectrics and diamagnets reduce the field in the bulk.

- By similar manipulations to the electric case, we see that magnetization leads to the surface and volume currents

$$\mathbf{K}_{\text{bound}} = \mathbf{M} \times \hat{\mathbf{n}}, \quad \mathbf{J}_{\text{bound}} = \nabla \times \mathbf{M}.$$

- The magnetic field in Ampere's law in sourced by all current,

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mu_0 (\mathbf{J}_{\text{free}} + \mathbf{J}_{\text{bound}}).$$

We define the magnetizing field $\mathbf{H}$ so it is sourced only by free current,

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{1}{\mu_0}\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{M}, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \mathbf{J}_{\text{free}}.$$

- In a linear medium, we then have

$$\mathbf{M} = \chi_m \mathbf{H}, \quad \mu = \mu_0(1 + \chi_m), \quad \mathbf{B} = \mu \mathbf{H}$$

where μ is called the permeability of the material. Note that the definition of χ_m is different from that of χ_e, which instead related $\mathbf{D}$ and $\mathbf{E}$.

- The asymmetry is because $\mathbf{J}_{\text{free}}$ and hence $\mathbf{H}$ is easy to measure, by using an ammeter outside of the material. But a voltmeter indirectly measures $\mathbf{E}$, which depends on the total charge ρ, not ρ_{free}. The definitions of χ_m and χ_e are hence made so they are easy to measure.

- In general, $\mathbf{H}$ is a much more useful quantity than $\mathbf{D}$, though both are used for historical reasons. In fact, some sources regard $\mathbf{H}$ as the fundamental quantity and call it the magnetic field, referring to $\mathbf{B}$ to the magnetic induction.

- As before, we may think of $\mathbf{H}$ as the magnetic field sourced by $\mathbf{J}_{\text{free}}$ alone, but this is deceptive because $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{H} \neq 0$. The boundary conditions are

$$\Delta \mathbf{B}_{\parallel} = \mu_0(\mathbf{K} \times \hat{\mathbf{n}}), \quad \Delta B_{\perp} = 0, \quad \Delta \mathbf{H}_{\parallel} = \mathbf{K}_f \times \hat{\mathbf{n}}, \quad \Delta H_{\perp} = -\Delta M_{\perp}.$$

- Just as for dielectrics, we may define the internal energy as

$$U = \frac{1}{2}\int d\mathbf{r}\, \mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{B} = \frac{1}{2}\int d\mathbf{r}\, \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{J}_{\text{free}}.$$

This is subject to the same disclaimers as for dielectrics.

Note. Earnshaw's theorem for magnets. We know that in free space, $\nabla^2 V = 0$, so one cannot stably confine charges by an electrostatic field. Similarly, one might ask if it is possible to confine magnetic materials using a magnetostatic field.

The effective potential experienced by the material is proportional to $|\mathbf{B}|$, and we know $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$ and $\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = 0$. Then the Laplacian of a field component vanishes,

$$\partial^2 B_i = \partial_j \partial_j B_i = \partial_j \partial_i B_j = \partial_i(\partial_j B_j) = 0$$

where the second step uses the curl-free condition. We thus have

$$\partial^2(B^2) = 2B_i \partial^2 B_i + 2\partial_j B_i \partial_j B_i = 2(\partial_j B_i)^2 \geq 0.$$

Therefore, B^2 and hence $|\mathbf{B}|$ can have local minima but not local maxima. Since diamagnets are attracted to regions with low $|\mathbf{B}|$, we can have stable equilibrium for diamagnets but not paramagnets.

Examples of the former include superconducting levitation (since superconductors are perfect diamagnets) and magnetic traps for atomic gases (when the atoms are chosen to be diamagnetic). There's also a cute toy called the levitron, which achieves stable levitation of a permanent magnet spinning like a top. A permanent magnet behaves like a paramagnet, in the sense that it tends to

flip over to align with the magnetic field, but the spin of the top keeps the magnet anti-aligned with the field, and thus behaving like a diamagnet.

Similarly, a polarizable material experiences force

$$\mathbf{F} = -\nabla(-\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{E}) = \alpha \nabla E^2$$

where $\alpha \geq 0$. By the same logic as above, an electrostatic field cannot have a local maximum for E^2, so it can't trap polarizable particles. However, trapping is possible for time-varying fields, and this is the principle behind laser tweezers.

Now we consider Maxwell's equations in matter.

- The main difference is that a time-dependent electric polarization yields a current,

$$\mathbf{J}_p = \frac{\partial \mathbf{P}}{\partial t}$$

  in addition to the bound current $\mathbf{J}_b$. Hence Ampere's law takes the complicated form

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mu_0 \left(\mathbf{J}_f + \nabla \times \mathbf{M} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{P}}{\partial t} \right) + \mu_0 \epsilon_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t}.$$

- Ampere's law is significantly simplified by switching to $\mathbf{H}$ and $\mathbf{D}$, giving

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \mathbf{J}_f + \frac{\partial \mathbf{D}}{\partial t}.$$

  The other Maxwell equations are

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = \rho_f, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t}, \quad \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$$

  and this formulation has the advantage of depending only on free charge and free current, which is why it often appears on electrical engineers' t-shirts.

- In a situation without free charge or free current, such as in a neutral insulator, we have

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = 0, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t}, \quad \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{D}}{\partial t}.$$

  Assuming the medium is linear, switching back to electric and magnetic fields gives

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t}, \quad \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mu\epsilon \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t}$$

  which are just the original Maxwell's equations with a general μ and ϵ. Thus, for example, there are plane wave solutions propagating at speed $v = 1/\sqrt{\mu\epsilon} \equiv c/n$, with $E_0 = vB_0$.

- In other situations, we cannot ignore free charge and free current. For a conductor, we have $\mathbf{J}_f = \sigma\mathbf{E}$, and assuming it is a linear medium, Maxwell's equations become

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = \frac{\rho_f}{\epsilon}, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t}, \quad \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mu\sigma\mathbf{E} + \mu\epsilon \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t}.$$

  However, the free charge exponentially decays,

$$\frac{\partial \rho_f}{\partial t} = -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{J}_f = -\sigma(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E}) = -\frac{\sigma}{\epsilon}\rho_f$$

  which reflects the fact that the charge goes to the boundaries of a conductor.

- In the limit that all the free charge has decayed away, the only new term is the $\mu\sigma\mathbf{E}$ term in Ampere's law. If we try to derive the wave equation as usual, by taking the curl of Ampere's and Faraday's laws, we find

$$\nabla^2\mathbf{E} = \mu\epsilon\frac{\partial^2\mathbf{E}}{\partial t^2} + \mu\sigma\frac{\partial\mathbf{E}}{\partial t}, \quad \nabla^2\mathbf{B} = \mu\epsilon\frac{\partial^2\mathbf{B}}{\partial t^2} + \mu\sigma\frac{\partial\mathbf{B}}{\partial t}.$$

The new term implies several effects. First, a plane wave with real k has complex ω, causing it to dissipate over time. A plane wave with real ω has complex k, which physically means that waves are reflected from the surface of a conductor, over a length scale called the skin depth. Finally, in the quasistatic limit where the $\partial^2\mathbf{B}/\partial t^2$ term is negligible, the wave equation reduces to a diffusion equation for $\mathbf{B}$, implying that an induced magnetic field spreads out.

3 Statistical Mechanics

3.1 Ensembles

First, we define the microcanonical ensemble.

- The fundamental postulate of statistical mechanics is that, for an isolated system in equilibrium, all accessible microstate are equally likely. Here, accessible means 'reachable due to small fluctuations'. For example, such fluctuations cannot modify conserved quantities.

- For simplicity, we suppose that energy is the only conserved quantity. Then the probability of occupying state $|n\rangle$ is

$$p_n = \frac{1}{\Omega(E)}$$

  where $\Omega(E)$ is the number of states with energy E.

- We know that for a quantum system the energy levels can be discrete, but for a thermodynamically large system they form a continuum. Then what we really mean by $\Omega(E)$ is the number of states with energy in $[E, E + \delta E]$ where δE specifies how well we know the energy.

- We define the entropy of the system to be

$$S(E) = k_B \log \Omega(E).$$

  For two non-interacting systems, Ω multiplies, so S adds. That is, entropy is extensive.

- Often, we consider systems in the classical limit. In this case, the many-particle equivalent of the WKB approximation applies, which states that for a system of N particles, there is one quantum state per h^N of phase space volume. The entropy in this case can then be defined in terms of the logarithm of the volume of available phase space.

- Now suppose we allow two systems to weakly interact, so they can exchange energy, but the energy levels of the states aren't significantly shifted. Then the number of states is

$$\Omega(E_{\text{total}}) = \prod_{E_i} \Omega_1(E_i)\Omega_2(E_{\text{total}} - E_i) = \sum_{E_i} \exp\left(\frac{S_1(E_i) + S_2(E_{\text{total}} - E_i)}{k_B}\right).$$

  After allowing the systems to come to equilibrium, so that the new system is described by a microcanonical ensemble, we find the entropy has increased. This is an example of the Second Law of Thermodynamics.

- Since S is extensive, the argument of the exponential above is huge in the thermodynamic limit, so we can approximate the sum by its maximum summand. (This is just the discrete saddle point method.) Then the final entropy is approximately $S_{\text{total}} = S_1(E_*) + S_2(E_{\text{total}} - E_*)$ where E_* is chosen to maximize S_{total}.

Note. Motivating the fundamental postulate. In a generic dynamical system, we would expect a generic initial distribution of states to settle into an "attractor", thereby justifying equilibrium ensembles. But the situation in Hamiltonian mechanics is subtler, because Liouville's theorem tells us that phase space attractors don't exist. Instead, what happens is that any initial distribution

gets distorted and folded all throughout the phase space, so that after any coarse-graining, the result looks like the microcanonical ensemble.

To make this a little bit more rigorous, we note that in practice, we usually use statistical mechanics to predict the time averages of single systems; the microcanonical ensemble is valid if the time average equals the ensemble average. Let us consider a reduced phase space S which has constant energy. We define an ergodic component of S to be a subset that remains invariant under time evolution, and an ergodic system to be one whose ergodic components are measure zero, or the same measure as S.

By Liouville's theorem, the microcanonical ensemble over S is time-independent, so its ensemble average equals its time average. However, long time averages are constant along trajectories, so for an ergodic system, time averages are the same starting from almost all of S. Therefore, the time average starting from almost any point equals the microcanonical ensemble average.

There are many different definitions of ergodicity, and it is generally hard to establish any. (Ergodicity is also sometimes used as a synonym for chaos. Though they often appear together, chaos is specifically about the exponential divergence of nearby trajectories, while ergodicity is about what happens in the long run. There is another distinct criterion called "mixing", which has to do with the decay of autocorrelation functions.)

This entire discussion gets far more complex when one moves to quantum statistical mechanics. In quantum mechanics, the idea of a phase space distribution is blurred, and there is a huge variety of time-independent ensembles, since energy eigenstates don't evolve in time. However, many-body energy eigenstates are generally extremely fragile superpositions, which are not observed in practice; instead, such states quickly decohere into a mixture of non-eigenstates.

Note. Not every nontrivial, realistic system is ergodic. For example, if the solar system were ergodic, then one would expect catastrophic results, such as Earth and Venus swapping places, or Jupiter ejecting every planet from the solar system, as these are permitted by conservation laws.

In the case where the planets don't interact, the motion takes place on invariant tori. The KAM theorem states that in the three-body problem, for sufficiently weak interplanetary interactions, and for planetary orbit periods that were not resonant (i.e. close to simple rational numbers), the tori are distorted but survive. Numerically, we find that stronger interactions completely destroy the tori. This was the culmination of much work in the 19th century, which attempted to find convergent series to describe the evolution.

Ergodicity can also fail due to kinetic barriers. For example, a cold magnet with spontaneous symmetry breaking will in practice never fluctuate to have its bulk magnetization point the opposite direction, so to match with observation we must fix the magnetization, even though there is no corresponding conservation law. Similarly, as glasses are cooled, they become trapped in one of many metastable states.

Next, we define temperature.

- Keeping V implicitly fixed for the partial derivatives below, we define the temperature T as

$$\frac{1}{T} = \frac{\partial S}{\partial E}.$$

  Comparing this with our previous result, we find that in thermal equilibrium, the temperatures of the two systems are equal. Moreover, in the approach to equilibrium, energy flows from the hotter system to the colder one.

- The heat capacity is defined as

$$C = \frac{\partial E}{\partial T}, \quad \Delta S = \int \frac{C(T)}{T} dT.$$

  Hence measuring the heat capacity allows us to measure the entropy.

- Above, we are only guaranteed that E_* maximizes S_{total} if, for each of the two systems,

$$\frac{\partial^2 S_i}{\partial E^2} < 0.$$

  If a system does not satisfy this condition, it is thermodynamically unstable. Placed in contact with a reservoir, it would never reach thermal equilibrium, instead emitting or absorbing as much energy as possible. In terms of the heat capacity, stability requires $C > 0$.

- For example, black holes are hotter than the CMB, and so emit energy by Hawking radiation. Since they get hotter as they lose energy, they continue emitting energy until they disappear.

- Another exotic option is for a system to have negative temperature. Such a system gets more ordered as it absorbs energy. From the purposes of entropy maximization, negative temperature is always "hotter" than any positive temperature. This weird behavior is just because the natural variable is $1/T$. The simple general rule is that heat always flows to higher $1/T$.

We now add pressure and volume as thermodynamic variables.

- We now let Ω, and hence S, depend on volume. Define the pressure p as

$$p = T\frac{\partial S}{\partial V}\bigg|_E = -\frac{\partial E}{\partial V}\bigg|_S$$

  where we used the triple product rule. Then by similar arguments as above, the pressures of systems are equal in thermal equilibrium.

- This might sound strange, because we are used to pressure balancing because of mechanical equilibrium. The point is that *both* mechanical and thermal equilibrium ensure pressure balance independently, even though in many cases the former might take effect much faster, e.g. when two gases are separated by a movable heat conducting piston.

- Rearranging the total differential of entropy, we find

$$dE = T\,dS - p\,dV.$$

  We call 'work' the energy transferred by exchange of volume; the rest is 'heat'. More generally, we can write the work as a sum $\sum J_i dx_i$ where the x_i are generalized displacements and the J_i are their conjugate generalized forces, adding yet more terms.

- In general, the (x_i, J_i) behave similarly to (S, T). In equilibrium, the J_i are equal. For stability, we must have $\partial^2 E/\partial x^2 > 0$, which implies that the matrix $\partial J_i/\partial x_j$ is positive definite. For example, a gas with $(\partial p/\partial V)|_T > 0$ is unstable to expansion or collapse.

Next, we define the canonical ensemble.

- Consider a system S in thermal equilibrium with a large reservoir R. Then the number of microstates associated with a state where the system has energy E_n is

$$\Omega = \Omega_R(E_{\text{total}} - E_n) = \exp\left(\frac{S_R(E_{\text{total}} - E_n)}{k_B}\right) \approx \exp\left(\frac{S_R(E_{\text{total}})}{k_B} - \frac{\partial S_R}{\partial E_{\text{total}}}\frac{E_n}{k_B}\right)$$

  where the approximation holds because the reservoir is very large. Here we have summed over reservoir states, which one could call "integrating out" or "tracing out" the reservoir.

- We conclude $\Omega \propto e^{-E_n/k_B T}$, so the probability of occupancy of a state n with energy E_n is

$$p_n = \frac{e^{-E_n/k_B T}}{Z}, \quad Z = \sum_n e^{-E_n/k_B T}.$$

  For convenience, we define $\beta = 1/k_B T$. The partition function Z just normalizes the distribution. If one takes the ground state energy to be zero, it heuristically measures the number of available states.

- One might protest that the only reason we get an exponential in the final result is because we chose to Taylor expand the logarithm of Ω, i.e. the entropy, and take just the leading term. More precisely, the derivation above holds *only* when the subleading terms really can be neglected in the thermodynamic limit. For a wide variety of systems, this is true of $\log \Omega$, but not Ω itself or other functions thereof, as we will see in the next example.

Example. As we will see below, the entropy of an ideal gas depends on energy logarithmically,

$$S(E) \sim N \log E.$$

The entropy thus admits a good Taylor series expansion,

$$S(E - \epsilon) \sim S(E) - \epsilon \frac{N}{E} - \frac{\epsilon^2}{2}\frac{N}{E^2} + \dots.$$

In the thermodynamic limit the higher order terms are suppressed by powers of ϵ/E, which is small because ϵ is a system energy and E is a reservoir energy. This allows the derivation of the canonical ensemble to go through. On the other hand, if we expanded the number of states $\Omega(E) \sim E^N$,

$$\Omega(E - \epsilon) \sim \Omega(E) - \epsilon N E^{N-1} + \frac{\epsilon^2}{2}N(N-1)E^{N-2} + \dots$$

and higher-order terms are suppressed by powers of $N\epsilon/E$, which is not small. (Another way of saying this is that the thermodynamic limit is $N \to \infty$, but with E/N held fixed.)

Example. For noninteracting systems, the partition functions multiply. Another useful property is that the partition function is similar to the cumulant generating function for the energy,

$$f(\gamma) = \log\langle e^{\gamma E}\rangle = \log \sum_n \frac{e^{-(\beta - \gamma)E_n}}{Z}.$$

The cumulants are the derivatives of f evaluated at $\gamma = 0$. Only the numerator contributes to this term, and since it contains only $(\beta - \gamma)$ we can differentiate with respect to β instead,

$$f^{(n)}(\gamma)|_{\gamma=0} = (-1)^n \frac{\partial^n (\log Z)}{\partial \beta^n}.$$

As an explicit example,

$$\langle E \rangle = -\frac{\partial \log Z}{\partial \beta}, \quad \text{var } E = \frac{\partial^2 \log Z}{\partial \beta^2}.$$

However, since $\text{var } E = -\partial \langle E \rangle / \partial \beta$, we have

$$\text{var } E = k_B T^2 C_V$$

which is a relative of the fluctuation-dissipation theorem. Moreover, all cumulants of the energy can be found by differentiating $\langle E \rangle$, so they are all extensive. Then in the thermodynamic limit the system has a definite energy and the canonical and microcanonical ensembles coincide. (This doesn't hold when we're applying the canonical ensemble to a small system, like a single atom.)

To see this another way, note that

$$Z = \sum_{E_i} \Omega(E_i) e^{-\beta E_i}$$

where we are now summing over energies instead of states. But in the thermodynamic limit, the two factors in the sum are rapidly rising and falling, so they are dominated by the maximum term, which has fixed energy.

Example. We now compute the entropy of the canonical ensemble. Suppose we had W copies of the canonical ensemble; then there will be $p_n W$ systems in state $|n\rangle$. Since W is large, we can consider all the copies to lie in the microcanonical ensemble, for which the entropy is

$$S = k_B \log \Omega = k_B \log \frac{W!}{\prod_n (p_n W)!} = -k_B W \sum_n p_n \log p_n.$$

Since entropy is extensive, the entropy of one copy is

$$S = -k_B \sum_n p_n \log p_n$$

and this expression is called the Gibbs entropy. It is proportional to the Shannon entropy of information theory; it is the amount of information we gain if we learn what the microstate is, given knowledge of the macrostate.

Next, we define the free energy and other potentials.

- We define the free energy in the canonical ensemble as

$$F = E - TS.$$

  We have tacitly taken the thermodynamic limit, defining E as $\langle E \rangle$.

- The differential of F can be written in terms of dT and dV as

$$dF = -S\,dT - p\,dV, \quad S = -\frac{\partial F}{\partial T}\bigg|_V, \quad p = -\frac{\partial F}{\partial V}\bigg|_T.$$

  Sometimes, one hears statements like "F is a natural function of T and V, while E is a natural function of S and V". Of course, either of these quantities can be written as functions of any two of (P, V, T, S), by using the expression for entropy and the equation of state. The language just means that when F is regarded as a function of T and V, its differential is very simple.

- To relate F to Z, use our expression for the Gibbs entropy for

$$S/k_B = -\sum_n \frac{e^{-\beta E_n}}{Z} \log \frac{e^{-\beta E_n}}{Z} = \log Z + \langle \beta E \rangle.$$

  Rearranging, we find that

$$F = -k_B T \log Z.$$

- Next, we can allow the particle number N to vary, and define the chemical potential

$$\mu = -T \frac{\partial S}{\partial N}\bigg|_{E,V}.$$

  The total differential of energy becomes

$$dE = T\,dS - p\,dV + \mu\,dN, \quad \mu = \frac{\partial E}{\partial N}\bigg|_{S,V}$$

  where we used the triple product rule.

- Note that the chemical potential for an classical gas is negative, because it is the energy cost of a particle at fixed S. To keep the entropy the same, we typically have to remove more energy than the particle's presence added. By contrast, for the Fermi gas at zero temperature, $\mu = E_F > 0$ because the entropy is exactly zero.

- We may similarly define the grand canonical ensemble by allowing N to vary. Then

$$p_n = \frac{e^{-\beta(E_n - \mu N_n)}}{\mathcal{Z}}, \quad \mathcal{Z}(T, \mu, V) = \sum_n e^{-\beta(E_n - \mu N_n)}$$

  where $\mathcal{Z}$ is the grand canonical partition function.

- We can extract information about the distribution of N by differentiating $\mathcal{Z}$. The cumulant generating function argument goes through as before, giving

$$\langle N \rangle = \frac{\partial \log \mathcal{Z}}{\partial (\beta \mu)}, \quad \text{var } N = \frac{\partial^2 \log \mathcal{Z}}{\partial (\beta \mu)^2}.$$

  In particular, as with energy, we see that variance is extensive, so fluctuations disappear in the thermodynamic limit.

- Similarly, we define the grand canonical potential $\Phi = F - \mu N$, so that

$$d\Phi = -S\,dT - p\,dV - N\,d\mu, \quad \Phi = -k_B T \log \mathcal{Z}$$

  by analogous arguments to before. In other words, (E, Z, F) is analogous to $(F, \mathcal{Z}, \Phi)$.

Example. In most cases, the energy and entropy are extensive. This implies that

$$E(\lambda S, \lambda V, \lambda N) = \lambda E(S, V, N).$$

Differentiating at $\lambda = 1$, we find

$$E = TS - pV + \mu N.$$

Taking the total differential, we have the Gibbs–Duhem equation,

$$S\,dT - V\,dp + N\,d\mu = 0.$$

We also see that the grand canonical potential is $\Phi = -pV$, which provides an easy way to calculate the pressure. Note that if we performed one further Legendre transformation from V to p, we would get a potential that is identically zero! This makes sense, as with no extensive variables left, our "system" would have no characteristics independent of the bath. As such, the potential $\Phi + pV$ is not useful. Another useful insight is that $\mu = G/N$, so the chemical potential measures the Gibbs free energy per molecule.

3.2 Thermodynamics

At this point, we start over with thermodynamics. For simplicity, we'll consider gases whose only thermodynamic variables are pressure, volume, and temperature.

- The point of thermodynamics is to describe a system with many degrees of freedom in terms of only its macroscopically observable quantities, which we call the thermodynamic variables. Historically this approach was taken by necessity, and it continues to be useful today because of its simplicity. It gives only partial information, but this limited information is often exactly what we want to know in practice anyway.

- Thermodynamics is a kind of predecessor to the modern idea of effective field theory and the renormalization group. As described in the notes on Statistical Field Theory, it can be derived from microscopic physics by applying statistical mechanics and successive coarse grainings until only macroscopic information remains. But thermodynamics also stands on its own; to a large extent, its validity is independent of what the microscopic physics is.

- The Zeroth Law states that thermal equilibrium between systems exists, and is transitive. This means that we can assign systems a temperature $T(p, V)$ so that systems with the same temperature are in equilibrium. The equation $T = T(p, V)$ is called an equation of state. At this stage, T can be replaced by $f(T)$ for any monotonic f.

- The First Law tells us that energy is a state function. Work is the subset of energy transfers due to macroscopically observable changes in macroscopic quantities, such as volume. All other energy transfer is called heat, so

$$dE = đQ + đW$$

where the $đ$ indicates an inexact differential. (Here 'exact' is used in the same sense as in the theory of differential forms, as all terms above can be regarded as one-forms on the space of thermodynamic variables.)

- The Second Law tells us that it's impossible to transfer heat from a colder body to a warmer body without any other effects.

- A Carnot cycle is a process involving an ideal gas that extracts heat Q_H from a hot reservoir and performs work W and dumps heat Q_L to a cold reservoir. We define the efficiency

$$\eta = \frac{W}{Q_H}.$$

By construction, the Carnot cycle is reversible. Then by the Second Law, no cycle can have greater efficiency.

- By composing two Carnot cycles, we have the constraint

$$(1 - \eta(T_1, T_3)) = (1 - \eta(T_1, T_2))(1 - \eta(T_2, T_3))$$

  where T is the temperature. Therefore

$$1 - \eta(T_1, T_2) = \frac{f(T_2)}{f(T_1)}.$$

  For simplicity, we make the choice $f(T) = T$, thereby fixing the definition of temperature. (In statistical mechanics, this choice is forced by the definition $S = k_B \log \Omega$.)

- Under this choice, the Carnot cycle satisfies $Q_H/T_H + Q_C/T_C = 0$. Since any reversible process can be decomposed into infinitesimal Carnot cycles,

$$\oint \frac{đQ}{T} = 0$$

  for any reversible cycle. This implies that $\int đQ/T$ is independent of path, as long as we only use reversible paths, so we can define a state function

$$S(A) = \int_0^A \frac{đQ}{T}.$$

- Again using the Second Law, we have the Clausius inequality

$$\oint \frac{đQ}{T} \leq 0$$

  for any cycle. In particular, suppose we have an irreversible adiabatic path from A to B and a reversible path back. Then the Clausius inequality says $S(B) \geq S(A)$, which is the usual statement of the Second Law.

- The Third Law tells us that S/N goes to zero as T goes to zero; this means that heat capacities must go to zero. Another equivalent statement is that it takes infinitely many steps to get to $T = 0$ via isothermal and adiabatic processes.

- In statistical mechanics, the Third Law simply says that the log-degeneracy of the ground state can't be extensive. For example, in a system of N spins in zero field, one might think that the ground state has degeneracy 2^N. But in reality, arbitrarily weak interactions always break the degeneracy.

Note. Reversible and irreversible processes. For reversible processes only, we have

$$đQ_{\text{rev}} = T\,dS, \quad đW_{\text{rev}} = -p\,dV.$$

For example, in the process of free expansion, the volume and entropy change, even though there is no heat or work. Now, for a reversible process the First Law gives $dE = T\,dS - p\,dV$. Since both sides are state functions, this must be true for *all* processes, though the individual terms will no longer describe heat or work! We'll ignore this subtlety below and think of all changes as reversible.

Example. We define the enthalpy, Helmholtz free energy, and Gibbs free energy as

$$H = U + PV, \quad F = U - TS, \quad G = U + PV - TS.$$

Then we have

$$dH = T\,dS + V\,dp, \quad dF = -S\,dT - p\,dV, \quad dG = -S\,dT + V\,dp.$$

From these differentials, we can read off the natural variables of these functions. Also, to convert between the quantities, we can use the Gibbs–Helmholtz equations

$$U = -T^2 \left(\frac{\partial(F/T)}{\partial T} \right)_V, \quad H = -T^2 \left(\frac{\partial(G/T)}{\partial T} \right)_p$$

which follow straightforwardly from the product rule.

Note. The potentials defined above have direct physical interpretations. Consider a system with $đW = -p\,dV + đW'$, where $đW'$ contains other types of work, such as electrical work supplied by a battery. Since $đQ \leq T\,dS$, the First Law gives

$$-p\,dV + đW' \geq dU - T\,dS.$$

If the process is carried out at constant volume, then $dF = dU - T\,dS$, so $đW' \geq dF$. Then the Helmholtz free energy represents the maximum amount of work that can be extracted at fixed temperature. If instead we fix the pressure, then $đW' \geq dG$, so the Gibbs free energy represents the maximum amount of non-$p\,dV$ work that can be extracted.

The interpretation of enthalpy is different; at constant pressure, we have $dH = T\,dS = đQ_{\text{rev}}$, so changes in enthalpy tell us whether a chemical reaction is endothermic or exothermic.

Note. Deriving the Maxwell relations. Recall that area in the TS plane is heat and area in the pV plane is work. In a closed cycle, the change in U is zero, so the heat and work are equal,

$$\int dp\,dV = \int dT\,dS.$$

Since the cycle is arbitrary, we have the equality of differential 2-forms

$$dp \wedge dV = dT \wedge dS.$$

In terms of calculus, this means the Jacobian for changing variables from (p, V) to (T, S) is one. This equality can be used to derive all the Maxwell relations. For example, suppose we write $T = T(S, V)$ and $P = P(S, V)$. Expanding the differentials and using $dS \wedge dS = dV \wedge dV = 0$,

$$\left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial V} \right)_S dV \wedge dS = \left(\frac{\partial P}{\partial S} \right)_V dS \wedge dV$$

from which we read off a Maxwell relation. The other three can be derived the same way, so physically the Maxwell relations simply express energy conservation. (Maxwell originally derived them in a similar way, but using the language of Euclidean geometry!)

We now give some examples of problems using the Maxwell relations and partial derivative rules.

Example. As stated above, the natural variables of U are S and V. Other derivatives, such as $\partial U/\partial V|_T$, are complicated, though one can be deceived because it is simple (i.e. zero) for ideal gases. But generally, we have

$$\left.\frac{\partial U}{\partial V}\right|_T = \left.\frac{\partial U}{\partial V}\right|_S + \left.\frac{\partial U}{\partial S}\right|_V \left.\frac{\partial S}{\partial V}\right|_T = -p + T\left.\frac{\partial p}{\partial T}\right|_V = \left.\frac{\partial(p/T)}{\partial T}\right|_V$$

where we used a Maxwell relation in the second equality. This is the simplest way of writing $\partial U/\partial V|_T$ in terms of thermodynamic variables.

Example. The ratio of isothermal and adiabatic compressibilities is

$$\frac{\kappa_T}{\kappa_S} = \frac{(\partial V/\partial p)|_T}{(\partial V/\partial p)|_S} = \frac{(\partial V/\partial T)|_p(\partial T/\partial p)|_V}{(\partial V/\partial S)|_p(\partial S/\partial p)||_V} = \frac{(\partial V/\partial T)|_p(\partial S/\partial V)|_p}{(\partial p/\partial T)|_V(\partial S/\partial p)||_V} = \frac{(\partial S/\partial T)|_p}{(\partial S/\partial T)|_V} = \gamma$$

where we used the triple product rule, the reciprocal rule, and the regular chain rule.

Example. The entropy for one mole of an ideal gas. We have

$$dS = \left(\frac{\partial S}{\partial T}\right)_V dT + \left(\frac{\partial S}{\partial V}\right)_T dV = \frac{C_V}{T}dT + \left(\frac{\partial p}{\partial T}\right)_V dV.$$

Using the ideal gas law, $(\partial p/\partial T)|_V = R/V$, and integrating gives

$$S = \int \frac{C_V}{T}\,dT + \int \frac{R}{V}\,dV = C_V \log T + R \log V + \text{const.}$$

where we can do the integration easily since the coefficient of dT doesn't depend on V, and vice versa. The singular behavior for $T \to 0$ is incompatible with the Third Law, as is the result $C_P = C_V + R$, as all heat capacities must vanish for $T \to 0$. These tensions are because Third Law is quantum mechanical, and they indicate the classical model of the ideal gas must break down. A more careful derivation starting from statistical mechanics, given below, can account for the dependence on N and the unknown constant.

Example. Work for a rubber band. Instead of $dW = -pdV$, we have $dW = fdL$, where f is the tension. Now, we have

$$\left(\frac{\partial S}{\partial L}\right)_T = -\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial T}\right)_L = -\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial L}\right)_T \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial T}\right)_f$$

where we used a Maxwell relation, and both of the terms on the right are positive (rubber bands act like springs, and contract when cold). The sign can be understood microscopically: an expanding gas has more position phase space, but if we model a rubber band as a chain of molecules taking a random walk with a constrained total length, there are fewer microstates if the length is longer.

Next, using the triple product rule gives

$$\left(\frac{\partial S}{\partial T}\right)_L \left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial L}\right)_S > 0$$

and the first term must be positive by thermodynamic stability; therefore a rubber band heats up if it is quickly stretched, just the opposite of the result for a gas.

Example. Work for electric dipoles. In the previous section, we argued that the increment of work for an electric dipole is

$$dU_{\mathrm{dip}} = \mathbf{E} \cdot d\mathbf{p}$$

which corresponds directly to the $F\,dx$ energy when the dipole is stretched. However, one could also include the potential energy of the dipole in the field,

$$U_{\mathrm{pot}} = -\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{E}, \quad dU_{\mathrm{pot}} = -\mathbf{p} \cdot d\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{E} \cdot d\mathbf{p}$$

which thereby includes some of the electric field energy. Conventions differ over whether this should be counted as part of the dipole's "internal" energy, as the electric fields are not localized to the dipole. If we do count it, we find

$$dU_{\mathrm{tot}} = d(U_{\mathrm{dip}} + U_{\mathrm{pot}}) = -\mathbf{p} \cdot d\mathbf{E}$$

and similarly $dU_{\mathrm{tot}} = -\mathbf{m} \cdot d\mathbf{B}$ for magnetic dipoles. Ultimately, the definition is simply a matter of convention, and observable quantities will always agree. For example, the Maxwell relations associated with the "internal energy" U_{dip} are the same as the Maxwell relations associated with the "free energy" $U_{\mathrm{tot}} + \mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{E}$. Switching the convention simply swaps what is called the internal energy and what is called the free energy, with actual results staying the same.

Note. In practice, the main difference between magnets and gases is that m decreases with temperature, while p increases; then cycles involving magnets in (m, B) space run opposite the analogous direction for gases.

Note. Chemical reactions. For multiple reactions, we get a contribution $\sum_i \mu_i \, dN_i$ to the energy. Now, consider an isolated system where some particle has no conservation law; then the amount N_i of that particle is achieved by minimizing the free energy, which sets $\mu = 0$. This is the case for photons in most situations. More generally, if chemical reactions can occur, then minimizing the free energy means that chemical potentials are balanced on both sides of the reaction.

As an example, consider the reaction $n\,A \leftrightarrow m\,B$. Then in equilibrium, $n\mu_A = m\mu_B$. On the other hand, if the A and B species are both uniformly distributed in space, then

$$\mu_i = k_B T \log \frac{N}{V} + \mathrm{const.}$$

Letting $[A]$ and $[B]$ denote the concentrations of A and B, we thus have the law of mass action,

$$\frac{[A]^n}{[B]^m} = K(T)$$

which generalizes in the obvious way to more complex reactions. (In introductory chemistry classes, the law of mass action is often justified by saying that the probability for $n\,A$ molecules to come together is proportional to $[A]^n$, but this isn't a good argument because real reactions occur in multiple stages. For example, two A molecules could combine into an unstable intermediate, which then react with a third A molecule, and so on.)

Note. The Clausius–Clapeyron equation. At a phase transition, the chemical potentials of the two phases (per molecule) are equal. Now consider two nearby points on a coexistence curve in (p, T) space. If we connect these points by a path in the region with phase i, then

$$\Delta\mu_i = -s_i \, dT + v_i \, dP$$

where we used $\mu = G/N$, and s_i and v_i are the entropy and volume divided by the total particle number N. Since we must have $\Delta\mu_1 = \Delta\mu_2$,

$$\frac{dP}{dT} = \frac{s_2 - s_1}{v_2 - v_1} = \frac{L}{T(V_2 - V_1)}.$$

This can also be derived by demanding that a heat engine running through a phase transition doesn't violate the Second Law.

Note. Insight into the Legendre transform. The Legendre transform of a function $F(x)$ is the function $G(s)$ satisfying

$$G(s) + F(x) = sx, \quad s = \frac{dF}{dx}$$

from which one may show that $x = dG/ds$. The symmetry of the above equation makes it clear that the Legendre transform is its own inverse. Moreover, the Legendre transform crucially requires $F(x)$ to be convex, in order to make the function $s(x)$ single-valued. It is useful whenever s is an easier parameter to control or measure than x.

However, the Legendre transforms in thermodynamics seem to come with some extra minus signs. The reason is that the fundamental quantity is entropy, not energy. Specifically, we have

$$F(\beta) + S(E) = \beta E, \quad \beta = \frac{\partial S}{\partial E}, \quad E = \frac{\partial F}{\partial \beta}.$$

That is, we are using β and E as conjugate variables, not T and S! Another hint of this comes from the definition of the partition function,

$$Z(\beta) = \int \Omega(E) e^{-\beta E} \, dE, \quad F(\beta) = -\log Z(\beta), \quad S(E) = \log \Omega(E)$$

from which we recover the above result by the saddle point approximation.

3.3   Entropy and Information

In this section, we consider entropy most closely, uniting the two definitions above.

- In thermodynamics, the entropy satisfies $dS = \dbar Q/T$. Equivalently, a process conserves the entropy if it is reversible, with the system in equilibrium throughout, and all energy transfer is done through macroscopically observable quantities. In statistical mechanics, the entropy quantifies the amount of phase space volume corresponding to the macrostate specified by those macroscopic quantities.

- These two ideas are unified by the adiabatic theorem. An entropy-conserving process in thermodynamics corresponds to a slowly varying Hamiltonian which satisfies the requirements of the adiabatic theorem; this leads immediately to the conservation of phase space volume. The same idea holds in quantum statistical mechanics, where the entropy quantifies the number of possible states, which is conserved by the quantum adiabatic theorem.

- The general results of thermodynamics are not significantly changed if the underlying microscopic physics changes. (Steam engines didn't stop working when quantum mechanics was discovered!) For example, suppose it is discovered that a gas can be magnetized. Subsequently including the magnetization in the list of thermodynamic variables would change the numeric values of the work, free energy, entropy, and so on.

- However, this does not invalidate results derived without this variable. Work quantifies how much energy is given to a system through macroscopically measurable means. Entropy quantifies how many states a system could be in, given the macroscopically measured variables. Free energy quantifies how much work we can extract from a system given knowledge of those same variables. (In the limit of including all variables, the free energy simply becomes the microscopic Hamiltonian.) All of these can perfectly legitimately change if more quantities become measurable.

- A more modern, unifying way to think about entropy is as a measure of our subjective ignorance of the state. As we saw above for the canonical ensemble,

$$S = -k_B \sum_n p_n \log p_n.$$

But this is proportional to $-\langle \log_2 p_n \rangle$, the expected number of bits of information we receive upon learning the state n. We can use this to define the entropy for nonequilibrium systems.

- In the context of Hamiltonian mechanics, the entropy becomes an integral over phase space of $-\rho \log \rho$. By Liouville's theorem, the entropy is thus conserved. However, as mentioned earlier, in practice the distribution gets more and more finely foliated, so that time evolution combined with coarse-graining increases the entropy.

- In the context of information theory, the Shannon information $-\langle \log_2 p_n \rangle$ is the average number of bits per symbol needed to transmit a message, if the symbols in the message are independent and occur with probabilities p_n.

- More generally, the Shannon information is a unique measure of ignorance, in the sense that it is the only function of the $\{p_n\}$ to satisfy the following reasonable criteria.

  1. $S(\{p_n\})$ is maximized when the p_n are all equal.
  2. $S(\{p_n\})$ is not changed by the addition of outcomes with zero probability.
  3. Consider any function $A(n)$ of the options n, whose possible values have distribution p_{A_m}. The expected decrease of S upon learning the value of A should be equal to $S(\{p_{A_m}\})$. (Note that this implies the entropy is extensive for noninteracting subsystems.)

- Extending this reasoning further leads to a somewhat radical reformulation of statistical mechanics, promoted by Jaynes. In this picture, equilibrium distributions maximize entropy not because of their dynamics, but because that is simply the least informative guess for what the system is doing. This seems to me to be too removed from the physics to actually be a useful way of thinking, but it is a neat idea.

Example. Glasses are formed when liquids are cooled too fast to form the crystalline equilibrium state. Generally, glasses occupy one of many metastable equilibrium states, leading to a "residual entropy" (i.e. quenched disorder) at very low temperatures. To estimate this residual entropy, we could start with a cold perfect crystal (which has approximately zero entropy), melt it, then cool it into a glass. The residual entropy is then

$$S_{\text{res}} = \int_{T=0}^{T=T_\ell} \frac{dQ}{T} + \int_{T=\ell}^{T=0} \frac{dQ}{T}.$$

In other words, the residual entropy is related to the amount of "missing heat", which we transfer in when melting the crystal, but don't get back when turning it into a crystal.

More concretely, consider a double well potential with energy difference δ and a much larger barrier height. As the system is cooled to $k_B T \lesssim \delta$, the system gets stuck in one of the valleys, leading to a statistical entropy of $k_B \log 2 \sim k_B$. If the system gets stuck in the higher valley, then there is a "missing" heat of δ, which one would have harvested at $T \sim \delta/k_B$ if the barrier were low, so the system retains a thermodynamic entropy of $\delta/T \sim k_B$. Hence both definitions of entropy agree: there is a residual entropy of roughly k_B times the number of such "choices" the system must make as it cools.

Note. Some people object that identifying subjective information with entropy is a category error; however, it really is true that "information is physical". Suppose that memory is stored in a computer as follows: each bit is a box with a divider. For a bit value of 0/1, a single bouncing atom is present on the left/right side. Bit values can be flipped without energy cost; for instance, a 0 can be converted to a 1 by moving the left wall and the divider to the right simultaneously.

One can harvest energy by forgetting the value of a bit, yielding Szilard's engine. Concretely, one allows the divider to move out adiabatically under the pressure of the atom. Once the divider is at the wall, we insert a new divider at the original position. We have harvested a $P\,dV$ work of $k_B T \log 2$, at the cost of no longer knowing the value of the bit. Thus, pure "information" can be used to turn heat into work.

This reasoning also can be used to exorcise Maxwell's demon. It is possible for a demon to measure the state of a previously unknown bit without any energy cost, and then to extract work from it. However, in the process, the entropy of the demon goes up – concretely, if the demon uses similar bits to perform the measurement, known values turn into unknown values.

We would have a paradox if the demon were able to reset these unknown values to known ones without consequence. But if the demon just tries to push pistons inward, then he increases the temperatures of the atoms, and thereby produces a heat of $k_B T \log 2$ per bit. That is, erasing pure "information" can cause the demon to warm up. As such, there is nothing paradoxical, because the demon just behaves in every way like an ordinary cold reservoir.

The result that $k_B T \log 2$ heat is produced upon erasing a bit is known as Landauer's principle, and it applies quite generally, since the logic above also holds for any system obeying Liouville's theorem. It also applies to computations that involve irreversible steps. For example, an AND gate fed with uniformly random inputs produces an output with a lower Shannon entropy, which means running the AND gate on such inputs must produce heat. Numerically, at room temperature, we have $k_B T \log 2 = 0.0175 \text{ eV}$. However, computation can be performed with no heat dissipation at all if one uses only reversible gates. During the computation one accumulates "garbage" bits that cannot be erased; at the end one can just copy the answer bits, then run the computation in reverse. Numerous concrete models of reversible computation have been proposed to demonstrate this point, as once it was thought that Landauer's principle implied computation itself required energy dissipation.

Note. What is the temperature of a moving body in special relativity? This is a controversial question, with different authors proposing $T' = T/\gamma$, $T' = T$, and $T' = \gamma T$. A thorough review of the literature is given here. My personal opinion is the following. Our first choice would be to define the temperature as "whatever a thermometer measures", but this doesn't work. For example, consider a thermometer immersed in blackbody radiation of temperature T. Different thermometers could have different absorptivities $a(f)$, but the reading at equilibrium will be the same no matter

what $a(f)$ is, because of Kirchoff's law of thermal radiation $a(f) = e(f)$. But if we boost the radiation, this is no longer true, because the radiation no longer has a blackbody spectrum in the thermometer's frame.

This hints at a deeper problem with defining temperature. In general, thermodynamic quantities like temperature, pressure, and chemical potential are set equal at equilibrium, because they reflect the entropy cost of exchanging some conserved quantity, namely energy, volume, and particle number. But once we consider moving bodies, there is another conserved quantity that can be exchanged, namely momentum. The corresponding temperature-like quantity should combine with the usual temperature in a four-vector. Explicitly, we may define

$$\beta_\mu = \left(\frac{\partial S}{\partial p^\mu} \right)_{V,N}$$

and the rest temperature of a body with four-velocity u^μ is always $(u^\mu \beta_\mu)^{-1}$. Here, β_μ is a covector because the entropy is a Lorentz scalar, as it reflects the number of possible microstates. The temperature measured by a thermometer moving with respect to the body generally depends on all the components β_μ, with the specific expression depending on the design of the thermometer. (We don't run into this subtlety with pressure or chemical potential, because it is fairly easy to build a thermometer that exchanges energy but not volume or particle number. It is much harder to build a thermometer that somehow exchanges energy but not momentum.)

In the rest frame, we have $\beta_\mu = (1/T, \mathbf{0})$, which means in a general frame,

$$\beta_\mu = \left(\frac{\gamma}{T}, \frac{\gamma}{T} \frac{\mathbf{v}}{c} \right).$$

If one chooses to define the temperature in a moving frame by $\beta_0 = 1/T$, then this implies $T' = T/\gamma$. However, such a definition is meaningless because what really matters is the whole four-vector.

3.4   Classical Gases

We first derive the partition function by taking the classical limit of a noninteracting quantum gas.

Example. For each particle, we have the Hamiltonian $\hat{H} = \hat{p}^2/2m + V(\hat{q})$, where the potential confines the particle to a box. The partition function is defined as $Z = \operatorname{tr} e^{-\beta \hat{H}}$. In the classical limit, we neglect commutators,

$$e^{-\beta \hat{H}} = e^{-\beta \hat{p}^2/2m} e^{-\beta V(\hat{q})} + O(\hbar).$$

Taking the trace over the position degrees of freedom,

$$Z \approx \int dq \, e^{-\beta V(q)} \langle q | e^{-\beta \hat{p}^2/2m} | q \rangle = \int dq \, dp \, dp' \, e^{-\beta V(q)} \langle q | p \rangle \langle p | e^{-\beta \hat{p}^2/2m} | p' \rangle \langle p' | q \rangle.$$

Evaluating the p' integral, and using $\langle q | p \rangle = e^{ipq/\hbar}/\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}$, we find

$$Z = \frac{1}{h} \int dq \, dp \, e^{-\beta H(p,q)}$$

in the classical limit. Generically, we get integrals of $e^{-\beta H}$ over phase space, where h is the unit of phase space volume. The value of h won't affect our classical calculation, as it only affects Z by a multiplicative constant.

Next, we recover the properties of the classical ideal gas.

- For a particle in an ideal gas, the position integral gives a volume factor V. Performing the Gaussian momentum integrals,

$$Z = \frac{V}{\lambda^3}, \quad \lambda = \sqrt{\frac{2\pi\hbar^2}{mk_BT}}.$$

  The thermal de Broglie wavelength λ is the typical de Broglie wavelength of a particle. Then our expression for Z makes sense if we think of Z as the 'number of thermally accessible states', each of which could be a wavepacket of volume λ^3.

- For N particles, we have

$$Z = \frac{1}{N!}\frac{V^N}{\lambda^{3N}}.$$

  The factor of $N!$ is known as the Gibbs correction. It must be included to avoid overcounting configurations of indistinguishable particles; without it, the entropy is not extensive. For a wonderful discussion of the Gibbs correction, which also touches on conceptual issues about entropy, see *The Gibbs Paradox*.

- The entropy of the ideal gas is

$$S = -\frac{\partial F}{\partial T} = \frac{\partial}{\partial T}(k_BT\log Z) = Nk_B\left[\log\frac{V}{N\lambda^3} + \frac{5}{2}\right]$$

  where we used Stirling's approximation and dropped sub-extensive terms. This is the Sackur-Tetrode equation. Note that while the entropy depends explicitly on h, the value of h is not detectable since only entropy differences can be measured classically. Using this, we can recover the ideal gas law and the internal energy, which obeys equipartition.

- In the grand canonical ensemble, we have

$$\mathcal{Z} = \sum_N e^{\beta\mu N}Z(N) = \exp\left(\frac{e^{\beta\mu}V}{\lambda^3}\right).$$

  Then the particle number is

$$N = \frac{1}{\beta}\frac{\partial}{\partial\mu}\log\mathcal{Z} = \frac{e^{\beta\mu}V}{\lambda^3}, \quad \mu = k_BT\log\frac{\lambda^3 N}{V}.$$

  The chemical potential is thus negative, as the classical limit is valid for $\lambda^3 \ll V/N$.

- We can easily derive the velocity distribution F and speed distribution f,

$$F(\mathbf{v}) \propto e^{-mv^2/2k_BT} \quad f(v) \propto v^2 e^{-mv^2/2k_BT}.$$

  One common, slick derivation of this is to assume the velocity components are independent and identically distributed, and F can only depend on the speed by rotational symmetry. Then

$$F(v) = \phi(v_x)\phi(v_y)\phi(v_z)$$

  which has only one solution, $F(\mathbf{v}) \propto e^{-Av^2}$. However, this derivation is wrong, because in general the velocity components are not independent.

Example. Gaseous reactions. At constant temperature, the chemical potential per mole of gas is

$$\mu(p) = \mu^\circ + RT \log(p/p^\circ)$$

where μ° is the chemical potential at standard pressure p°. For a reaction $A \leftrightarrow B$, we define the equilibrium constant as $K = p_B/p_A$. Then

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^\circ + RT \log \frac{p_B}{p_A} \qquad \log K = -\frac{\Delta G^\circ}{RT}.$$

This result also holds for arbitrarily complicated reactions. Applying the Gibbs–Helmholtz relation,

$$\frac{d \log K}{dT} = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{RT^2}$$

which is an example of Le Chatelier's principle.

Example. Counting degrees of freedom. A monatomic gas has three degrees of freedom; the atom has kinetic energy $(3/2)k_B T$. The diatomic gas has seven: the three translational degrees of freedom of the center of mass, the two rotations, and the vibrational mode, which counts twice due to the potential energy of the bond, but is frozen out at room temperature.

   An alternating counting method is to simply assign $(3/2)k_B T$ kinetic energy to every atom; this is correct because the derivation of the monatomic gas's energy holds for each atom separately, in the moment it collides with another. The potential energy then adds $(1/2)k_B T$.

We now consider the effects of weak interactions.

- Corrections to the ideal gas law are often expressed in terms of a density expansion,

$$\frac{p}{k_B T} = \frac{N}{V} + B_2(T)\frac{N^2}{V^2} + B_3(T)\frac{N^3}{V^3} + \cdots$$

  where the $B_i(T)$ are called the virial coefficients.

- To calculate the coefficients, we need an ansatz for the interaction potential. We suppose the density is relatively low, so only pairwise interactions matter, so

$$H_{\text{int}} = \sum_{i<j} U(r_{ij}).$$

- If the atoms are neutral with no permanent dipole moment, they will have an attractive $1/r^6$ van der Waals interactions. Atoms will also have a strong repulsion at short distances; in the Lennard–Jones potential, we take it to be $1/r^{12}$ for convenience. In our case, we will take the even simpler choice of a hard core repulsion,

$$U(r) = \begin{cases} \infty & r < r_0 \\ -U_0(r_0/r)^6 & r \geq r_0. \end{cases}$$

- Performing the momentum integral as usual, the partition function is

$$Z(N,V,T) = \frac{1}{N!\lambda^{3N}} \int \prod_i d\mathbf{r}_i \, e^{-\beta \sum_{j<k} U(r_{jk})}.$$

It is tempting to expand in βU, but this doesn't work because U is large (infinite!). Instead we define the Mayer f function

$$f(r) = e^{-\beta U(r)} - 1$$

which is bounded here between -1 and 0. Then

$$Z(N, V, T) = \frac{1}{N! \lambda^{3N}} \int \prod_i d\mathbf{r}_i \prod_{j>k}(1 + f_{jk}).$$

An expansion of powers in f is thus more sensible. This is an expansion in 'perturbations to occupancy probabilities/densities' rather than perturbations to energies.

- The zeroth order term recovers V^N. The first order term gives

$$\int \prod_i d\mathbf{r}_i \sum_{j>k} f_{jk} \approx \frac{N^2}{2} V^{N-2} \int d\mathbf{r}_1 d\mathbf{r}_2 \, f(r_{12}) \approx \frac{N^2}{2} V^{N-1} \int d\mathbf{r} f(\mathbf{r})$$

  where we integrated out the center of mass coordinate. We don't have to worry about bounds of integration on the $\mathbf{r}$ integral, as most of its contribution comes from atomic-scale r.

- Denoting the integral as $\overline{f}$, we find that to first order in f,

$$Z = \frac{V^N}{N! \lambda^{3N}} \left(1 + \frac{N^2 \overline{f}}{2V}\right) \approx \frac{V^N}{N! \lambda^{3N}} \left(1 + \frac{N \overline{f}}{2V}\right)^N$$

  so that

$$F = F_{\text{ideal}} - N k_B T \log(1 + N\overline{f}/2V) \approx F_{\text{ideal}} - \frac{N^2 k_B T}{2V} \overline{f}.$$

  Since $\overline{f} \sim r_0^3$, the ratio of the first and zeroth order terms goes as $N r_0^3 / V$, giving us a measure of what "low density" means. On the other hand, $\overline{f}$ diverges if the potential falls off as $1/r^3$ or slower, meaning that our expansion breaks down for long-range forces.

- Calculating the pressure as $p = -\partial F / \partial V$, we find

$$\frac{pV}{N k_B T} = 1 - \frac{N\overline{f}}{2V}.$$

  Evidently, we have computed the virial coefficient $B_2(T)$. Finding $\overline{f}$ explicitly yields the van der Waals equations of state.

Higher order corrections can be found efficiently using the cluster expansion.

- Consider a generic term $O(f^E)$ term in the full expansion of Z above. Such a term can be represented by a graph G with N vertices and E edges, with no edges repeated. Denoting the value of a graph by $W[G]$, we have

$$Z = \frac{1}{N! \lambda^{3N}} \sum_G W[G].$$

- Each graph G factors into connected components called clusters, each of which contributes an independent multiplicative factor to $W[G]$.

- The most convenient way to organize the expansion is by the number and sizes of the clusters. Let U_l denote the contribution from all l-clusters,

$$U_l = \int \prod_{i=1}^{l} d\mathbf{r}_i \sum_{G \text{ is } l-\text{cluster}} W[G].$$

Now consider the contributions of all graphs with m_l l-clusters, so that $\sum m_l l = N$. They have the value

$$\prod_l \frac{N!}{(l!)_l^m} \frac{U_l^{m_l}}{m_l!}.$$

where the various factorials prevent overcounting within and between l-clusters.

- Summing over $\{m_l\}$, the partition function is

$$Z = \frac{1}{\lambda^{3N}} \sum_{\{m_l\}} \prod_l \frac{U_l^{m_l}}{(l!)^{m_l} m_l!}$$

where the $N!$ factor has been canceled.

- The annoying part is the restriction $\sum m_l l = N$, which we eliminate by going to the grand canonical ensemble. Defining the fugacity $z = e^{\beta\mu}$, we have

$$\mathcal{Z}(\mu) = \sum_N z^n Z(N) = \sum_{\{m_l\}} \prod_l \frac{1}{m_l!} \left(\frac{z^l U_l}{\lambda^{3l} l!} \right)^{m_l} = \prod_l \exp\left(\frac{U_l}{z^l} \lambda^{3l} l! \right).$$

- Defining $b_l = (\lambda^3/V)(U_l/l!\lambda^{3l})$, our expression reduces to

$$\mathcal{Z}(\mu) = \exp\left(\frac{V}{\lambda^3} \sum_l b_l z^l \right).$$

We see that if we take the log to get the free energy, only b_l appears, not higher powers of b_l. This reduces a sum over all diagrams to a sum over only connected diagrams. Expanding in powers of z allows us to find the virial coefficients.

Example. Consider an ideal gas with N particles, where the particles have a general dispersion relation $H = H(|\mathbf{p}|)$, such as relativistic particles. Remarkably, the ideal gas law still holds! To see this, note that by the usual kinetic theory argument, the pressure of each particle is

$$PV = \langle p_x v_x \rangle = \frac{\int d\mathbf{p}\, e^{-H(p)/k_B T} p_x (\partial H/\partial p_x)}{\int d\mathbf{p}\, e^{-H(p)/k_B T}} = \frac{\int d\mathbf{p}\, p_x\, \partial_{p_x}(-k_B T e^{-H(p)/k_B T})}{\int d\mathbf{p}\, e^{-H(p)/k_B T}} = k_B T.$$

This result isn't often mentioned in textbooks, though, because in the relativistic case we usually consider a fixed chemical potential, not a fixed particle number. (Another way to see this is to note that $\partial F/\partial V|_T$ doesn't depend on the dispersion relation, as the spatial integral in Z is trivial.)

3.5   Bose–Einstein Statistics

We now turn to bosonic quantum gases, with some motivational examples before the general theory.

Note. Calculating the density of states. For independent particles in a box with periodic boundary conditions, the states are plane waves, leading to the usual $1/h^3$ density of states in phase space. Integrating out position and momentum angle, we have

$$g(k) = \frac{4\pi V}{(2\pi)^3} k^2.$$

Changing variables to energy using $dk = (dk/dE)dE$, for a nonrelativistic particle we find

$$g(E) = \frac{V}{4\pi^2} \left(\frac{2m}{\hbar^2}\right)^{3/2} E^{1/2}.$$

For a relativistic particle, the same procedure gives

$$g(E) = \frac{VE}{2\pi^2 \hbar^3 c^3} \sqrt{E^2 - m^2 c^4}.$$

In particular, for massless particles, we get

$$g(E) = \frac{VE^2}{2\pi^2 \hbar^3 c^3}.$$

In general, we should also multiply by the number of spin states/polarizations.

Now we consider photons in blackbody radiation.

- Using $E = \hbar\omega$ and the fact that photons are bosons with two polarizations, the partition function for photons in a mode of frequency ω is, neglecting vacuum energy,

$$Z_\omega = 1 + e^{-\beta\hbar\omega} + e^{-2\beta\hbar\omega} + \ldots = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-\beta\hbar\omega}}.$$

  Note that the number of photons is not fixed. We can imagine we're working in the canonical ensemble, but summing over states of the quantum field. Alternatively, we can imagine we're working in the grand canonical ensemble, where $\mu = 0$ since photon number is not conserved; instead the photon number sits at a minimum of the Gibbs free energy. There are no extra combinatoric factors, involving which photons sit in which modes, because photons are identical.

- In either case, the entire partition function is

$$\log Z = \int_0^\infty d\omega\, g(\omega) \log Z_\omega = -\frac{V}{\pi^2 c^3} \int_0^\infty d\omega\, \omega^2 \log(1 - e^{-\beta\hbar\omega}).$$

  The energy is

$$E = -\frac{\partial}{\partial\beta} \log Z = \frac{V\hbar}{\pi^2 c^3} \int_0^\infty d\omega\, \frac{\omega^3}{e^{\beta\hbar\omega} - 1}$$

  where the integrand is the Planck distribution. Taking the high T limit then recovers the Rayleigh–Jeans law, from equipartition.

- Now, to evaluate the integral, note that it has dimensions ω^4, so it must produce $1/(\beta\hbar)^4$. Then

$$E \propto V(k_B T)^4$$

which recovers the Stefan–Boltzmann law.

- To get other quantities, we differentiate the free energy. One particularly important result is

$$p = \frac{E}{3V}$$

which is important in cosmology. One way to derive the constant is to note that the pressure from kinetic theory depends on pv, and pv is twice the kinetic energy for a nonrelativistic gas, but equal to the kinetic energy for a photon gas. Thus $pV = (1/2)(2E/3)$ for a photon gas.

- By considering an isochoric change,

$$dS = \frac{dE}{T} \propto VT^2 dT, \quad S \propto VT^3$$

where the constant is zero by the Third Law. Thus pV^γ is invariant in adiabatic (entropy conserving) processes, where $\gamma = 4/3$.

- Note that adiabatically expanding or contracting a photon gas must keep it in equilibrium, just like any other gas. This is simply because a photon gas can be used in a Carnot cycle, and if the gas were not in equilibrium at the end of each adiabat, we could extract more work, violating the second law.

- Microscopically, the number of photons is conserved during adiabatic processes, and every photon redshifts by the same factor. This is because every photon has the same speed and hence bounces off the walls equally as often, picking up the same redshift factor every time. Since adiabatic processes preserve equilibrium, scaling the energies/frequencies in Planck's law is exactly the same as scaling the temperature.

Note. There's a key difference between a photon gas and a classical ideal gas in the ultrarelativistic limit. Photons can be freely created and destroyed, corresponding to zero chemical potential. On the other hand, when we talk about ideal gases, we usually imagine there's a conserved particle number N. An ultrarelativistic ideal gas obeys $pV = Nk_B T$ by a generalization of the usual kinetic theory argument, and $E = 3Nk_B T$ by the equipartition theorem. Neither of these make sense for a photon gas, where N is generally infinite, but the result $pV = E/3$ holds in both cases. Furthermore, adiabatic processes work the same in both cases, since the relativistic Doppler shift is the same, and photons are not created or destroyed in adiabatic expansion, so we have $\gamma = 4/3$ in both cases. However, more detailed results will differ. For example, a photon gas doesn't have a classical limit: most of the energy comes from modes with frequency $\sim k_B T$, so that the typical mode occupancies are of order 1, and the discreteness of the energy levels is always apparent.

Note. Above, we've thought of every photon mode as a harmonic oscillator. To see this microscopically, note that $\mathbf{A}$ is the conjugate momentum to $\mathbf{E}$ and the energy is

$$H \sim \frac{1}{2}(E^2 + B^2) \sim \frac{1}{2}(E^2 + \omega^2 A^2)$$

where we worked in Coulomb gauge. This is then formally identical to a harmonic oscillator. The reason that $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are in phase, rather than the usual $90°$ out of phase, is that $\mathbf{B}$ is a derivative of the true canonical variable $\mathbf{A}$.

Note. Historically, Planck was the first to suggest that energy could be transferred between matter and radiation only in integer multiples of $\hbar\omega$. It was Einstein who made the further suggestion that energy in radiation should always come in integer multiples of $\hbar\omega$, in particles called photons. This seems strange to us today because we used the idea of photons to derive Planck's law. However, Planck did not have a strong understanding of equilibrium statistical mechanics. Instead, he attempted to solve a kinetic equation and find equilibrium in the long-time limit, e.g. by formulating an H-theorem. This was a much harder task, which required an explicit theory of the interaction of matter and radiation. Incidentally, Boltzmann derived the Stefan–Boltzmann law in the 1870s by using blackbody radiation as the working fluid in a Carnot cycle.

Example. Phonons. The exact same logic applies for phonons in a solid, except that there are three polarization states, and the speed of light c is replaced with the speed of sound c_s. (That is, we are assuming the dispersion relation remains linear.) There is also a high-frequency cutoff ω_D imposed by the lattice.

To get a reasonable number for ω_D, note that the number of normal modes is equal to the number of degrees of freedom, so

$$\int_0^{\omega_D} d\omega \, g(\omega) = 3N$$

where N is the number of lattice ions. The partition function is very similar to the blackbody case. At low temperatures, the cutoff ω_D doesn't matter, so the integral is identical, and

$$E \propto T^4 \quad C \propto T^3.$$

At high temperatures, one can show that with the choice of ω_D above, we simply reproduce the Dulong-Petit law. The only problem with the Debye model is that the phonon dispersion relation isn't actually linear. This doesn't matter at very high or low temperatures, but yields slight deviations at intermediate ones.

Now we formally introduce the Bose–Einstein distribution. For convenience, we work in the grand canonical ensemble.

- Consider a configuration of particles where n_i particles are in state i, and $\sum_i n_i = N$. In the Maxwell–Boltzmann distribution, we treat the particles as distinguishable, then divide by $1/N!$ at the end, so the probability of this configuration is proportional to

$$\frac{1}{N!}\binom{N}{n_1}\binom{N-n_1}{n_2}\cdots = \prod_i \frac{1}{n_i!}.$$

  In the Bose–Einstein distribution, we instead treat each configuration as one state of the quantum field, so all states have weight 1.

- As long as all of the n_i are zero or one (the classical limit), the two methods agree. However, once we introduce discrete quantum states, simply dividing by $1/N!$ no longer "takes us from distinguishable to indistinguishable". States in which some energy levels have multiple occupancy aren't weighted enough.

- Similarly, the Fermi–Dirac distribution also agrees with the classical result, as long as $\langle n_i \rangle \ll 1$.

- Another way of saying this is that in the classical case, we're imagining we can paint labels on all the particles; at the end we divide by $1/N!$ because the labels are arbitrary. This is an imperfect approximation to true indistinguishability, because when two particles get into the same state, we must lose track of the labels!

- For one single-particle quantum state $|r\rangle$, the Bose–Einstein partition function is

$$\mathcal{Z}_r = \sum_{n_r} e^{-\beta n_r (E_r - \mu)} = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-\beta(E_r - \mu)}}.$$

  Note that in the classical case, we would have also multiplied by $1/n_r!$. Without this factor, the sum might not converge, so we also demand $E_r > \mu$ for all E_r. Setting the ground state energy E_0 to zero, we require $\mu < 0$.

- The expected occupancy can be found by summing an arithmetic-geometric series, or noting

$$\langle n_r \rangle = \frac{1}{\beta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mu} \log \mathcal{Z}_r = \frac{1}{e^{\beta(E_r - \mu)} - 1}.$$

  This result is called the Bose–Einstein distribution.

- Taking the product, the grand partition function is

$$\mathcal{Z} = \prod_r \frac{1}{1 - e^{\beta(E_r - \mu)}}$$

  where the product ranges over all single-particle states.

- Using the Bose–Einstein distribution, we can compute properties of the Bose gas,

$$N = \int dE \, \frac{g(E)}{z^{-1} e^{\beta E} - 1}, \quad E = \int dE \, \frac{E g(E)}{z^{-1} e^{\beta E} - 1}$$

  where $z = e^{\beta \mu}$ is the fugacity. The stability requirement $\mu < 0$ means $z < 1$.

- To compute the pressure, note that

$$pV = \frac{1}{\beta} \log \mathcal{Z} = -\frac{1}{\beta} \int dE \, g(E) \log(1 - z e^{-\beta E}).$$

  In the nonrelativistic case, $g(E) \sim E^{1/2}$. Integrating by parts then shows

$$pV = \frac{2}{3} E$$

  which matches that of a classical monatomic gas. For comparison, we saw above that in the ultrarelativistic case we get $1/3$ instead.

- At high temperatures, we can compute the corrections to the ideal gas law by expanding in $z \ll 1$, finding

$$\frac{N}{V} = \frac{z}{\lambda^3} \left(1 + \frac{z}{2\sqrt{2}} + \cdots \right)$$

To see why $z \ll 1$ is a high-temperature expansion, note that $z \sim \lambda^3 \sim T^{-3/2}$ here. Next, we can similarly expand the energy for

$$\frac{E}{V} = \frac{3z}{2\lambda^3 \beta}\left(1 + \frac{z}{4\sqrt{2}} + \cdots\right).$$

Combining these equations, we find the first correction to the ideal gas law,

$$pV = Nk_B T\left(1 - \frac{\lambda^3 N}{4\sqrt{2}V} + \cdots\right).$$

The pressure is less; the physical intuition is that bosons 'like to clump up', since they're missing the $1/n_r!$ weights that a classical gas has.

Note. To get more explicit results, it's useful to define the functions

$$g_n(z) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(n)}\int_0^\infty dx\, \frac{x^{n-1}}{z^{-1}e^x - 1}.$$

To simplify this, expand the denominator as a geometric series for

$$g_n(z) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(n)}\sum_{m=1}^\infty \int dx\, x^{n-1}e^{-mx}z^m = \frac{1}{\Gamma(n)}\sum_{m=1}^\infty \frac{z^m}{m^n}\int_0^\infty du\, u^{n-1}e^{-u} = \sum_{m=1}^\infty \frac{z^m}{m^n}.$$

The $g_n(z)$ are monotonic in z, and we have

$$\frac{N}{V} = \frac{g_{3/2}(z)}{\lambda^3}, \quad \frac{E}{V} = \frac{3}{2}\frac{k_B T}{\lambda^3}g_{5/2}(z)$$

for the ideal Bose gas. Finally, for photon gases where $\mu = 0$ we use

$$g_n(1) = \zeta(n).$$

Useful particular values of the zeta function include

$$\zeta(2) = \frac{\pi^2}{6}, \quad \zeta(4) = \frac{\pi^4}{90}.$$

These results may be derived by evaluating

$$\int_{-\pi}^\pi dx\, |f(x)|^2$$

for $f(x) = x$ and $f(x) = x^2$, respectively, using direct integration and Fourier series.

Note. We may also derive the Bose–Einstein distribution starting from the microcanonical ensemble. Indexing energy levels by s, let there be N_s bosons in an energy level with degeneracy M_s. The number of states is

$$\Omega = \prod_s \frac{(N_s + M_s - 1)!}{N_s!(M_s - 1)!}.$$

Using Stirling's approximation, the entropy is

$$S = k_B \log \Omega = k_B \sum_s (N_s + M_s)\log(N_s + M_s) - N_s \log N_s - M_s \log M_s.$$

On the other hand, we know that $dS = dU/T - (\mu/T)dN$, where

$$dU = \sum_s E_s\, dN_s, \quad dN = \sum_s dN_s.$$

Plugging this in and setting the coefficient of dN_s to zero gives

$$\log(N_s + M_s) - \log N_s - \beta E_s + \beta\mu = 0.$$

An equivalent way to phrase this step is that we are maximizing entropy subject to fixed N and U, and the last two terms come from Lagrange multipliers. Rearranging immediately gives the Bose–Einstein distribution, where $\langle n_s \rangle = N_s/M_s$. Similar arguments work for the Fermi–Dirac and Boltzmann distributions.

Note. This idea of thinking of thermodynamic quantities as Lagrange multipliers is quite general. We get a Lagrange multiplier every time there is a conserved quantity. For particle number we get the chemical potential. As another example, for electric charge the corresponding Lagrange multiplier would be the electric potential. This is rather different from our usual interpretation of these quantities, which is in terms of the energy cost to pull some of the corresponding conserved quantity from the environment. But just as for temperature, we can recover that picture by just partitioning our original system into a subsystem and "environment" and analyzing the subsystem.

We now use these results to investigate Bose–Einstein condensation.

- Consider low temperatures, which correspond to high z, and fix N. Since we have

$$\frac{N}{V} = \frac{g_{3/2}(z)}{\lambda^3}$$

  the quantity $g_{3/2}(z)$ must increase as λ^3 increases. However, we know that the maximum value of $g_{3/2}(z)$ is $g_{3/2}(1) = \zeta(3/2)$, so this is impossible below the critical temperature

$$T_c = \frac{2\pi\hbar^2}{k_B m}\left(\frac{n}{\zeta(3/2)}\right)^{2/3}$$

- The problem is that, early on, we took the continuum limit and turned sums over states into integrals; this is a good approximation whenever the occupancy of any state is small. But for $T < T_c$, the occupancy of the ground state becomes macroscopically large!

- The ground state isn't counted in the integral because $g(0) = 0$, so we manually add it, for

$$\frac{N}{V} = \frac{g_{3/2}(z)}{\lambda^3} + n_0, \quad n_0 = \frac{1}{z^{-1} - 1}.$$

  Then for $T < T_c$, z becomes extremely close to one ($z \sim 1 - 1/N$), and the second term makes up for the first. In the limit $T \to 0$, all particles sit in the ground state.

- We say that for $T < T_c$, the system forms a Bose–Einstein condensate (BEC). Since the number of uncondensed particles in a BEC at fixed temperature is independent of the density, the equation of state of a BEC doesn't depend on the density.

- To explicitly see the phase transition behavior, note that for $z \to 1$, one can show

$$g_{3/2}(z) \approx \zeta(3/2) + A\sqrt{1 - z} + \ldots.$$

Applying the definition of T_c, we have

$$\left(\frac{T}{T_c}\right)^{3/2} - 1 \sim A\sqrt{1 - z} - \frac{1}{N}\frac{1}{1 - z}.$$

Dropping all constants, switching to reduced temperature t, and letting $x = 1 - z$,

$$t \sim \sqrt{x} - \frac{1}{Nx}.$$

Since x is never zero, the function $t(x)$ (and hence $x(t)$) is perfectly analytic, and there is no phase transition. However, in the thermodynamic limit, we instead have

$$\lim_{N \to \infty} x(t) = \begin{cases} t^2 & t > 0 \\ 0 & t < 0 \end{cases}$$

which is nonanalytic, as it has a discontinuous second derivative.

- Differentiating the energy, we find the heat capacity is

$$C_V = \frac{dE}{dT} \sim \frac{g_{5/2}(z)}{\lambda^3} + \frac{1}{\lambda^3}\frac{dg_{5/2}}{dz}\frac{dz}{dT}.$$

Then the derivative of the heat capacity depends on $d^2 z/dT^2$, and is discontinuous at $t = 0$.

- Another way of characterizing the BEC transition is that it occurs when the chemical potential increases to the ground state energy, creating a formally divergent number of particles in it.

Note. In a gas where the particle number N is not conserved, particles are created or destroyed freely to maximize the entropy, setting the chemical potential μ to zero. For such a gas, Bose–Einstein condensation cannot occur. Instead, as the temperature is lowered, N goes to zero.

   Note that if N is almost conserved, with N changing on a timescale T much greater than the thermalization time, then for times much less than T we can see a quasiequilibrium with nonzero μ. Also note that setting $\mu = 0$ formally makes N diverge if there are zero energy states. This infrared divergence is actually correct; for instance, a formally infinite number of photons are created in every single scattering event. This is physically acceptable since these photons cannot be detected.

Note. Bose–Einstein condensation was first predicted in 1925. In 1938, superfluidity was discovered in ^{4}He. However, superfluids are far from ideal BECs, as they cannot be understood without interactions. The first true BECs were produced in 1995 from dilute atomic gases in a magnetic trap, with $T_c \sim 100\,\mathrm{nK}$. This temperature was achieved using Doppler laser cooling and evaporative cooling. Further details are given in the notes on Optics.

3.6   Fermi–Dirac Statistics

Now we turn to fermions, which obey Fermi–Dirac statistics.

- Each single-particle quantum state $|r\rangle$ can be occupied by one or two particles, so

$$\mathcal{Z}_r = 1 + e^{-\beta(E_r - \mu)} \quad \langle n_r \rangle = \frac{1}{e^{\beta(E_r - \mu)} + 1}.$$

  Our expression for n_r is called the Fermi–Dirac distribution; it differs from the Bose–Einstein distribution by only a sign. Since there are no convergence issues, μ can be positive.

- Our expression for N, E, and pV are almost identical to the Bose gas case, again differing by a few signs. As before, we have $pV = (2/3)E$. The extra minus signs result in a first-order increase in pressure over that of a classical gas at high temperatures.

- In the low-temperature limit, the Fermi–Dirac distribution becomes

$$n(E) = \theta(\mu - E).$$

  All states with energies up to the Fermi energy E_F are filled, where in this case E_F is just equal to the chemical potential. These filled states form the 'Fermi sea' or 'Fermi sphere', and its boundary is the Fermi surface. The quantity E_F can be quite high, with the corresponding temperature $T_F = E_F/k_B$ at around 10^4 K for metals and 10^7 K for white dwarfs.

- The total energy is

$$E = \int_0^{E_f} dE\, E g(E) = \frac{3}{5} N E_F$$

  and the pressure is

$$pV = \frac{1}{\beta} \log \mathcal{Z} = \frac{1}{\beta} \int dE\, g(E) \log(1 + e^{-\beta(E-\mu)}) = \int_0^{E_f} dE\, (\mu - E) g(E) = \frac{2}{5} N E_F.$$

  This zero-temperature pressure is called the degeneracy pressure.

- Next, consider the particle number and energy density near zero temperature,

$$N = \int_0^\infty dE\, \frac{g(E)}{z^{-1} e^{\beta E} + 1}, \quad E = \int_0^\infty dE\, \frac{E g(E)}{z^{-1} e^{\beta E} + 1}$$

  where $g(E)$ is the density of states. We look at how E and μ depend on T, holding N fixed.

- First we claim that $d\mu/dT = 0$ at $T = 0$. We know that if μ is fixed, $\Delta N \sim T^2$, as the Fermi–Dirac distribution spreads out symmetrically about $E = E_F$. But if $d\mu/dT \neq 0$, then $\Delta N \sim T$ as the Fermi surface shifts outward, so we cannot have $\Delta N = 0$.

- For higher temperatures, μ should decrease, as we know it becomes negative as we approach the ideal gas. In $d = 2$, μ is exponentially rather than quadratically suppressed because the density of states is constant.

- Next, consider the change in energy. Since $dN/dT = 0$, the only effect is that $k_B T/E_F$ of the particles are excited by energy on the order of $k_B T$. Then $\Delta E \sim T^2$, so $C_V \sim T$.

- Therefore, the low-temperature specific heat of a metal goes as

$$C_V = \gamma T + \alpha T^3$$

  where the second term is from phonons. We can test this by plotting C_V/T against T^2. The linear contribution is only visible at very low temperatures.

Note. The classical limit. Formally, both the Fermi–Dirac and Bose–Einstein distributions approach the Maxwell–Boltzmann distribution in the limit of low occupancy numbers,

$$\frac{E - \mu}{T} \ll 1.$$

Since this is equivalent to $T \gg E - \mu$, it is sometimes called the low temperature limit, but this is deceptive; it would be better to call it the 'high energy limit'. Specifically, the high energy tail of a Bose or Fermi gas always behaves classically. But at low temperature Bose and Fermi gases look 'more quantum' as a whole.

Note. The chemical potential is a bit trickier when the energy levels are discrete, since it can't be defined by a derivative; it is instead defined by fixing N. It can be shown that in the zero temperature limit, the chemical potential is the average of the energies of the highest occupied state and the lowest unoccupied state. This ensures that N is fixed upon turning in a small T. In particular, it holds even if these two states have different degeneracies, because the adjustment in μ needed to cancel this effect is exponentially small.

Note. We can establish the above results quantitatively with the Sommerfeld expansion. Define

$$f_n(z) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(n)} \int_0^\infty dx\, \frac{x^{n-1}}{z^{-1}e^x + 1}$$

which are the fermionic equivalent of the g_n functions. Then

$$\frac{N}{V} = \frac{g_s}{\lambda^3} f_{3/2}(z), \quad \frac{E}{V} = \frac{3}{2} \frac{g_s}{\lambda^3} k_B T f_{5/2}(z)$$

where we plugged in the form of $g(E)$, and g_s is the number of spin states. We want to expand the $f_n(z)$ at high z. At infinite z, the integrands are just $x^{n-1}\theta(\beta\mu - x)$, so the integral is $(\beta\mu)^n/n$.

For high z, the integrands still contain an approximate step function. Then it's convenient to peel off the difference from the step function by splitting the integral into two pieces,

$$\Gamma(n) f_n(z) = \int_0^{\beta\mu} dx\, x^{n-1} \left(1 - \frac{1}{1 + ze^{-x}} \right) + \int_{\beta\mu}^\infty dx\, \frac{x^{n-1}}{z^{-1}e^x + 1}.$$

The first term simply reproduces the infinite temperature result. Now, the deviations above and below $\beta\mu$ tend to cancel each other, as we saw for dN/dT above. Then it's useful to subtract them against each other; defining $\eta = \beta\mu - x$ and $\eta = x - \beta\mu$ respectively, we get

$$\Gamma(n) f_n(z) = \frac{(\log z)^n}{n} + \int_0^\infty d\eta\, \frac{(\beta\mu + \eta)^{n-1} - (\beta\mu - \eta)^{n-1}}{1 + e^\eta}$$

where we extended a limit of integration from $\beta\mu$ to ∞, incurring an exponentially small $O(z^{-1})$ error. Taylor expanding to lowest order in $\beta\mu$ gives

$$\Gamma(n) f_n(z) = \frac{(\log z)^n}{n} + 2(n-1)(\log z)^{n-2} \int_0^\infty d\eta\, \frac{\eta}{e^\eta + 1}.$$

This integral can be done by expanding the denominator as a geometric series in $e^{-\eta}$. Termwise integration gives the series $\sum (-1)^{m+1}/m^2 = (1/2) \sum 1/m^2 = \pi^2/12$, giving the final result

$$f_n(z) = \frac{(\log z)^n}{\Gamma(n+1)} \left(1 + \frac{\pi^2}{6} \frac{n(n-1)}{(\log z)^2} + \cdots \right).$$

By keeping more terms in the Taylor expansion, we get a systematic expansion in $1/\log z = 1/\beta\mu$.
Applying the expansion to N/V, we immediately find

$$\Delta N \sim \left(\frac{k_B T}{\mu}\right)^2$$

which shows that, to keep N constant,

$$\Delta \mu \sim \left(\frac{k_B T}{E_F}\right)^2$$

as expected earlier. Similarly, the first term in ΔE goes as T^2, giving a linear heat capacity.

Example. Pauli paramagnetism. Paramagnetism results from dipoles aligning with an external field, and Pauli paramagnetism is the alignment of spin. In a field B, electrons have energy

$$E = \mu_B B s, \quad s = \pm 1, \quad \mu_B = \frac{|e|\hbar}{2mc}$$

where μ_B is the Bohr magneton. Then the occupancy numbers are

$$\frac{N_\uparrow}{V} = \frac{1}{\lambda^3} f_{3/2}(z e^{\beta \mu_B B}), \quad \frac{N_\downarrow}{V} = \frac{1}{\lambda^3} f_{3/2}(z e^{-\beta \mu_B B}).$$

The resulting magnetization is

$$M = \mu_B (N_\uparrow - N_\downarrow).$$

In the high-temperature limit, z is small and $f_{3/2}(z) \approx z$, so

$$M = \frac{2\mu_B V z}{\lambda^3} \sinh(\beta \mu_B B) = \mu_B N \tanh(\beta \mu_B B)$$

where $N = N_\uparrow + N_\downarrow$. This is simply the classical result, as given by Maxwell–Boltzmann statistics. One important feature is that the susceptibility $\chi = \partial M / \partial B$ goes as $1/T$, i.e. Curie's law.

In the low-temperature limit, we take the leading term in the Sommerfeld expansion, then expand to first order in B, for

$$M = \mu_B^2 g(E_F) B.$$

Then at low temperatures, the susceptibility no longer obeys Curie's law, but instead saturates to a constant. To understand this result, note that only $g(E_F)\Delta E = g(E_F)\mu_B B$ electrons are close enough to the Fermi surface to participate, and they each contribute magnetization μ_B.

Note. A textbook explanation for diamagnetism is that charged particles begin moving in circles when a magnetic field is turned on, creating an opposing field. However, this explanation isn't actually right because of the Bohr–van Leeuwen theorem: the canonical partition function Z does not depend on the external field, as can be seen by shifting $\mathbf{p} - e\mathbf{A}$ to $\mathbf{p}$ in the integral, so there is no magnetism in classical mechanics at thermal equilibrium!

This conclusion can also be seen more explicitly. The particles must be in a finite box, say with reflecting walls. Then the particles whose orbits hit the walls and bounce off effectively orbit backwards. Since the magnetic moment is proportional to the area, this cancels the magnetic moment of the bulk exactly. Working this out is significantly trickier than just considering Z, because Z itself is less sensitive to boundary conditions, but it can be done.

In quantum mechanics, the Bohr–van Leeuwen theorem does not hold. The partition function isn't an integral, so the first argument fails; we will instead find nontrivial dependence of Z on the field. In terms of the energy levels, electron states near the boundary are much higher energy due to the repulsive potential, so they are less relevant, though this is difficult to show.

Note. The Euler summation formula is

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} h(n + 1/2) = \int_0^{\infty} h(x)\, dx + \frac{1}{24} h'(0) + \dots.$$

The idea behind the Euler summation formula is that one can approximate a smooth function by a low-order polynomial (or a Taylor series with decreasing coefficients). To see the origin of the first term, consider the formula for a unit interval,

$$h(1/2) \approx \int_0^1 h(x)\, dx + \dots.$$

There is no correction term if $h(x)$ is a first-order polynomial. The correction due to second-degree terms in $h(x)$ can be found by subtracting $h'(x)$ at the endpoints,

$$h(1/2) \approx \int_0^1 h(x)\, dx + c(h'(0) - h'(1)) + \dots.$$

To find the value of c, consider $h(x) = (x - 1/2)^2$, which fixes $c = 1/24$. Telescoping the sum gives the $h'(0)/24$ term in the formula above. Generally, all higher correction terms will have odd derivatives, because terms like $(x - 1/2)^{2n+1}$ don't contribute to the area.

Example. An explicit calculation of Landau diamagnetism. When the electrons are constrained to the xy plane, they occupy Landau levels with

$$E = \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)\hbar\omega_c, \quad \omega_c = \frac{eB}{m}$$

with degeneracy

$$N = \frac{\Phi}{\Phi_0}, \quad \Phi = L^2 B, \quad \Phi_0 = \frac{2\pi\hbar c}{e}.$$

Allowing the electrons to move in the third dimension gives an energy contribution $\hbar^2 k_z^2/2m$. Then the grand partition function is

$$\log \mathcal{Z} = \frac{L}{2\pi} \int dk_z \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{2L^2 B}{\Phi_0} \log\left[1 + z \exp\left(-\frac{\beta\hbar^2 k_z^2}{2m} - \beta\hbar\omega_c(n + 1/2)\right)\right]$$

where we added a factor of 2 to account for the spin sum, and converted the k_z momentum sum into an integral. Now we apply the Euler summation formula with the choice

$$h(x) = \int dk_z \log\left[1 + \exp\left(-\frac{\beta\hbar^2 k_z^2}{2m} + \beta x\right)\right].$$

Then our grand partition function becomes

$$\log \mathcal{Z} = \frac{VB}{\pi\Phi_0} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} h(\mu - \hbar\omega_c(n + 1/2)) = \frac{VB}{\pi\Phi_0}\left(\int_0^{\infty} h(\mu - \hbar\omega_c x)\, dx - \frac{\hbar\omega_c}{24}\frac{dh}{d\mu} + \dots\right).$$

The first term is independent of B, and the second term gives

$$M = \frac{1}{\beta}\frac{\partial(\log \mathcal{Z})}{\partial B} = -\frac{\mu_B^2}{3} g(E_f) B$$

where we have $\mu_B = |e|\hbar/2mc$ as usual. Since the paramagnetic effect is three times larger, one might expect that every solid is paramagnetic. The subtlety is that when the crystal lattice is accounted for, the mass m used above becomes the effective mass m_*. But the paramagnetic effect is not changed at all, because it only depends on the intrinsic magnetic moments of the electrons, which are independent of their motion. Another, independent factor is that core electrons still contribute via Larmor diamagnetism but have no paramagnetic effects.

Note. Consider the hydrogen atom, with energy levels $E_n = -E_0/n^2$. The partition function diverges, so formally the probability of occupancy of any state is zero! The situation only gets worse when we consider unbound states as well.

The resolution is that we are missing a spatial cutoff; the sum over n includes states that are extremely large. Any reasonable cutoff gives a reasonable result. For infinite volume, a zero probability of occupancy really is the correct answer, because once the electron moves a significant distance from the atom, it has little chance of ever coming back: a random walk in three dimensions will likely never return to its starting point.

3.7 Kinetic Theory

So far, we've only considered systems in thermal equilibrium. Kinetic theory is the study of the microscopic dynamics of macroscopically many particles, and we will use it to study the approach to equilibrium. We begin with a heuristic introduction.

- We will need the fact that in equilibrium, the velocities of the particles in a gas obey the Maxwell–Boltzmann distribution

$$f(\mathbf{v}) = \left(\frac{m}{2\pi k_B T}\right)^{3/2} e^{-mv^2/2k_B T}.$$

- Now suppose we model the gas particles as hard spheres of diameter d. This is equivalent to modeling the particles as points, with an interaction potential that turns on at a distance d, so the interaction cross section is πd^2. Hence the mean free path is

$$\ell = \frac{1}{n\pi d^2}.$$

We assume the gas is dilute, so $\ell \gg d$.

- The typical time between collisions is called the scattering time or relaxation time,

$$\tau = \frac{\ell}{\langle v_{\rm rel} \rangle}.$$

To estimate $\langle v_{\rm rel} \rangle$, note that

$$\langle v_{\rm rel}^2 \rangle = \langle (\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}')^2 \rangle = \langle v^2 \rangle + \langle v'^2 \rangle = \frac{6k_B T}{m}$$

since the Maxwell–Boltzmann distribution is isotropic, and we used equipartition of energy in the last step.

- Zooming out, we can roughly think of each gas molecule as performing a random walk with step size ℓ and time interval τ. For motion in one dimension starting at $x = 0$, the probability of being at position $x = m\ell$ after time $t = N\tau$ is

$$P(x,t) = 2^{-N} \binom{N}{(N-m)/2} \approx \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi N}} e^{-m^2/2N} = \sqrt{\frac{2\tau}{\pi t}} e^{-x^2\tau/2\ell^2 t}$$

where we used Stirling's approximation to expand the combination, and expanded to leading order in m/N. The probability distribution is hence a Gaussian with variance

$$\langle x^2 \rangle = \frac{\ell^2}{\tau} t.$$

This makes sense, as each of the t/τ steps is independent with variance ℓ^2.

- Similarly, in three dimensions, we have

$$\langle r^2 \rangle = \frac{\ell^2}{\tau} t.$$

This can also be computed concretely by considering a random walk on a cubic lattice.

- For many particles diffusing independently, their density is described by the diffusion equation,

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} = D\nabla^2 n.$$

Since this equation is linear, it suffices to establish this for an initial condition $n(x, t = 0) = \delta(x)$, where it should match the result of the random walk above. In one dimension, the solution is

$$n(x,t) = \sqrt{\frac{1}{4\pi Dt}} e^{-x^2/4Dt}$$

from which we conclude $D = \ell^2/2\tau$. Similarly, in three dimensions we also find a spreading Gaussian with $D = \ell^2/6\tau$.

Using this basic setup, we can talk about transport properties.

- Consider two plates at $z = 0$ and $z = d$. If the top plate is moved a constant speed u in the x direction, there will be a velocity gradient $u_x(z)$ within the fluid. The upper plate then experiences a resistive force

$$F = \eta A \frac{du_x}{dz} \approx \eta A \frac{u}{d}$$

where the latter holds when d is small. The coefficient η is the dynamic viscosity.

- Microscopically, viscosity can be thought of in terms of the transport of p_x through the fluid. The plates are "sticky", so that molecules pick up an average nonzero p_x when colliding the top plate and lose it when colliding with the bottom plate. In the steady state, collisions between particles in the body of the fluid continually transport p_x from the top plate to the bottom.

- As a simple approximation, we'll suppose the local velocity distribution in the fluid is just the Maxwell–Boltzmann distribution shifted by $u_x(z)$, which is assumed to be small.

- We now compute the momentum flowing through a surface of constant z. The number of particles passing through it per unit time per unit area is

$$n \int d\mathbf{v}\, v_z f(\mathbf{v}).$$

A particle that came from a distance Δz has an expected x-momentum of

$$\Delta p_x = m \frac{du_x}{dz} \Delta z.$$

If the particle came in at an angle θ to the vertical, then we expect

$$\Delta z = \ell \cos \theta.$$

Putting it all together, the momentum transferred per unit time per unit area is

$$\frac{F}{A} = n \int d\mathbf{v}\, v_z f(\mathbf{v}) \Delta p_x = mn\ell \frac{du_x}{dz} \int d\mathbf{v}\, \left(\frac{m}{2\pi k_B T} \right)^{3/2} v e^{-mv^2/2k_B T} \cos^2 \theta.$$

- Now, the integral is essentially computing $\langle v \rangle$ up to the factor of $\cos^2 \theta$. Working in spherical coordinates, the only difference would be the θ integral,

$$\int_0^\pi d\theta \cos^2 \theta \sin \theta \, d\theta = \frac{2}{3}, \quad \int_0^\pi d\theta \sin \theta \, d\theta = 2.$$

Hence the $\cos^2 \theta$ factor contributes a factor of $1/3$, giving

$$\frac{F}{A} = \eta \frac{du_x}{dz}, \quad \eta = \frac{1}{3} mn\ell \langle v \rangle.$$

Since $\ell \sim 1/n$, the viscosity is independent of the density of the gas; a denser gas has more particles, but each carries less p_x. This surprising conclusion was first found by Maxwell, who confirmed it experimentally.

- We can use a similar computation for the transport of kinetic energy, i.e. thermal conduction. Empirically, we find the flow of heat is proportional to the temperature gradient,

$$\mathbf{q} = -\kappa \nabla T$$

where κ is the thermal conductivity.

- We use the same reasoning as above, assuming that the local velocity distribution is just Maxwell–Boltzmann with a z-dependent T. Then $E(z) = (3/2)k_B T(z)$, so

$$\Delta E = \frac{3}{2} k_B \frac{dT}{dz} \Delta z.$$

The form of the integral is exactly the same, and we find

$$\kappa = \frac{1}{3} c_v \ell \langle v \rangle, \quad c_V = \frac{3}{2} n k_B.$$

As before, the conductivity doesn't depend on the density.

Note. The diffusion equation is useful because it describes the transport of any locally conserved quantity. For example, local conservation of energy means that

$$\frac{d\mathcal{E}}{dt} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{q} = 0$$

where $\mathcal{E} = c_V T$ is the energy density. Combining this with the above gives the heat equation

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = -\frac{\kappa}{c_V}\nabla^2 T$$

which is simply a diffusion equation for energy. Similarly, local conservation of momentum means

$$\frac{d\mathcal{P}^i}{dt} + \frac{\partial P^{ji}}{\partial x^j} = 0$$

where $\mathcal{P}$ is the momentum density. But we established earlier that

$$P_{zx} = \eta \frac{du_x}{dz}.$$

Hence combining these equations, we have

$$\frac{d\mathcal{P}^x}{dt} = -\eta \frac{d^2 u^x}{dz^2} = -\eta \nabla^2 u^x = -\frac{\eta}{mn}\nabla^2 \mathcal{P}^x$$

which is a diffusion equation for momentum. We first introduced diffusion for number density, but diffusion smooths away inhomogeneities in any conserved quantity.

Now we will consider kinetic theory proper, by deriving the Boltzmann equation.

- We consider N identical point particles in a potential, interacting pairwise, with Hamiltonian

$$H = \frac{1}{2m}\sum_i p_i^2 + \sum_i V(\mathbf{r}_i) + \sum_{i<j} U(\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{r}_j).$$

  The phase space is $6N$-dimensional, and we describe the configuration of the system as a probability distribution f on phase space, normalized as

$$\int dV\, f(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i, t) = 1, \quad dV = \prod_i d\mathbf{r}_i d\mathbf{p}_i.$$

  Liouville's theorem states that $df/dt = 0$, where the derivative is to be interpreted as a convective derivative, following the phase space flow.

- We define the Poisson bracket as usual,

$$\{A, B\} = \sum_i \frac{\partial A}{\partial \mathbf{r}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial B}{\partial \mathbf{p}_i} - \frac{\partial A}{\partial \mathbf{p}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial B}{\partial \mathbf{r}_i}.$$

  Then for any function $A(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i, t)$, we have

$$\frac{dA}{dt} = \frac{\partial A}{\partial t} + \{A, H\}$$

  where the derivative on the left is again a convective derivative.

- Applying Liouville's theorem, we have Liouville's equation

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} = \{H, f\}.$$

For an equilibrium distribution, $\partial f/\partial t = 0$, or equivalently $\{H, f\} = 0$. This holds when f is a function of H, as in the Boltzmann distribution $f \sim e^{-\beta H}$, but f can be more general. For instance, it can depend on the values of any conserved quantities.

- We define the expectation value of $A(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i)$ by

$$\langle A \rangle = \int dV\, A(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i) f(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i, t).$$

Differentiating both sides gives

$$\frac{d\langle A \rangle}{dt} = \int dV\, A\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} = \int dV\, A\{H, f\} = \int dV\, \{A, H\}f = \langle \{A, H\} \rangle$$

where we integrated by parts in the third step. This looks superficially similar to what we had above, but it's not the same result; for instance the derivative on the left here is an ordinary derivative rather than a convective derivative.

We now introduce the BBGKY hierarchy.

- We define the one-particle distribution function by integrating over all but one particle,

$$f_1(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{p}_1, t) = N \int dV_1\, f(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i, t), \quad dV = \prod_{i=k+1}^{N} d\mathbf{r}_i d\mathbf{p}_i.$$

This doesn't treat the first particle as special, because the particles are all identical, so f may be taken symmetric. The one-particle distribution function allows us to compute most quantities of interest, such as the density and average velocity,

$$n(\mathbf{r}, t) = \int d\mathbf{p}\, f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}, t), \quad \mathbf{u}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \int d\mathbf{p}\, \frac{\mathbf{p}}{m} f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}, t).$$

- To see how f_1 evolves in time, note that

$$\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial t} = N \int dV_1\, \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} = N \int dV_1\, \{H, f\}.$$

Using our explicit form of the Hamiltonian, this is

$$\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial t} = N \int dV_1 \left(-\sum_j \frac{\mathbf{p}_j}{m} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{r}_j} + \sum_j \frac{\partial V}{\partial \mathbf{r}_j} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{p}_j} + \sum_j \sum_{k<l} \frac{\partial U(\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}_l)}{\partial \mathbf{r}_j} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{p}_j} \right).$$

- Now, by the same logic as when we were computing $d\langle A \rangle/dt$, we can integrate by parts for $j \neq 1$, throwing away boundary terms and getting zero. Hence we only have to worry about $j = 1$. Relabeling $(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{p}_1)$ to $(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p})$, we have

$$\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial t} = N \int dV_1 \left(-\frac{\mathbf{p}}{m} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{r}} + \frac{\partial V(\mathbf{r})}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{p}} + \sum_{k=2}^{N} \frac{\partial U(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_k)}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{p}} \right).$$

- The first two terms simply reflect the dynamics of free "streaming" particles, while the final term includes collisions. Hence we can write this result as

$$\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial t} = \{H_1, f_1\} + \left(\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial t}\right)_{\text{coll}}, \quad H_1 = \frac{p^2}{2m} + V(\mathbf{r}).$$

  The second term is called the collision integral.

- The collision integral cannot be written in terms of f_1 alone, which is not surprising, as it represents collisions between two particles. We introduce the n-particle distribution functions

$$f_n(\mathbf{r}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{r}_n, \mathbf{p}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{p}_n, t) = \binom{N}{n} \int dV_n \, f(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i, t).$$

  Next, we note that all $N - 1$ terms in the collision integral are identical, so

$$\left(\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial t}\right)_{\text{coll}} = \binom{N}{2} \int dV_1 \frac{\partial U(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_2)}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{p}} = \int d\mathbf{r}_2 d\mathbf{p}_2 \frac{\partial U(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_2)}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial f_2}{\partial \mathbf{p}}.$$

- The same logic may be repeated recursively to find the time evolution of f_n. We find

$$\frac{\partial f_n}{\partial t} = \{H_n, f_n\} + \sum_{i=1}^{n} \int d\mathbf{r}_{n+1} d\mathbf{p}_{n+1} \frac{\partial U(\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{r}_{n+1})}{\partial \mathbf{r}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial f_{n+1}}{\partial \mathbf{p}_i}$$

  where the n-body Hamiltonian is

$$H_n = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left(\frac{p_i^2}{2m} + V(\mathbf{r}_i)\right) + \sum_{i<j\leq n} U(\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{r}_j).$$

  That is, the n-particle distribution evolves by considering the interactions between n particles alone, plus a correction term involving collisions with an outside particle. This is the BBGKY hierarchy, converting Hamilton's equations into N coupled PDEs.

The utility of the BBGKY hierarchy is that it isolates the physically most relevant information in the lower f_n, allowing us to apply approximations.

- The Boltzmann equation is an approximate equation describing the evolution of f_1 in terms of itself, i.e. it neglects two-body correlations. To derive it, we assume that the time between collisions, τ, also called the scattering time or relaxation time, is much greater than the time τ_{coll} it takes for a collision to occur, called the collision time.

- We further assume that collisions occur locally in space. Then if there are two particles at a point $\mathbf{r}$ with momenta $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{p}_2$, the rate at which they scatter to $\mathbf{p}'_1$ and $\mathbf{p}'_2$ is

$$\omega(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2 | \mathbf{p}'_1, \mathbf{p}'_2) f_2(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2) \, d\mathbf{p}_2 d\mathbf{p}'_1 d\mathbf{p}'_2$$

  where ω describes the dynamics of the collision, and depends on the interaction potential.

- As a result, the collision integral can be written as

$$\left(\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial t}\right)_{\text{coll}} = \int d\mathbf{p}_2 d\mathbf{p}'_1 d\mathbf{p}'_2 \left(\omega(\mathbf{p}'_1, \mathbf{p}'_2 | \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2) f_2(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}'_1, \mathbf{p}'_2) - \omega(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2 | \mathbf{p}'_1, \mathbf{p}'_2) f_2(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2)\right)$$

  where the two terms account for scattering into and out of momentum $\mathbf{p}$. In a proper derivation of the Boltzmann equation, we would have arrived here by explicitly applying approximations to the BBGKY hierarchy.

- Symmetries yield several constraints on the function ω.

  - We've tacitly assumed the scattering is the same at all points, so ω doesn't depend on $\mathbf{r}$.

  - Assuming that the external potential only varies appreciably on macroscopic distance scales, energy and momentum are conserved in collisions, so

    $$\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{p}_2 = \mathbf{p}_1' + \mathbf{p}_2', \quad p^2 + p_2^2 = p_1'^2 + p_2'^2.$$

  - Time reversal symmetry implies that

    $$\omega(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2 | \mathbf{p}_1', \mathbf{p}_2') = \omega(-\mathbf{p}_1', -\mathbf{p}_2' | -\mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{p}_2).$$

  - Parity symmetry flips the momenta without swapping incoming and outgoing, so

    $$\omega(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2 | \mathbf{p}_1', \mathbf{p}_2') = \omega(-\mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{p}_2 | -\mathbf{p}_1', -\mathbf{p}_2').$$

  - Combining these two, we have symmetry between incoming and outgoing momenta,

    $$\omega(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2 | \mathbf{p}_1', \mathbf{p}_2') = \omega(\mathbf{p}_1', \mathbf{p}_2' | \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2).$$

- Applying this final property simplifies the collision integral to

  $$\left(\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial t} \right)_{\text{coll}} = \int d\mathbf{p}_2 d\mathbf{p}_1' d\mathbf{p}_2' \, \omega(\mathbf{p}_1', \mathbf{p}_2' | \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2) \left(f_2(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}_1', \mathbf{p}_2') - f_2(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2) \right).$$

  At this point, we use the assumption of molecular chaos,

  $$f_2(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2) = f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}_2)$$

  which assumes the momenta are uncorrelated. This is intuitive because collisions are rare, and each successive collision a molecule experiences is with a completely different molecule.

- The assumption of molecular chaos is the key assumption that converts the BBGKY hierarchy into a closed system. It introduces an arrow of time, as the momenta *are* correlated after a collision. Since the dynamics are microscopically time-reversible, the momenta must actually have been correlated before the collision as well. However, generically these initial correlations are extremely subtle and destroyed by any coarse-graining.

- Using the assumption of molecular chaos gives the Boltzmann equation,

  $$\frac{\partial f_1}{\partial t} = \{H_1, f_1\} + \int d\mathbf{p}_2 d\mathbf{p}_1' d\mathbf{p}_2' \, \omega(\mathbf{p}_1', \mathbf{p}_2' | \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2) \left(f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}_1') f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}_2') - f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}_2) \right).$$

  It is quite difficult to solve, being a nonlinear integro-differential equation.

Next, we investigate equilibrium distributions for the Boltzmann equation.

- The collision integral will clearly vanish if we satisfy the detailed balance condition,

  $$f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}_1') f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}_2') = f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}_2)$$

  so that at every point, scattering into $\mathbf{p}$ is instantaneously balanced by scattering out of $\mathbf{p}$.

- Taking the logarithm of both sides, it is equivalent to say that the sum of $\log f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}_i)$ is conserved during a collision. Since we know energy and momentum are conserved during a collision, detailed balance can be achieved if

$$\log f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) = \beta(\mu - E(\mathbf{p}) + \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{p})$$

where μ sets the local particle density. Exponentiating both sides, we see f_1 is simply a Maxwell–Boltzmann distribution with temperature $1/\beta$ and drift velocity $\mathbf{u}$.

- Note that β, μ, and $\mathbf{u}$ can all be functions of position. Such a solution is said to be in local equilibrium, and we used them in our heuristic calculations in the previous section.

- For simplicity, set $V(\mathbf{r}) = 0$. Then the streaming term also vanishes if β, μ, and $\mathbf{u}$ are all constants. When $\mathbf{u}$ is zero, we have a standard gas at equilibrium; the freedom to have $\mathbf{u}$ nonzero is a result of momentum conservation. Similarly, the streaming term also vanishes if $\mathbf{u} \propto \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p}$ because of angular momentum conservation, giving a rotating equilibrium solution.

- We can easily accommodate quantum statistics by converting the collision rate to

$$\omega(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2 | \mathbf{p}_1', \mathbf{p}_2') f_2(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2)(1 \pm f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}_1'))(1 \pm f_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}_2'))\, d\mathbf{p}_2 d\mathbf{p}_1' d\mathbf{p}_2'$$

with a plus sign for bosons and a minus sign for fermions. In the fermionic case, the extra factors simply enforce Pauli exclusion; in the bosonic case, they account for the $\sqrt{n}$ enhancement for the amplitude for n bosons to be together.

- All the reasoning then goes through as before, and the detailed balance condition becomes

$$\log \frac{f_1(\mathbf{p})}{1 \pm f_1(\mathbf{p})} \text{ conserved in collisions.}$$

When we set this to $\beta(\mu - E + \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{p})$, we recover the Bose–Einstein and Fermi–Dirac distributions with chemical potential μ, temperature $1/\beta$, and drift velocity $\mathbf{u}$.

4   Continuum Mechanics

4.1   Fluid Statics

Continuum mechanics is the continuum limit of kinetic theory.

- In solids and dense liquids, the distances between atoms are a fraction of a nanometer, while for gases at atmospheric pressure the distance is about ten times this. In continuum mechanics, we deal with much larger distance scales, and neglect the discreteness of atoms entirely.

- In this limit, the details of the atoms and their interactions determine, e.g. transport coefficients. We'll just take these quantities as given, rather than trying to calculate them.

- A continuum description only works over sufficiently large distance scales. For example, if the atomic separation is ℓ and we work on distance scales of at least L, then the density fluctuations on such scales as $\Delta\rho/\rho \sim 1/\sqrt{N} \sim (L/\ell)^{3/2}$. Therefore, if we want ρ to be defined up to a fractional precision ϵ, we require $L \gtrsim \ell/\epsilon^{2/3}$.

- As another example, suppose the typical molecular velocity is v_{mol}. Then the typical fluctuation in the center of mass speed of N molecules is $v_{\mathrm{mol}}/\sqrt{N}$. If we are considering a bulk flow of average velocity v, and we want v to be defined up to fractional precision ϵ, then

$$L \gtrsim \ell \left(\frac{v_{\mathrm{mol}}}{\epsilon v}\right)^{2/3}$$

  which is somewhat more stringent.

- Another requirement to have v be well-defined, specifically for gases, is that

$$L \gg \lambda$$

  where λ is the mean free path. For air, $\lambda \lesssim 100\,\mathrm{nm}$.

- More generally, we demand that our continuous matter always be in local thermal equilibrium. For example, if the equation of state $P = P(\rho, T)$ holds in global thermal equilibrium, then we will assume $p(\mathbf{x}) = p(\rho(\mathbf{x}), T(\mathbf{x}))$.

- In general, we require $L \gg \ell$ to apply continuum mechanics. Interfaces between different types of continuous matter have length scale ℓ, so they will be treated as discontinuities.

- Below, we will refer to "material particles", meaning packets of material containing a fixed set of atoms. These packets are much smaller than the dimensions of our setup, so they may be treated as infinitesimal, but larger than L, so they may be treated as continuous matter.

We begin with basic fluid statics.

- The forces inside continuous matter are parametrized by the stress tensor σ_{ij}, which means that the force $d\mathbf{F}$ on an infinitesimal surface element $d\mathbf{S}$ is

$$dF_i = \sigma_{ij}\, dS_j$$

  where summation notation is used. Below, we will predominantly use index-free notation, so that the above equation would be written as $d\mathbf{F} = \boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot d\mathbf{S}$.

- In a static fluid, there are no shear stresses, so σ_{ij} is diagonal. Furthermore, σ_{ij} must be diagonal in all reference frames, which is only possible if it is proportional to the identity. Therefore, for static fluids we simply have isotropic pressure,

$$d\mathbf{F} = -p\,d\mathbf{S}.$$

In particular, the total pressure force on a material particle is

$$d\mathbf{F} = -\nabla p\,dV.$$

- As an example, in hydrostatic equilibrium, $\nabla p = \rho\mathbf{g}$. Supposing that the fluid has a barotropic equation of state, meaning that $p = p(\rho)$, then we may define the pressure potential

$$w(p) = \int \frac{dp}{\rho(p)}$$

in which case $\Phi^* = \Phi + w(p)$ is constant, where Φ is the gravitational potential.

- For a barotropic fluid, we define the bulk modulus

$$K = \rho\,\frac{dp}{d\rho}$$

which quantifies the incompressibility. If p also depended on temperature, we would have to use a partial derivative. The isothermal bulk modulus K_T corresponds to a derivative at constant T, and the isentropic bulk modulus is a derivative at constant S.

- In hydrostatic equilibrium, $\nabla p = -\rho\nabla\Phi$, which means that gravitational equipotentials and isobars must coincide. Taking the curl of both sides yields $(\nabla\rho) \times (\nabla\Phi) = 0$, which tells us that gravitational equipotentials and constant density surfaces also coincide.

Example. The homentropic atmosphere. In the lower part of the atmosphere, called the troposphere, the air is typically well-mixed by adiabatic convection, and thus obeys the polytropic equation of state $p \propto \rho^\gamma$. The pressure potential is

$$w = c_p T, \quad c_p = \frac{\gamma}{\gamma - 1}R.$$

Therefore, we have the constant

$$\Phi^* = gz + c_p T$$

which implies the temperature varies linearly with height. This is a good model for $z \lesssim 10\,\mathrm{km}$ but breaks down for higher z, where we must account for additional effects such as solar heating. The "Standard Atmosphere" model takes $T(z)$ to be piecewise linear, with different gradients in the mesosphere, stratosphere, and troposphere. The model then infers $p(z)$ from hydrostatic equilibrium and the ideal gas law,

$$p(z) = p_0 \exp\left(-\frac{g}{R}\int_0^z \frac{dz'}{T(z')}\right).$$

Example. Buoyant stability. Consider an object with density ρ_b in a uniform gravitational field $\mathbf{g}$ and fluid of density ρ_f. The moments of gravity and buoyancy are

$$\mathbf{M}_G = \int_V \mathbf{x} \times \rho_b\mathbf{g}\,dV, \quad \mathbf{M}_B = \oint_S \mathbf{x} \times (-p\,d\mathbf{S}).$$

If the body were replaced by fluid, the fluid would be in equilibrium. This implies that $\mathbf{M}_B$ is the opposite of what $\mathbf{M}_G$ would be if there were fluid,

$$\mathbf{M}_B = -\int_V \mathbf{x} \times \rho_f \mathbf{g} \, dV.$$

We will assume that the body is always in buoyant equilibrium, meaning that the body displaces its own weight in fluid, and thus the buoyant and gravitational forces cancel. Now, for the purposes of torque balance, the gravitational and buoyant forces can be taken as acting at the center of mass (CM) and center of buoyancy (CB) respectively,

$$\mathbf{x}_G = \frac{1}{M} \int_V \mathbf{x} \rho_b \, dV, \quad \mathbf{x}_B = \frac{1}{M} \int_V \mathbf{x} \rho_f \, dV.$$

The torques can only balance if the CM and CB lie on a vertical line. For a fully submerged object, the stable equilibrium is when the CM is below the CB. For objects partially submerged in water, such as sailboats or ducks, it is clear that the CM is usually above the CB, which is the centroid of the part of the object below the waterline. Despite this, the equilibrium remains stable.

To understand why, we consider a longitudinally symmetric ship for simplicity, and consider an infinitesimal rotation $d\theta$ about the x-axis. Let A be the waterline area, i.e. the intersection of the ship with the waterline, at $z = 0$. In order to maintain buoyant equilibrium, the rotation axis must pass through the centroid of A, as this keeps the submerged volume of the ship the same to first order in $d\theta$. This point is called the center of roll, and we take it as the origin. Upon this rotation, the center of gravity shifts horizontally by

$$dy_G = -z_G \, d\theta.$$

However, the horizontal motion of the center of buoyancy has two components,

$$dy_B = -\left(z_B + \frac{I}{V} \right) d\theta, \quad I = \int_A y^2 \, dA$$

The first term results from directly rotating the initially submerged part of the ship; the second arises because the shape of the submerged part of the ship changes upon rotation. Therefore, the horizontal motion of the center of buoyancy is the same as if it were actually situated at an imaginary, higher point called the metacenter, with

$$z_M = z_B + \frac{I}{V}.$$

In order for buoyancy to give a restoring torque, we need $|dy_B| > |dy_G|$, which means the ship if stable if the CM is below the metacenter. (The metacenter's height depends on the axis of rotation. Since we want stability against rotations about any axis, the metacenter is defined using the axis for which I is the smallest. Since ships are long and narrow, this is typically the longitudinal axis.)

Note. For general angles, stability is quantified by the "righting arm", which is simply $|y_G(\theta) - y_B(\theta)|$. The above analysis applies only to small angles, where the righting arm is linear in θ. When the righting arm goes to zero, the ship becomes unstable, and flips over.

For smaller pieces of fluid, surface tension is important.

- Surface tension arises from the energy cost of having an interface between two materials,

$$dU = \alpha \, dA.$$

  If one divides a surface by a curve, then the differential force between the two parts of the surface is

$$d\mathbf{F} = \alpha \, d\mathbf{s} \times \hat{\mathbf{n}}$$

  where $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ is the normal vector to the surface.

- The quantity α depends on the energy of interaction between neighboring particles in both materials with themselves, and with each other. Since the interface has microscopic thickness, its macroscopic curvature does not affect α. For simple materials, it does not depend on how much the surface has already been stretched, though soap films are a notable exception.

- In general, for liquid-gas interfaces we have $\alpha > 0$, because particles in the liquid attract each other (otherwise it would not remain a liquid), but the gas is too sparse to cause much interaction. For liquid-liquid interfaces α can be positive or negative; if it is negative, the liquids rapidly mix. For liquid-solid interfaces α can again be positive or negative, and this determines the propensity of the liquid to wet the surface.

- Above, we stated the force acts "between the two parts of the surface", but this is vague. For liquid-gas and liquid-solid interfaces, the force acts between the two parts of the *liquid* at the surface, since the gases are sparse and the solids are not free to move. **(improve)**

- For a liquid in a gravitational field g with density ρ, surface tension dominates below the capillary length

$$L = \sqrt{\frac{\alpha}{\rho g}}$$

  by dimensional analysis. For room temperature water, this is a few millimeters. More generally, for an interface between two fluids, the density in the denominator should be the difference of the two densities, since that determines the changes in gravitational potential energy.

- Near the origin, a general surface with $\hat{\mathbf{n}} = \hat{\mathbf{z}}$ can be parametrized as

$$z = \frac{1}{2}ax^2 + \frac{1}{2}by^2 + cxy.$$

  In polar coordinates, the radius of curvature in the $\hat{\boldsymbol{\phi}}$ direction is

$$\frac{1}{R(\phi)} = \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial r^2}\bigg|_{r=0} = a\cos^2\phi + b\sin^2\phi + 2c\sin\phi\cos\phi = \frac{a+b}{2} + \frac{a-b}{2}\cos 2\phi + c\sin 2\phi.$$

  The minimum and maximum values of $R(\phi)$ are attained for two orthogonal $\hat{\boldsymbol{\phi}}$, and are called the principal radii of curvature R_1 and R_2. For example, for $c = 0$ they are simply a and b.

- By considering force balance on a small rectangle, one can show that the pressure discontinuity across a surface is

$$\Delta p = \alpha \left(\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} \right).$$

  The quantity in parentheses is also called twice the mean curvature.

Note. The case of a liquid in air (pure cohesion) is relatively straightforward, but things become more subtle when one has interfaces of air, liquid, and solid. Many introductory textbooks give incorrect derivations of basic results such as Jurin's law and Young's law. For an example of the subtleties swept under the rug, see the paper *Derivation of Jurin's law revisited*.

4.2   Solid Statics

Next, we consider solid statics, which is slightly more mathematically involved.

- In response to shear stresses, liquids flow and solids deform, so solids can support them in static equilibrium. A familiar example of a shear stress at the boundary between two solids is static friction, though shear stresses also exist in the interiors of solids.

- As a result, we have a general stress tensor, which acts on an infinitesimal surface element as

$$d\mathbf{F} = \boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot d\mathbf{S}.$$

  By considering the forces acting on a small closed volume, we find the total force is

$$\mathbf{F} = \int_V \mathbf{f}\, dV + \oint_S \boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = \int_V \mathbf{f}^*\, dV, \quad \mathbf{f}^* = \mathbf{f} + \nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma}^T$$

  where $\mathbf{f}$ is the external force density, $\mathbf{f}^*$ is the total force density, and the final term is $\nabla_j \sigma_{ij}$.

- The diagonal elements of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ are the negatives of the pressures in each direction, while the off-diagonal elements represent shear stresses. Therefore, in general there is no unique way to define "the" pressure, though a decent option is to use the "mechanical pressure",

$$p = -\frac{1}{3}\sigma_{ii}$$

  which is a scalar that reduces to the pressure for an isotropic stress tensor. It can be interpreted as the negative of the normal component of the stress averaged over all possible surface orientations, which follows since $\langle n_i n_j \rangle = \delta_{ij}/3$ for normal vectors $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$.

- A solid under tension will begin to plastically deform above the yield stress, and fail entirely when the stress equals the tensile strength. For typical metals, the tensile strength is several hundred MPa, modern composite carbon fibers have tensile strengths of a few GPa, and carbon nanotubes have tensile strengths of about 50 GPa.

- In mechanical equilibrium, $\mathbf{f}^* = 0$, which is known as Cauchy's equilibrium equation. They are a set of coupled PDEs, which must be supplemented with constitutive relations which give the stress in terms of the other properties of the material.

- The total moment acting on a body is

$$\mathbf{M} = \int_V \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{f}\, dV + \oint_S \mathbf{x} \times (\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot d\mathbf{S}) = \int_V \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{f}^*\, dV - \int_V \epsilon_{ijk}\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i \sigma_{jk}\, dV$$

  as is most conveniently shown in index notation. Since $\mathbf{f}^*$ vanishes in equilibrium, this calculation is usually taken to show that the stress tensor is symmetric, $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^T = \boldsymbol{\sigma}$.

- However, this is actually an oversimplification, because we have ignored the possibility of *external* moments. For example, consider an electrically polarized material. If the material is placed in a uniform electric field, there is no force density, but there is a moment density.

- What happens next depends on whether the solid can support asymmetric stress. If it doesn't, we concluded that it cannot be in equilibrium until the polarization aligns with the external field; if it does, then an internal asymmetric stress appears to cancel the torque. This happens in liquid crystals, as they have long-range orientational order. However, for simplicity we'll take the stress tensor to be symmetric from this point on, as it holds for most materials.

- Symmetric stress tensors can be diagonalized, i.e. for every point in a body there exists a principal basis in which the stress tensor is diagonal.

- By balancing forces on a surface between two bodies, we have

$$\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} \text{ is continuous across surfaces.}$$

For example, for a horizontal surface, σ_{xz}, σ_{yz}, and σ_{zz} must be continuous. Note that the mechanical pressure can change discontinuously; the continuity of the pressure in fluid statics (ignoring surface tension) only held because the pressure was isotropic.

Note. There's a minor subtlety involving the definition of the stress tensor. The basic definition relevant for fluid mechanics is the one above, in terms of forces acting on surface elements. However, since force is the rate of change of momentum, you can also define σ_{ij} as the rate of flow of momentum P_i across a unit j-area. For typical fluids, these definitions coincide, but they differ in general, and the latter is more fundamental.

For example, consider a gas of photons in a reflective box. Here the first definition of stress tensor becomes ambiguous: photons don't interact with each other classically, so they don't experience any force at all. We can still define a stress tensor by talking about the force that a *physical* small, flat object *would* experience if it were placed inside the photon gas, but that requires changing the setup. The definition is no longer intrinsic to the fluid itself, and worse, it depends on the kind of object placed inside, e.g. the result for a reflective element is twice that for an absorbing element. On the other hand, the second definition still works perfectly well, which is why it is almost universally used in relativistic contexts.

The choice of definition makes a difference in how one develops the theory. For example, consider the statement that the stress tensor is symmetric, for a fluid experiencing no external forces or moments. We proved this above in the case of statics, but for ordinary fluids where the stress tensor is defined the first way, there's a simple proof that holds for fluid dynamics too. The antisymmetric part of the stress tensor contributes a torque to an infinitesimal fluid element of size ΔL scaling as $(\Delta L)^3$. The moment of inertia of the element scales as $(\Delta L)^5$, which implies an unphysical infinite angular acceleration as $\Delta L \to 0$, implying that the stress tensor must be symmetric.

In the relativistic context, where we use the second definition, we can define the stress(-energy) tensor using Noether's theorem, as discussed in the notes on Quantum Field Theory. It turns out that even for an isolated system, the stress tensor can come out antisymmetric! The physical interpretation of the antisymmetric part is that it transfers orbital angular momentum to spin, which evades the above argument because the amount of spin a volume element can suppose scales as $(\Delta L)^3$. (This subtlety doesn't occur for ordinary fluids, which aren't spin polarized.) However, it's possible to redefine the stress-energy tensor to include the bound momentum carried by the spin, in which case it is symmetric again.

Next, we describe the deformations within solids in terms of strain.

- The tricky thing about deformations is that they can't be inferred from the current state of the solid alone; we also need to know how it relates to the original state. We suppose a solid is deformed so that the material particle at $\mathbf{X}$ moves to $\mathbf{x}$. The displacement field is

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{X}.$$

  In the Euler representation, we think of everything as a function of $\mathbf{x}$, while in the Lagrange representation we think of everything as a function of $\mathbf{X}$. We will use the Euler representation, so all derivatives will be with respect to $\mathbf{x}$.

- Note that there is no analogue of the active/passive transformation distinction here, because there is no natural way to view a general deformation passively.

- When the displacements are large, we need the general machinery of differential geometry, so we will mostly restrict to the case of small displacements, in which case there is no fundamental difference between the Euler and Lagrange representations.

- Displacements can also include rigid transformations of the solid, such as translations and rotations, which do not count as deformations. Thus, we are motivated to extract the part of $\mathbf{u}$ that refers to deformations only.

- Consider an infinitesimal "needle" that originally pointed from $\mathbf{X}$ to $\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{a}_0$, but now points from $\mathbf{x}$ to $\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{a}$. To compute $\mathbf{a}$, note that

$$\mathbf{a}_0 = \mathbf{X}(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{a}) - \mathbf{X}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{u}(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{a}) - \mathbf{u}(\mathbf{x}).$$

  Therefore, expanding to first order in $\mathbf{a}$,

$$\delta\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{a}_0 = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{u}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot (\nabla\mathbf{u}).$$

  The tensor $(\nabla\mathbf{u})_{ij} = \nabla_i\mathbf{u}_j$ contains the so-called displacement gradients.

- A displacement field is slowly varying when the displacement gradients are small, which means the fractional changes in lengths are small. We will work almost exclusively in this limit.

- Similarly, scalar products between two needles based at the same point change,

$$\delta(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}_0 \cdot \mathbf{b}_0 = \sum_{ij}(\nabla_i u_j + \nabla_j u_i)a_i b_j.$$

  We can write this in terms of Cauchy's (infinitesimal) strain tensor,

$$\delta(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) = 2\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{b}, \quad u_{ij} = \frac{1}{2}(\nabla_i u_j + \nabla_j u_i) = \nabla_{(i} u_{j)}.$$

  This can also be written in index-free notation as

$$\overline{\mathbf{u}} = \frac{1}{2}(\nabla\mathbf{u} + (\nabla\mathbf{u})^T)$$

  where the bar is used to avoid notational confusion.

- The antisymmetric part of $\nabla \mathbf{u}$ contains infinitesimal rotations, which don't contribute to $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$. Since $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ is symmetric, it can be diagonalized at each point; the eigenvectors are the principal strain axes.

- This result coincides with a more general result from differential geometry. We can think of $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ as quantifying the difference of the metrics in the $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{X}$ coordinates, as we flow from $\mathbf{X}$ to $\mathbf{x}$ under the vector field $\mathbf{u}$. Therefore, $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ should be the Lie derivative of the metric with respect to $\mathbf{u}$, which it indeed is.

- The diagonal elements of u_{ij} reflect the fractional change in length along the corresponding axis, while the off-diagonal elements reflect the change in angle between the corresponding initially orthogonal coordinate axes. Specifically, if $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are initially orthogonal, then

$$\delta\phi = -2u_{ab} \equiv -2\hat{\mathbf{a}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{u}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{b}}, \quad \frac{\delta|\mathbf{a}|}{|\mathbf{a}|} = u_{aa}.$$

In addition, note that

$$\delta\mathbf{a} = \frac{1}{2}(\nabla \times \mathbf{u}) \times \mathbf{a} + \bar{\mathbf{u}} \cdot \mathbf{a}$$

which separates the effects of infinitesimal rotations and deformations.

- By straightforwardly applying derivatives, Cauchy's strain tensor satisfies

$$\nabla_i \nabla_j u_{kl} + \nabla_k \nabla_l u_{ij} = \nabla_i \nabla_l u_{kj} + \nabla_k \nabla_j u_{il}.$$

Conversely, it can be shown that any symmetric tensor satisfying this is the strain tensor corresponding to some displacement field. This is a symmetric version of the Poincare lemma.

- In order to do vector calculus, we need to compute the variations of infinitesimal line elements, surface elements, and volume elements. We have already treated line elements as our first example; note that in the line integral of a vector field $\mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{s}$, the vector field, the line element, and the endpoints all need to be transformed.

- To handle volume elements, note that we can build them out of three infinitesimal vectors,

$$dV = \epsilon_{ijk} a_i b_j c_k.$$

Expanding the infinitesimal changes out in index notation gives

$$\delta(dV) = \epsilon_{ijk}((\nabla_l u_i)(a_l b_j c_k) + (\nabla_l u_j)(a_i b_l c_k) + (\nabla_l u_k)(a_i b_j c_l)).$$

On the other hand, we also have
$$(\nabla_l u_{[l})(a_i b_j c_{k]}) = 0$$

since antisymmetrizing over four spatial indices gives zero. Since the ϵ_{ijk} already antisymmetrizes over i, j, and k, this identity relates the three terms above to a fourth, giving the result

$$\delta(dV) = \epsilon_{ijk}(\nabla_l u_l)(a_i b_j c_k) = (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}) \, dV$$

which makes intuitive sense. As an application, volumes transform like

$$\delta\rho = -\rho \, \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}.$$

- For a surface element, we note that we can write $d\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ and $dV = \mathbf{c} \cdot d\mathbf{S}$. Then using the previous result gives

$$\mathbf{c} \cdot \delta(d\mathbf{S}) = \delta(dV) - \delta\mathbf{c} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u})(\mathbf{c} \cdot d\mathbf{S}) - \mathbf{c} \cdot \nabla\mathbf{u} \cdot d\mathbf{S}.$$

  Since $\mathbf{c}$ is arbitrary, we can conclude that

$$\delta(d\mathbf{S}) = (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}) \, d\mathbf{S} - (\nabla\mathbf{u}) \cdot d\mathbf{S}.$$

- As an example, suppose that an external force does work on the body, causing it to slowly deform. The work done against the internal forces in the body is

$$\delta W = - \int_V \mathbf{f}^* \cdot \delta\mathbf{u} \, dV.$$

  For simplicity, we suppose the surface of the body does not move. Then

$$\delta W = - \int_V \mathbf{f} \cdot \delta\mathbf{u} \, dV + \int_V \boldsymbol{\sigma} : (\nabla\delta\mathbf{u}) \, dV$$

  where we integrated by parts, and $\mathbf{A} : \mathbf{B} = A_{ij} B_{ji}$.

- The first term represents the work done against long-range forces, e.g. it contains the change in gravitational potential energy. The second term represents the work done against internal forces by deforming the body. For a symmetric stress tensor, it can be written as

$$\delta W_{\text{deform}} = \int_V \boldsymbol{\sigma} : \delta\overline{\mathbf{u}} \, dV.$$

  As a simple check on this result, note that for an isotropic stress tensor $\sigma_{ij} = -p\delta_{ij}$,

$$\delta W_{\text{deform}} = - \int_V p \, \nabla \cdot (\delta\mathbf{u}) \, dV = - \int_V p \, \delta(dV)$$

  as expected.

Note. When the deformations are large, it's better to use ideas from differential geometry rather than vector calculus. The positions of the material particles define a coordinate system, whose metric is δ_{ij} when the material is not deformed. By viewing the map $\mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{X}$ as a diffeomorphism, this metric is pushed forward to

$$g_{ij}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial X_k}{\partial x_i} \frac{\partial X_k}{\partial x_j}.$$

The general definition of the strain tensor is in terms of the change in the metric,

$$g_{ij} = \delta_{ij} - 2u_{ij}.$$

Finally, by substituting $\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{u}$, we arrive at the so-called Euler–Almansi stress tensor,

$$u_{ij}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial u_j}{\partial x_i} + \frac{\partial u_i}{\partial x_j} - \frac{\partial u_k}{\partial x_i}\frac{\partial u_k}{\partial x_j} \right)$$

which differs from our infinitesimal expression by a quadratic term. For example, for a uniform scaling $\mathbf{x} = \kappa\mathbf{X}$, we have

$$u_{ij} = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \kappa^{-1/2})\delta_{ij}$$

which makes sense for all κ, while our infinitesimal expression only made sense for $\kappa \approx 1$.

Note. The Lagrange representation. In this case, we work in terms of the variable $\mathbf{X}$. We define the Lagrangian displacement field to satisfy

$$\mathbf{U}(\mathbf{X}) = \mathbf{u}(\mathbf{x}(\mathbf{X})).$$

In other words, while $\mathbf{u}(\mathbf{x})$ represents how much the material particle now at $\mathbf{x}$ was displaced, $\mathbf{U}(\mathbf{X})$ represents how much the material particle that was originally at $\mathbf{X}$ was displaced. Starting with the ambient Euclidean metric, we can pull it back from $\mathbf{x}$ to $\mathbf{X}$ to define the metric

$$G_{ij}(\mathbf{X}) = \frac{\partial x_k}{\partial X_i} \frac{\partial x_k}{\partial X_j}$$

where G_{ij} is the Lagrangian deformation tensor. We define the Lagrange–Green stress tensor by

$$G_{ij} = \delta_{ij} + 2U_{ij}$$

which implies that

$$U_{ij} = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\partial U_j}{\partial X_i} + \frac{\partial U_i}{\partial X_j} + \frac{\partial U_k}{\partial X_i} \frac{\partial U_k}{\partial X_j} \right).$$

For infinitesimal deformations, this coincides with our other stress tensors.

Note. Numeric computations can be done by discretizing either the Euler or Lagrange representation. As mentioned above, for small displacements the two are essentially equivalent. More generally, the Lagrange representation tends to be a bit easier to think about, so traditional 1D hydrodynamic codes are almost all Lagrangian. For more than one dimension, turbulence tends to "tangle up" the Lagrange representation's computation grid, making the Euler representation a better choice, as the Eulerian grid is fixed in space. On the other hand, that also means that matter can leave the computational domain.

Finally, we relate stress and strain with Hooke's law.

- For sufficiently small deformations, many materials have a linear relationship between stress and strain. For an isotropic material, we define the Young's modulus by

$$E = \frac{\sigma_{xx}}{u_{xx}}.$$

  Thus, a rod of length L and cross-sectional area A has a spring constant of

$$k = \frac{F}{\Delta x} = \frac{\sigma_{xx} A}{u_{xx} L} = \frac{EA}{L}.$$

  Young's modulus has dimensions of pressure, and typical values for metals are about 100 GPa. Since the strain must be small, Hooke's law applies only for stresses much less than E. For instance, the yield stress is roughly a thousand times smaller. Hooke's law breaks down at the proportionality limit, which is usually well below the yield stress. Corrections to linearity are accounted for in "hyperelasticity", which is useful for describing rubber.

- Normal materials will also contract in the transverse direction when they are stretched. If a force is applied along the x direction, then both u_{xx} and u_{yy} will be proportional to it, so their ratio is independent of it. We hence define Poisson's ratio as

$$\nu = -\frac{u_{yy}}{u_{xx}}.$$

- The most general linear relation between stress and strain is

$$\sigma_{ij} = E_{ijkl} u_{kl}$$

where E_{ijkl} is the elasticity tensor. For an isotropic material the most general option is

$$E_{ijkl} = \lambda \delta_{ij} \delta_{kl} + \mu(\delta_{ik}\delta_{jl} + \delta_{jk}\delta_{il})$$

where λ and μ are called the elastic moduli or Lame coefficients, and μ is called the shear modulus or modulus of rigidity. Explicitly, we have

$$\sigma_{ij} = 2\mu u_{ij} + \lambda \delta_{ij} u_{kk}$$

so only μ contributes to shear stresses.

- These two parameters are determined by E and ν, and vice versa. Specifically, for stretching along the x direction, the only nonzero components of stress and strain are

$$\sigma_{xx} = P, \quad u_{xx} = \frac{P}{E}, \quad u_{yy} = u_{zz} = -\frac{\nu P}{E}.$$

Comparing this to the definition of the elastic moduli gives the relations

$$E = \frac{3\lambda + 2\mu}{\lambda + \mu}\mu, \quad \nu = \frac{\lambda}{2(\lambda + \mu)}$$

or conversely,

$$\lambda = \frac{E\nu}{(1 - 2\nu)(1 + \nu)}, \quad \mu = \frac{E}{2(1 + \nu)}.$$

The Young's modulus and Poisson's ratio are directly measurable, so they are found in tables.

- Note that the mechanical pressure is

$$\Delta p = -\frac{1}{3}\sigma_{ii} = -\left(\lambda + \frac{2}{3}\mu\right)u_{ii}.$$

On the other hand, $u_{ii} = -\Delta\rho/\rho$, so the bulk modulus is

$$K = \lambda + \frac{2}{3}\mu = \frac{E}{3(1 - 2\nu)}.$$

Generically, K, E, λ, and μ are all of the same order of magnitude.

- We can also solve for the strain in terms of the stress,

$$u_{ij} = \frac{1 + \nu}{E}\sigma_{ij} - \frac{\nu}{E}\delta_{ij}\sigma_{kk}.$$

- In general, the work needed to deform a body is

$$\delta W_{\text{deform}} = \int_V \sigma_{ij} \, \delta u_{ij} \, dV.$$

However, since $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ depends on $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$, this integral can be path-dependent. It is path-independent if the cross derivatives are equal,

$$\frac{\partial \sigma_{ij}}{\partial u_{kl}} = \frac{\partial \sigma_{kl}}{\partial u_{ij}}$$

which is the tensorial analogue of the condition that the curl of a vector field vanish.

- Assuming the stress is linear in the strain, this implies that

$$E_{ijkl} = E_{klij}.$$

  Furthermore, the elasticity tensor is symmetric in its first two and second two indices, since the stress and strain tensors are symmetric. Thus, each of these pairs of indices has 6 degrees of freedom, and symmetry under exchanging the two pairs gives a total of 21 degrees of freedom. Of these, 3 are redundant because they just describe the orientation of the material.

- The number of degrees of freedom needed to describe a material depends on its degree of symmetry, with cubic crystals requiring 3, and triclinic crystals requiring all 18.

- Assuming this symmetry condition is satisfied, we can imagine building up $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ linearly, giving

$$\varepsilon = \frac{1}{2}\sigma_{ij}u_{ij} = \frac{1}{2}E_{ijkl}u_{ij}u_{kl}.$$

  This must be positive definite for the solid to be stable, which leads to positivity conditions on the elasticity tensor. This can also be used to show that solutions to the equilibrium equation $\mathbf{f}^* = 0$ are unique.

- For the special case of isotropic materials, we have

$$\varepsilon = \mu\, u_{ij}u_{ij} + \frac{1}{2}\lambda(u_{ii})^2.$$

  It can be shown that for this to be positive definite, we require

$$\mu > 0, \quad 3\lambda + 2\mu > 0.$$

  These impose stability against shearing and compression, respectively. Equivalently,

$$K > 0, \quad E > 0, \quad -1 < \nu < 1/2.$$

  Most materials have $\nu > 0$, but exotic "auxetic" materials can have negative ν.

Example. Consider a static homogeneous cube of isotropic material of side length L, subject to a uniform shear stress P along the $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$ direction on the faces perpendicular to $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$. As a result of this external stress, force balance ensures that a uniform shear stress $\sigma_{xy} = P$ is set up throughout the entire material. However, torque balance tells us that this situation is actually impossible: the stress tensor is not symmetric, so torque balance can't be satisfied; in reality the cube will begin rotating about the $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ axis.

One way to prevent this is to put another external uniform shear stress P along the $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$ direction on the faces perpendicular to $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$, in which case $\sigma_{xy} = \sigma_{yx} = P$ throughout the material, and

$$u_{xy} = \frac{P}{2\mu} = \frac{1}{2}(\nabla_x u_y + \nabla_y u_x).$$

There are multiple solutions for the displacement field $\mathbf{u}$, which is generally not determined uniquely. For example, the cube may shear along the $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$ direction, the $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$ direction, or some combination of both. Which one occurs in practice depends on how the external forces are applied.

4.3 Ideal Fluid Flow

We begin with the mathematical description of fluid flow.

- We describe the fluid's motion with a velocity field $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x}, t)$. As mentioned previously, this corresponds not to the motion of individual molecules, but to that of "material particles", i.e. it is the center of mass velocity of a small packet of fluid. The momentum of such a packet is

$$d\mathbf{P} = \rho \mathbf{v}\, dV.$$

- The motion can be visualized using streamlines, which are the field lines of $\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x}, t)$ at a fixed time t. If the flow is not steady, this will differ from the trajectories of the material particles themselves. For example, the shape of the smoke that has come out of a chimney at time t is generally not a streamline, but rather is a "streakline", meaning a set of trajectories evaluated at time t released from the chimney at different initial times t_0.

- Conservation of mass implies the continuity equation

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{v}) = 0.$$

For incompressible flow, this reduces to $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$.

- The rate of change of a property of the fluid experienced by a material particle is quantified by the material/comoving time derivative,

$$\frac{D}{Dt} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla.$$

The first term accounts for the local rate of change, while the "advective" term corresponds to the effect of following the motion of the fluid. For example, for the time-independent vector field $\mathbf{x}$, the rate of change of $\mathbf{x}$ for a material particle is just the velocity,

$$\frac{D\mathbf{x}}{Dt} = (\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{v}.$$

- The continuity equation can be equivalently written as

$$\frac{D\rho}{Dt} = -\rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}$$

which is intuitively clear. Also, note that in a small time interval, all points of the fluid are displaced by $\delta \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v}\, \delta t$. Therefore, using our earlier result for volume transformation under strain, the volume of the material particle changes as

$$\frac{D(dV)}{Dt} = (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v})\, dV$$

where here the convective derivative is only formal. Combining these results gives $D(dM)/Dt = 0$, the obvious fact that the mass of a material particle does not change as it moves.

- By applying Newton's second law to a material particle, we have Cauchy's equation,

$$\rho \frac{D\mathbf{v}}{Dt} = \mathbf{f}^*$$

where $\mathbf{f}^*$ is the effective force density. The field $D\mathbf{v}/dt$ is called the material acceleration; note that it can be nonzero even for a steady flow.

- This result can also be written as a continuity equation for momentum,

$$\frac{\partial(\rho\mathbf{v})}{\partial t} + \nabla\cdot(\rho\mathbf{v}\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{f}^*.$$

  The quantity $\rho\mathbf{v}$ is called the current density of mass, or the momentum density, or the mass flux, or the mass flux density.

- To solve this equation, we generally need constitutive relations which give $\mathbf{f}^*$ in terms of the material parameters. If $\mathbf{f}^*$ only depends on $\mathbf{x}$ and the density, then our equations for $D\rho/Dt$ and $D\mathbf{v}/Dt$ close by themselves.

- The formalism above also applies to solids, but now $\mathbf{f}^*$ depends on the displacement field

$$\mathbf{u}(\mathbf{x}, t) = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{X}(\mathbf{x}, t)$$

  which we must keep track of. The easiest way to do this is to note that $\mathbf{X}(\mathbf{x}, t)$ simply means the location the material particle at $\mathbf{x}$ originally came from. This is time-independent, so

$$\frac{D\mathbf{X}}{Dt} = 0.$$

  Plugging in the definitions gives

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{D\mathbf{u}}{Dt}$$

  which must be solved along with the other three equations.

Next, we consider the case of incompressible and inviscid/ideal/perfect flow.

- Taking the only forces to be gravity and pressure, $\mathbf{f}^* = \rho\mathbf{g} - \nabla p$, we have the Euler equations

$$\frac{\partial\mathbf{v}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{v}\cdot\nabla)\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{g} - \frac{\nabla p}{\rho_0}, \quad \nabla\cdot\mathbf{v} = 0.$$

  The first Euler equation is also called *the* Euler equation.

- The Euler equations determine the time evolution of $\mathbf{v}$. They also fix the pressure; taking the divergence of the Euler equation gives

$$\nabla^2 p = \rho_0\nabla\cdot\mathbf{g} - \rho_0\nabla\cdot((\mathbf{v}\cdot\nabla)\mathbf{v}).$$

  Thus, the pressure everywhere at some instant is determined by the velocity at that instant.

- This seems puzzling, because distant changes in the velocity affects the pressure instantaneously, seemingly in a nonlocal way. This is because changes in the pressure propagate at the speed of sound, and for an incompressible fluid the speed of sound is infinite. This is a decent approximation for many real-world situations involving water and air, where the speed of sound is much higher than the flow speed.

- At interfaces between two fluids, we additionally need the boundary conditions that p and $\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{n}$ are continuous, where $\mathbf{n}$ is the normal vector. For a solid boundary, this means the normal component of velocity must vanish.

- As we'll see below, the degree to which viscosity can be neglected is quantified by the Reynolds number, which is high for many real-world applications. However, even a small amount of viscosity can have qualitative effects. For instance, at solid boundaries there is always a boundary layer where the tangential velocity of the fluid approaches zero.

- In steady flow, the Euler equation reduces to

$$(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{g} - \frac{\nabla p}{\rho_0}.$$

  As we'll see later, when a compressible fluid performs steady flow, it behaves as if it is incompressible, as long as the flow speed is much lower than the speed of sound. Intuitively, this is a local increase in pressure will tend to drive fluid out of the way rather than compressing it. This makes incompressibility often a reasonable assumption even when applied to air.

- Bernoulli's theorem states that for steady flow, the Bernoulli field

$$H = \frac{1}{2}v^2 + \Phi + \frac{p}{\rho_0}$$

  is constant along streamlines, where Φ is the gravitational potential. To see this, note that

$$\frac{DH}{Dt} = \mathbf{v} \cdot \frac{D\mathbf{v}}{Dt} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla\Phi + \frac{1}{\rho_0}\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla p = 0$$

  where we used the assumption of steady flow, and the Euler equation.

- The first two terms in the Bernoulli field make up the total mechanical energy per unit mass, and the change in pressure quantifies the work done on particles as they flow, so Bernoulli's theorem can be thought of as a statement of conservation of energy.

- In hydrodynamics, the quantity $\rho_0 v^2/2$ is also called the "dynamic pressure", since it is converted to pressure when a flow is stopped. For a constant gravitational field g_0, the quantity H/g_0 is also called the "total head", since it quantifies how high the fluid can be raised.

Note. In steady flow through a constriction, there is an asymmetry between the inlet and outlet: the water converges in the inlet to the constriction, then leaves through the outlet in a narrow jet. (One can also see a boundary layer in the constriction.)
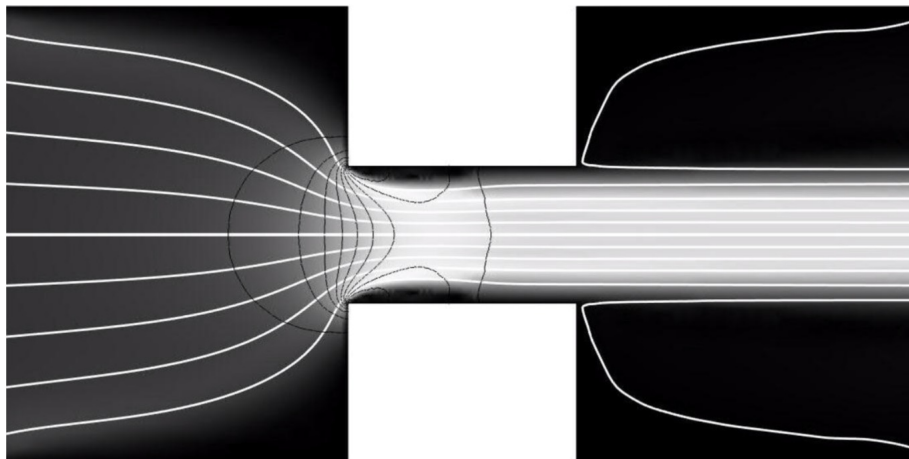
However, this asymmetry is not encoded in the Euler equations for steady flow, which are symmetric under time reversal. Time reversal symmetry is broken by viscosity (as a result of the usual thermodynamic arrow of time), but if we don't account for it, we must impose boundary conditions to get the appropriate physical solution, just as we do for, e.g. the advanced and retarded solutions in electromagnetism.

Next, we study the vorticity of the flow.

- Suppose that a steady flow originates from a asymptotically uniform flow at infinity. In this case, it is intuitive that H should be constant between all streamlines, and hence constant everywhere. However, this intuition can fail if streamlines form closed loops.

- To make this intuition precise, note that

$$\partial_i H = v_j \partial_i v_j + \partial_i \left(\Phi + \frac{p}{\rho_0} \right) = v_j \partial_i v_j - v_j \partial_j v_i$$

where we used the Euler equation. Therefore, exiting index notation,

$$\nabla H = \mathbf{v} \times \boldsymbol{\omega}, \quad \boldsymbol{\omega} = \nabla \times \mathbf{v}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ is the vorticity field. Thus, H is constant if the vorticity vanishes.

- Visually, the field lines of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ are called vortex lines. Since the vorticity field is a curl, $\nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} = 0$, so vortex lines generically close. One can think of the fluid as locally circulating around such lines. Since ∇H is perpendicular to both $\mathbf{v}$ and $\boldsymbol{\omega}$, H is constant on the surfaces made from vortex lines and streamlines, also called Lamb surfaces.

- Accounting for the time-dependent term in the Euler equation, we have

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t} = \mathbf{v} \times \boldsymbol{\omega} - \nabla H$$

and taking the curl of both sides gives

$$\frac{\partial \boldsymbol{\omega}}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{v} \times \boldsymbol{\omega}).$$

Therefore, if an ideal fluid initially has no vorticity, then it never can gain any.

- This can be physically unintuitive. For example, if one moves a ball through initially still water, vortices will form in its wake. They are created by the "shedding" of boundary layers at the surface of the ball, which exist due to viscosity.

- By Stokes' theorem, the circulation of the fluid along a curve C is

$$\Gamma(C, t) = \oint_C \mathbf{v}(t) \cdot d\boldsymbol{\ell} = \int_S \boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot d\mathbf{S}$$

where we used Stokes' theorem.

- In the absence of vorticity, the curl of the velocity vanishes, so we may write it as

$$\mathbf{v} = \nabla \Psi$$

  where Ψ is called the velocity potential. Since the divergence of the velocity vanishes,

$$\nabla^2 \Psi = 0.$$

  This case of "potential flow" is simple because it reduces the problem to linear differential equations, and much is known about Laplace's equation. If the flow is two-dimensional, complex analysis techniques can also be used.

- This approach is useful whether flow is steady or not. If the flow is not steady, we can solve for the pressure, and then use that to determine the time evolution from the Euler equation,

$$\nabla (H + \partial \Psi / \partial t) = 0.$$

  This determines $\Psi(\mathbf{x}, t)$ up to an arbitrary function of time, which is irrelevant, so we can take

$$\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t} = -H.$$

- Since the divergence of the velocity vanishes, we can also take it to be the curl of some other function. In practice, this is useful in two-dimensional flows, where the curl effectively maps scalar fields to vector fields. In this case we can define the stream function $\psi(x, y)$, where

$$v_x = \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y}, \quad v_y = -\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x}$$

  in which case the divergence vanishes by the equality of mixed partial derivatives. In addition,

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla \psi = -\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y} = 0$$

  which implies that the stream function is constant along streamlines. The vorticity is

$$\omega_z = \frac{\partial v_y}{\partial v_x} - \frac{\partial v_x}{\partial y} = -\nabla^2 \psi$$

  so for irrotational flow one can find ψ by solving Laplace's equation.

Example. Potential flow past a sphere. Consider an asymptotically uniform flow with velocity $U\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ which encounters a sphere of radius r at the origin. Using standard techniques for solving Laplace's equation, the solution is

$$\Psi = Ur \cos \theta \left(1 + \frac{a^3}{2r^3} \right)$$

where θ is the angle from $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$. By Bernoulli's theorem, the change in pressure is $\Delta p = \rho_0 v^2 / 2$, and a straightforward computation gives

$$\Delta p = \frac{1}{2} \rho_0 U^2 \frac{9 \cos^2 \theta - 5}{4}$$

on the surface of the sphere. The net force on the sphere vanishes; there is no drag force.

Note. D'Alembert's paradox is the fact that the drag force generally vanishes in steady potential flow. We saw this above, and we can prove it in general. Note that the drag force on the body is

$$\mathbf{F} = \oint_S p\, d\mathbf{S} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho_0 \oint_S v^2\, d\mathbf{S}$$

where we used Bernoulli's theorem, and S is the surface of the body. Here, the uniform pressure contribution $p_0 \oint d\mathbf{S}$ vanishes, and we have neglected the gravitational potential term, since it just yields the buoyant force. To evaluate this integral, we use the divergence theorem in the form

$$\int_V (\nabla T)\, dV = -\oint_S T\, d\mathbf{S}$$

where V is the volume *outside* of S. Switching to index notation,

$$F_i = -\frac{1}{2}\rho_0 \oint v_j v_j\, dS_i = \frac{1}{2}\rho_0 \int_V \partial_i(v_j v_j)\, dV.$$

Now we use the fact that the divergence and curl of $\mathbf{v}$ vanish to write

$$\partial_i(v_j v_j) = 2v_j \partial_i v_j = 2v_j \partial_j v_i = 2\partial_j(v_j v_i).$$

Then using the divergence theorem again in reverse gives

$$F_i = \rho_0 \int_V \partial_j(v_j v_i)\, dV = -\rho_0 \oint_S v_j v_i\, dS_j = 0$$

since $\mathbf{v} \cdot d\mathbf{S}$ vanishes everywhere on the surface. One might worry that we pick up a term in the divergence theorem from the boundary at infinity, but in general the velocity field falls off at least as fast as $1/r^3$, so it does not contribute.

The paradox is that for an object with cross-sectional area A moving with velocity v through stationary fluid, the drag force does not actually vanish in the limit of zero viscosity, but rather approaches a constant of order $\rho_0 A v^2$. There are a few ways of thinking about why this effect is missing in the potential flow solution. In terms of forces, a boundary layer will be formed for any nonzero viscosity, and this produces a trailing wake behind the body in which the pressure is lower than in front, causing a drag force. In terms of conserved quantities, drag occurs because the object gives momentum to the initially stationary fluid to get it out of the way. In the potential flow solution, this does not happen because the fluid is already moving with the object appropriately, but the total momentum of the fluid is *infinite*, making such a situation unphysical.

Note. The convective derivative coincides with the Lie derivative for scalars,

$$\frac{D}{Dt} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{v}},$$

and a scalar u that simply flows along with the velocity field has $Du/dt = 0$. Similarly, we can define a modified convective derivative for general tensors,

$$\frac{\tilde{D}}{\tilde{D}t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \mathcal{L}_{\mathbf{v}}$$

which vanishes if the tensor is Lie transported along the velocity field. For a vector field,

$$\frac{\tilde{D}\mathbf{u}}{\tilde{D}t} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{u} - (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{v}.$$

Starting from the equation of motion for the vorticity and using the product rule for the curl, we can show that $\tilde{D}\boldsymbol{\omega}/\tilde{D}t = 0$, which means concretely that vortex lines are carried by the flow. Intuitively, this is because vorticity is a local measure of angular momentum, and the angular momentum of a parcel of fluid can't change in the absence of viscosity. Furthermore, we know that vortex lines cannot intersect each other, and form closed loops, as can be seen in the motion of smoke rings.

Remarkably, in the late 19th century these results were taken as a basis for a "vortex theory of everything". In this theory, which was popular among the greatest physicists of the United Kingdom, the different kinds of atoms are topologically distinct knots formed by vortex lines in the ether, which is taken to be an ideal fluid. Though the theory didn't succeed in explaining much about chemistry, it has an important historical legacy. For example, in the theoretical physics department at Cambridge, more people work on fluid dynamics then high energy physics or relativity.

4.4   Compressible Flow

Now we consider the compressible flow of ideal fluids. In this case, the speed of sound becomes finite, so we must begin with a treatment of sound waves.

- Neglecting gravity, the Euler equations are now

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{v} = -\frac{\nabla p}{\rho}, \quad \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{v}) = 0.$$

- For a small amplitude sound wave, we let $\rho = \rho_0 + \Delta\rho$ and $p = p_0 + \Delta p$. In this case v/c is similarly small, and we can neglect the advective term. At lowest order, we have

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t} = -\frac{1}{\rho_0}\nabla(\Delta p), \quad \frac{\partial(\Delta\rho)}{\partial t} = -\rho_0\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}$$

  which combine to give

$$\frac{\partial^2(\Delta\rho)}{\partial t^2} = \nabla^2(\Delta p).$$

- For a fluid with a barotropic equation of state, $p = p(\rho)$, we have

$$\Delta p = K_0 \frac{\Delta\rho}{\rho_0}$$

  which yields the wave equation,

$$\frac{\partial^2(\Delta\rho)}{\partial t^2} = c_0^2 \nabla^2(\delta\rho), \quad c_0 = \sqrt{\frac{\Delta p}{\Delta\rho}} = \sqrt{\frac{K_0}{\rho_0}}.$$

- For the special case of an isentropic ideal gas, $K_0 = \gamma p_0$ and

$$c_0 = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma p_0}{\rho_0}} = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma R T_0}{\mu}}$$

  where μ is the molar mass. The isothermal sound velocity is recovered for $\gamma = 1$.

- If we let the density variation be

$$\Delta\rho = \rho_1 \sin(kx - \omega t),$$

  then the velocity field is

$$v_x = v_1 \sin(kx - \omega t), \quad v_1 = c_0 \frac{\rho_1}{\rho_0}.$$

  This confirms our earlier statement that v/c is the same order as $\Delta\rho/\rho$. Also, note that

$$\frac{|(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{v}|}{|\partial\mathbf{v}/\partial t|} \sim \frac{kv_1^2}{\omega v_1} = \frac{v_1}{c_0}$$

  so the advective term does not contribute at lowest order, justifying our neglect of it above. We have also neglected gravity, which is a good approximation when $g \ll \omega c$.

Next, we consider steady compressible flow.

- In this case, the Euler equations reduce to

$$(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{v} = -\frac{\nabla p}{\rho}, \quad \nabla \cdot (\rho\mathbf{v}) = 0.$$

  We assume a barotropic equation of state, for simplicity. The local Mach number is $M = |\mathbf{v}|/c$.

- We can combine the Euler equations to get an equation solely in terms of the velocity. The continuity equation states

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = -\frac{1}{\rho}(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla)\rho = -\frac{1}{\rho c^2}(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla)p$$

  where we used the definition of the speed of sound. Then, using the Euler equation gives

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = \frac{\mathbf{v} \cdot (\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{v}}{c^2}.$$

- Applying the Cauchy–Schwartz inequality to the numerator gives

$$|\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}| \leq M^2 |\nabla\mathbf{v}|, \quad |\nabla\mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{\sum_{ij}(\nabla_i v_j)^2}.$$

  This demonstrates that when $M \ll 1$, the divergence $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}$ is small, and the flow can be treated as incompressible. In practice, this is a reasonable assumption for $M \lesssim 0.3$.

- By an analogous derivation to the incompressible case, the Bernoulli field is

$$H = \frac{1}{2}v^2 + \Phi + w(p)$$

  where we include the gravitational potential Φ for completeness, and $w(p) = \int dp/\rho(p)$ is the pressure potential. For an isentropic ideal gas,

$$w = c_p T, \quad c_p = \frac{\gamma}{\gamma - 1}\frac{R}{\mu}$$

  where μ is the molar mass.

- In general, an object moving through an ideal fluid has a stagnation point in front of it, where the fluid is at rest with respect to the object. There is also at least one behind it, but in practice the flow is not steady behind the object because of vortex formation and turbulence, making Bernoulli's theorem inapplicable.

- Bernoulli's theorem lets us compute the temperature at the forward stagnation point,

$$\frac{1}{2}v^2 + c_p T = c_p T_0.$$

For an isentropic ideal gas, this gives the result

$$\frac{T_0}{T} = 1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{2}M^2$$

where M is the Mach number of the flow at the initial point. Assuming the flow is isentropic, $p \propto \rho^\gamma$, which implies

$$\frac{p}{p_0} = \left(\frac{T}{T_0}\right)^{\gamma/(\gamma-1)}, \quad \frac{\rho}{\rho_0} = \left(\frac{T}{T_0}\right)^{1/(\gamma-1)}.$$

For high speeds, the temperature rise is substantial. In practice, it can cause the gas to dissociate into a plasma, changing the molar mass μ and hence the result.

- A sonic point is a point where $M = 1$. Applying Bernoulli's theorem between a sonic point and a stagnation point gives

$$\frac{T_1}{T_0} = \frac{2}{\gamma - 1}$$

which can be combined with our previous result to yield the local temperature in terms of the sonic point temperature,

$$\frac{T}{T_1} = \left(1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{\gamma + 1}(M^2 - 1)\right)^{-1}.$$

Example. Flow through a duct with a slowly varying cross-section $A(x)$. We approximate all properties of the flow to depend only on x, and treat the velocity as entirely along $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$. It is useful to relate quantities to those at a (possibly hypothetical) sonic point. Continuity of the mass flow gives

$$\frac{A}{A_1} = \frac{\rho_1 v_1}{\rho v} = \frac{1}{M}\frac{c_1}{c}\frac{\rho_1}{\rho} = \frac{1}{M}\left(\frac{T_1}{T}\right)^{1/2 + 1/(\gamma-1)}.$$

Inserting our previous expression gives

$$\frac{A}{A_1} = \frac{1}{M}\left(1 + \frac{\gamma - 1}{\gamma + 1}(M^2 - 1)\right)^{1/2 + 1/(\gamma-1)}.$$

Curiously, the right-hand side is not monotonic, but rather has a local minimum at $M = 1$. This means that if a sonic point exists, it *must* appear at the narrowest part of the duct. For subsonic flow, a decreasing duct area implies increasing flow velocity and decreasing temperature, pressure, and density, but for supersonic flow the reverse is true.
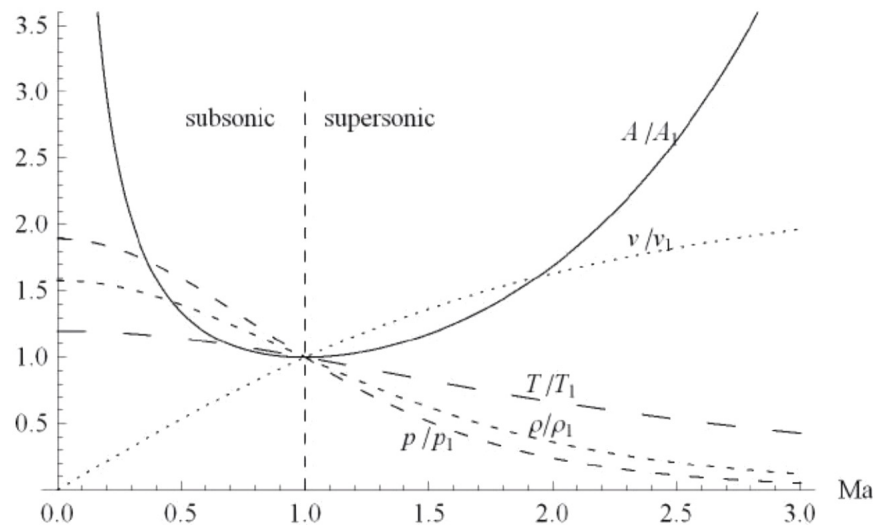
Away from the throat, there are two possible values of M for each value of A, and the one that is actually realized depends on the boundary conditions. Consider a "Laval nozzle", i.e. a symmetric duct containing a narrow throat. If there is no pressure difference, the fluid simply doesn't move at all. As the pressure difference is increased, the fluid flow grows faster, with M taking a local maximum at the throat, but remaining subsonic everywhere. At a certain critical pressure, $M = 1$ is achieved at the throat; at this point, the fluid will continue to speed up past the throat, exiting with $M > 1$. This unintuitive behavior is used to maximize thrust in jets and rockets.

The flow through the nozzle is determined by the input velocity and pressure, and this in turn determines the output pressure. For subsonic flow, this output pressure must equal atmosphere pressure, constraining the input data. However, when the flow is supersonic, information cannot propagate backwards against the flow, so this constraint is not effective. What happens in practice is that if the output pressure and atmospheric pressure don't match, a discontinuity called a shock wave forms at the output. In this regime, we say the flow is "choked". Changing the pressure at the output doesn't change the flow rate at all; it can only change the location of the shock wave.

We also note that a nozzle can be used in reverse, giving a "diffuser". If a flow enters a Laval nozzle already supersonic, then it flows down as the nozzle contracts. If the contraction is sufficient, $M = 1$ is achieved at the throat, and the fluid exits with $M < 1$. This requires the output pressure to be higher than the input pressure. As for the nozzle, shock waves may form, depending on the boundary conditions.

Example. A blunt object moving at supersonic speeds produces a "bow shock" in front of it, as shown. (For an object with a sharp tip, we would instead get a conical shock wave attached to the object, called a Mach cone.)
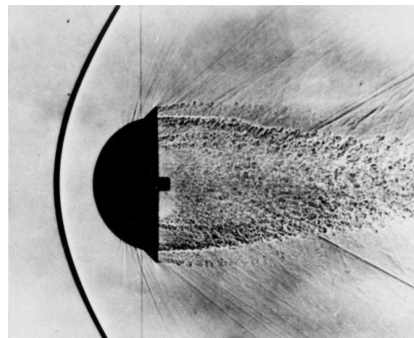
Across this shock, the properties of the fluid change discontinuously. For simplicity, we focus on a "normal" shock, where the shock wave is perpendicular to the fluid velocity; this applies at the forward tip of the bow shock shown. In the steady state and in the frame of the object, we can apply conservation of mass, momentum, and energy across the shock, to give

$$\rho_1 v_1 = \rho_2 v_2, \quad \rho_1 v_1^2 + p_1 + \rho_2 v_2^2 + p_2, \quad \frac{1}{2}v_1^2 + c_p T_1 = \frac{1}{2}v_2^2 + c_p T_2.$$

Using the ideal gas law, the energy conservation condition can be rewritten as

$$\frac{1}{2}v_1^2 + \frac{\gamma}{\gamma - 1}\frac{p_1}{\rho_1} = \frac{1}{2}v_2^2 + \frac{\gamma}{\gamma - 1}\frac{p_2}{\rho_2}.$$

These equations are called the Rankine–Hugoniot conditions. It is convenient to write their solutions in terms of the Mach number before the shock, $M = v_1/c_1$ where $c_1 = \sqrt{\gamma p_1/\rho_1}$. Then

$$\frac{p_2}{p_1} = \frac{2\gamma M^2 - (\gamma - 1)}{\gamma + 1}, \quad \frac{\rho_2}{\rho_1} = \frac{v_1}{v_2} = \frac{(\gamma + 1)M^2}{2 + (\gamma - 1)M^2}.$$

The ratio of temperatures is given by the ideal gas law,

$$\frac{T_2}{T_1} = \frac{p_2}{p_1}\frac{\rho_1}{\rho_2}.$$

In the limit $M \to \infty$, these results simplify to

$$\frac{p_2}{p_1} = \frac{2\gamma}{\gamma + 1}M^2, \quad \frac{\rho_2}{\rho_1} = \frac{\gamma + 1}{\gamma - 1}, \quad \frac{T_2}{T_1} = \frac{2\gamma(\gamma - 1)}{(\gamma + 1)^2}M^2.$$

These results can also be applied to shock waves in a Laval nozzle. For an oblique shock, as occur elsewhere on the bow shock shown, the results are identical except that the v_i should be interpreted as the component of the velocity normal to the shock; the tangential velocity is unchanged.

Note. The Rankine–Hugoniot conditions treat both sides of the shock symmetrically, but in reality we must have $T_2 > T_1$ by the second law of thermodynamics, as kinetic energy is converted to thermal energy. Note that our previous result for the stagnation point temperature is perfectly correct whether or not a shock wave exists, since it just used Bernoulli's theorem, which is one of the Rankine–Hugoniot conditions. It's only the isentropic assumption $p \propto \rho^\gamma$ that breaks down.

4.5 Viscosity

Finally, we arrive at the full Navier–Stokes equations by including viscosity. We begin with some examples for intuition, always assuming incompressible flow.

- Viscosity is a shear stress opposing a velocity gradient. In a Newtonian fluid we assume the two are proportional, so that for a flow $v_x(y)$,

$$\sigma_{xy} = \eta \frac{dv_x}{dy}$$

  where η is called the (dynamic) viscosity. The units of viscosity have various names, $1\,\text{Pa s} = 1\,\text{Poiseuille} = 0.1\,\text{poise}$.

- For example, for an ideal gas we can show by kinetic theory that

$$\eta \sim \frac{\sqrt{k_B T m}}{\sigma} \sim \rho \lambda v$$

  where σ is the collision cross section, m is the mass per molecule, and λ is the mean free path. Possibly surprisingly, the viscosity scales as $\sqrt{T}$, and at constant temperature is independent of the density. In liquids, the viscosity usually falls with temperature.

- Often, it is useful to work in terms of the kinematic viscosity

$$\nu = \frac{\eta}{\rho}$$

  since this directly determines the acceleration of the fluid. In an ideal gas, $\nu \propto T^{3/2}/p$.

- As a first example, consider a planar incompressible flow, where the velocity is $v_x(y, t)$. In this case there is no advective acceleration, so in the absence of body forces,

$$\frac{\partial v_x}{\partial t} = \nu \frac{\partial^2 v_x}{\partial y^2}$$

  which has the form of a diffusion equation with diffusion constant ν.

- As an example, suppose we drive a plate transversely, imposing the boundary condition

$$v_x(0, t) = u_0 \cos(\omega t).$$

  Then the steady state solution is

$$v_x(y, t) = u_0 e^{-ky} \cos(ky - \omega t), \quad k = \sqrt{\frac{\omega}{2\nu}}$$

  so a shear wave propagates a distance $1/k$ into the fluid.

- As another example, suppose we start with a "Gaussian river" of

$$v_x(y, 0) = u_0 e^{-y^2/a^2}.$$

  Then the solution at later times is

$$v_x(y, t) = \frac{u_0 a}{\sqrt{a^2 + 4\nu t}} \exp\left(-\frac{y^2}{a^2 + 4\nu t}\right)$$

  causing the river to spread out over time. Assuming the initial width is small, the momentum diffuses over time over the width $\delta \sim 2\sqrt{\nu t}$. When viscosity is weak, this is the typical width of the boundary layers that form.

- As a final example, suppose a plate is instantaneously kicked,

$$v_x(0, t) = u_0 \theta(t).$$

  This is known as Stokes' first problem. Since there are no length scales in the problem besides δ, the solution must depend on it alone,

$$v_x(y, t) = u_0 f(y/\sqrt{\nu t}).$$

Plugging in this ansatz gives

$$f''(s) + \frac{1}{2} s f'(s) = 0, \quad f(s) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_s^\infty e^{-u^2/4} \, du.$$

Sometimes, one defines the boundary layer thickness to be the distance where the velocity drops to $u_0/100$, which in this case is $\delta_{99} = 3.64 \sqrt{\nu t}$.

- Note that viscosity within the fluid merely transports vorticity through it, which is in accordance with the conservation of angular momentum. The vorticity in this example arises purely from the external torque applied from the plate when it is kicked. Also, in all examples, the changes in velocity propagate instantaneously, which is again a consequence of assuming incompressibility.

Next, we write down the Navier–Stokes equations for incompressible flow.

- We assume the fluid is isotropic and incompressible and the stress tensor is symmetric. Then the most general possible stress tensor for a Newtonian fluid, where the shear stresses depend only on the gradient of velocity, is

$$\sigma_{ij} = -p \, \delta_{ij} + \eta (\nabla_i v_j + \nabla_j v_i).$$

Assuming the fluid is homogeneous, so that η is uniform, the resulting force density is

$$\sum_j \nabla_j \sigma_{ij} = -\nabla_i p + \eta \nabla^2 v_i.$$

The stress tensor can't contain terms directly dependent on the velocity by Galilean invariance.

- By comparison, for an elastic solid we assumed the shear stress was proportional to the strain; for a Newtonian fluid we instead assume it is proportional to the time derivative of strain, also called the strain rate. There are also fluids where the shear stress has a more complicated dependence on the velocity gradients, such as ketchup, jelly, and putty, and viscoelastic materials that are both elastic and viscous.

- Inserting the above force density into Cauchy's equation of motion gives

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{v} = \frac{\mathbf{f}}{\rho_0} - \frac{\nabla p}{\rho_0} + \nu \nabla^2 \mathbf{v}, \quad \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$$

which are the Navier–Stokes equations for incompressible isotropic homogeneous Newtonian fluids. The complex dynamics of such fluids result from the interplay of inertia, represented by the advective term $(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{v}$, and viscosity, represented by $\nu \nabla^2 \mathbf{v}$.

- These equations must be supplemented with appropriate boundary conditions. At the interface between two fluids, or a fluid and a solid, the normal component of velocity must clearly be continuous. More subtly, the tangential component of velocity must be continuous; it is initially is not, a boundary layer quickly forms to make it so. As argued earlier, $\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}}$ is also continuous.

- These facts can be combined to show that the pressure is continuous at a solid wall, which was not true for solids. Suppose this wall is at $z = 0$. At the origin, $\nabla_x \mathbf{v} = \nabla_y \mathbf{v} = 0$ since the velocity vanishes at the wall. By incompressibility, $\nabla_z v_z = 0$ at the wall as well, so the shear stress vanishes at the wall, and thus $\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}} = -p\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ is continuous, so p is.

- Taking the curl of this equation gives

$$\frac{\partial \boldsymbol{\omega}}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{v} \times \boldsymbol{\omega}) + \nu \nabla^2 \boldsymbol{\omega}$$

  which confirms that viscosity makes vorticity diffuse, as we saw in examples above.

- Suppose the velocity has a typical value u over an object with typical size L. Then we can quantify the ratio of the advective and viscous terms by the Reynolds number,

$$\mathrm{Re} \sim \frac{|(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{v}|}{|\nu \nabla^2 \mathbf{v}|} \sim \frac{u^2/L}{\nu u/L^2} \sim \frac{uL}{\nu}.$$

  There are several different qualitative regimes depending on the value of Re.

  - For $\mathrm{Re} \ll 1$, the flow is "creeping", and dominated by viscosity. Microorganisms live in this world. For an interesting description of it, see *Life at Low Reynolds Number*.
  - For $\mathrm{Re} \sim 1$, viscosity is still highly important; flies live in this world. In this regime, the fluid flow is still orderly and layered, which we call laminar.
  - For $\mathrm{Re} \gg 1$, turbulence sets in, with its accompanying erratic behavior. This regime is relevant for vehicles and human-sized objects in everyday life.

- Another way to highlight the importance of the Reynolds number is to nondimensionalize the Navier–Stokes equations. For steady flow with no external forces, it simplifies to

$$(\tilde{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \tilde{\nabla})\tilde{\mathbf{v}} = -\tilde{\nabla}\tilde{p} + \frac{1}{\mathrm{Re}}\tilde{\nabla}^2\tilde{\mathbf{v}}$$

  where we used the scales ρ_0, u, and L to define the dimensionless variables by

$$\mathbf{v} = U\tilde{\mathbf{v}}, \quad \mathbf{x} = L\tilde{\mathbf{x}}, \quad p = \rho_0 U^2 \tilde{p}, \quad \nabla = \frac{1}{L}\tilde{\nabla}.$$

  This means the aerodynamic properties of an aircraft can be simulated with a model in a wind tunnel if ρ_0 and u are scaled to keep the Reynolds number the same. For supersonic aircraft, compressibility is important, and we would also have to keep the Mach number the same.

Finally, we consider some of the complications of compressible flow.

- In this case, the stress can also depend on $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}$, and it is conventional to define

$$\sigma_{ij} = -p\,\delta_{ij} + \eta\left(\nabla_i v_j + \nabla_j v_i - \frac{2}{3}\delta_{ij}\,\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}\right) + \zeta\delta_{ij}\,\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}$$

  where ζ is called the bulk viscosity or expansion viscosity, in contrast to η which is called the shear viscosity. The point of this definition is that it makes the middle term traceless, so η does not affect the mechanical pressure.

- The resulting equations of motion are

$$\rho\left(\frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{v}\right) = \mathbf{f} - \nabla p + \eta\nabla^2\mathbf{v} + (\zeta + \eta/3)\nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}), \quad \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho\mathbf{v}) = 0$$

  where we again assumed a uniform η and ζ. These equations close for a barotropic fluid. In the case where $p = p(\rho, T)$, we would also need a differential heat equation to describe the evolution of T. The viscosities η and ζ could also depend on T.

- In this compressible case, velocity and $\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}}$ remain continuous at interfaces, but the pressure is no longer necessarily continuous. In addition, shock fronts may form. While our inclusion of viscosity allows us to describe shock fronts as continuous in principle, in practice they are often so thin that the continuum approximation breaks down. Thus, we must treat them as true discontinuities, and apply conservation laws across them.

- Borrowing from our earlier results for solids, the rate of work against internal stresses is

$$\dot{W} = \int_V \sum_{ij} \sigma_{ij} \nabla_j v_i \, dV = \int_V \left(-p \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} + 2\eta \sum_{ij} v_{ij}^2 + \zeta (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v})^2 \right) dV.$$

As expected, the viscous terms are always positive, since they dissipate energy.

Example. The viscous attenuation of sound. As in our earlier treatment of sound, we can linearize the equation of motion in the small parameters $\Delta p = c_0^2 \Delta \rho$. The result is

$$\rho_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t} = -\nabla(\Delta p) + \eta \nabla^2 \mathbf{v} + (\zeta + \eta/3) \nabla (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}), \quad \frac{\partial (\Delta \rho)}{\partial t} = -\rho_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}.$$

Combining these equations yields the damped wave equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 (\Delta \rho)}{\partial t^2} = c_0^2 \nabla^2 (\Delta \rho) + \frac{\zeta + \frac{4}{3}\eta}{\rho_0} \nabla^2 \frac{\partial (\Delta \rho)}{\partial t}.$$

For a sinusoidal wave $\Delta \rho = \rho_1 e^{-\kappa x} \cos(kx - \omega t)$, we thus have

$$\kappa = \frac{\omega^2}{2\omega_0 c_0}, \quad \omega_0 = \frac{\rho_0 c_0^2}{\zeta + \frac{4}{3}\eta}.$$

In particular, higher frequency sound waves propagate a shorter distance before decaying. In practice, there is also attenuation from heat conduction.

Example. Flow past a sphere, as a function of Re, shows many qualitatively different behaviors. For Re $\lesssim 1$, we have a "creeping" flow that is superficially similar to potential flow; like potential flow, it can be solved for analytically. At Re ~ 10, a steady circulation forms behind the sphere. At Re ~ 100, this circulation periodically detaches from the sphere, forming a "Karman vortex street". (Physically, we can think of Re as describing the rate at which vorticity is created at the surface of the sphere. The vortices separate when this production is too fast to be simply diffused away.) At Re $\sim 10^4$, the flow because chaotic, with a turbulent wake formed behind the sphere. At Re $\sim 10^5$, a "drag crisis" occurs where the coefficient of drag suddenly drops and the turbulent flow reattaches to the sphere.

5   Fundamentals of Quantum Mechanics

5.1   Physical Postulates

We postulate the state of a system at a given time is given by a ray in a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$.

- A Hilbert space is a complex vector space with a positive-definite sesquilinear form $\langle\alpha|\beta\rangle$. Elements of $\mathcal{H}$ are called kets, while elements of the dual space $\mathcal{H}^*$ are called bras. Using the form, we can canonically identify $|\alpha\rangle$ with the bra $\langle\alpha|$, analogously to raising and lowering indices. This is an antilinear map, $c|\alpha\rangle \leftrightarrow \bar{c}\langle\alpha|$, since the form is sesquilinear.

- A ray is a nonzero ket up to the equivalence relation $|\psi\rangle \sim c|\psi\rangle$ for any nonzero complex number c, indicating that global phases in quantum mechanics at not important.

- Hilbert spaces are also complete, i.e. every Cauchy sequence of kets converges in $\mathcal{H}$.

- A Hilbert space V is separable if it has a countable subset D so that $\overline{D} = V$, which turns out to be equivalent to having a countable orthonormal basis. Hilbert spaces that aren't separable are mathematically problematic, so we'll usually assume this separability.

- If $\{|\phi_i\rangle\}$ is an orthonormal basis, then we have the completeness relation

$$\sum_i |\phi_i\rangle\langle\phi_i| = 1.$$

  We also have the Schwartz equality,

$$\langle\alpha|\alpha\rangle\langle\beta|\beta\rangle \geq |\langle\alpha|\beta\rangle|^2.$$

  The trick to the proof is to use $\langle\gamma|\gamma\rangle \geq 0$ for $|\gamma\rangle = |\alpha\rangle + \lambda|\beta\rangle$, with $\lambda = -\langle\beta|\alpha\rangle/\langle\beta|\beta\rangle$.

Example. Finite-dimensional Hilbert spaces are all complete and separable. We will mostly deal with countably infinite-dimensional Hilbert spaces, like the QHO basis $|n\rangle$. Such spaces are separable, though uncountably infinite-dimensional spaces are not.

Example. Not all countably infinite-dimensional spaces are complete: consider the space V of infinite vectors with a finite number of nonzero entries. Then the sequence

$$(1, 0, \ldots), (1, 1/2, 0, \ldots), (1, 1/2, 1/3, 0, \ldots), \ldots$$

is Cauchy but does not converge in V.

Next, we consider operators on the Hilbert space.

- Given an operator $A\colon V \to W$, we may define the pullback operator $A^*\colon W^* \to V^*$ by

$$A^*(\langle\beta|)|\alpha\rangle = \langle\beta|(A|\alpha\rangle).$$

  Since we can always construct the pullback (which does not even require an inner product), it is convenient to use a notation where both side above are represented in the same way. In Dirac notation, both sides are written as $\langle\beta|A|\alpha\rangle$, where the leftward action of A on bras is just that of A^* above.

- For $V = W$, we define the Hermitian adjoint $A^\dagger$ of A by

$$A^\dagger |\alpha\rangle \leftrightarrow \langle\alpha| A$$

  where the $\leftrightarrow$ means the bra/ket correspondence from the inner product. Writing the bra associated with $A|\alpha\rangle = |A\alpha\rangle$ as $\langle A\alpha|$, the above condition says $\langle A^\dagger\alpha| = \langle\alpha|A$.

- Here, Dirac notation is a bit awkward. In standard linear algebra notation, we can make the inner products more explicit. Writing $\langle\beta|\alpha\rangle = (\beta, \alpha)$, the definition of $A^\dagger$ is

$$(A^\dagger\beta, \alpha) = (\beta, A\alpha).$$

  Note that this can formally be applied to any map $A\colon V \to V$, but for linear operators, there always exists a unique $A^\dagger$ satisfying the above condition.

- The simplest equivalent way to define the adjoint in Dirac notation is by

$$(\langle\beta|A|\alpha\rangle)^* = \langle\alpha|A^\dagger|\beta\rangle.$$

  Since the adjoint of a number is its complex conjugate, this suggests how to take the adjoint of a general expression: conjugate all numbers, flip bras and kets, and take adjoints of operators.

- We say A is Hermitian if $A = A^\dagger$, plus certain technical conditions which we'll tacitly ignore. Observables are Hermitian operators on $\mathcal{H}$.

- We say A is an isometry if $A^\dagger A = 1$, so that A preserves inner products, and A is unitary if it is an invertible isometry, $A^\dagger = A^{-1}$, which implies $AA^\dagger = 1$ as well. Note that not all isometries are unitary: if $|n\rangle$ is an orthonormal basis with $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, the shift operator $A|n\rangle = |n+1\rangle$ is an isometry, but $AA^\dagger \neq 1$.

- Operators can be written in Dirac notation as well. For example, given two kets $|\alpha\rangle$ and $|\beta\rangle$, we can define an operator $|\beta\rangle\langle\alpha|$. In ordinary notation, this operator T would be defined by

$$T(\alpha, \beta)(\gamma) = \beta(\alpha, \gamma).$$

  This might be clear to a mathematician, but doing anything nontrivial will quickly create huge piles of nested parentheses, a notational nightmare that Dirac notation is designed to avoid. Dirac notation also makes it obvious that the adjoint is $|\alpha\rangle\langle\beta|$.

- The spectral theorem states that if $A = A^\dagger$, then all eigenvalues of A are real, and all eigenspaces with distinct a_i are orthogonal. If the space is separable, every eigenspace has finite dimension, so we can construct an orthonormal eigenbasis by Gram-Schmidt.

- An operator A is a projection if $A^2 = A$. For example, $A = |\alpha\rangle\langle\alpha|$ is a projection if $\langle\alpha|\alpha\rangle = 1$.

- A basis $|\phi_i\rangle$ is complete if $\sum_i |\phi_i\rangle\langle\phi_i| = 1$. The sum of projections is the identity.

- Given a complete orthonormal basis, we can decompose operators and vectors into matrix elements. For example,

$$A = \sum_{i,j} |\phi_i\rangle\langle\phi_i|A|\phi_j\rangle\langle\phi_j| \sim \begin{pmatrix} \langle\phi_1|A|\phi_1\rangle & \langle\phi_1|A|\phi_2\rangle & \dots \\ \langle\phi_2|A|\phi_1\rangle & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots \end{pmatrix}.$$

  In this matrix notation, $A^\dagger$ is the conjugate transpose of A.

- If we consider infinite-dimensional spaces, not all Hermitian operators have a complete eigenbasis. Let $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{L}^2([0,1])$ and let $A = \hat{x}$. Then A has *no* eigenvectors in $\mathcal{H}$. This is worrying, because we physically prefer observables with a complete eigenbasis.

- We say A is bounded if

$$\sup_{|\alpha\rangle \in \mathcal{H}/\{|0\rangle\}} \frac{\langle \alpha | A | \alpha \rangle}{\langle \alpha | \alpha \rangle} < \infty.$$

  We say A is compact if every bounded sequence $\{|\alpha_n\rangle\}$ (with $\langle \alpha_n | \alpha_n \rangle < \beta$ for some fixed β) has a subsequence $\{|\alpha_{n_k}\rangle\}$ so that $\{A|\alpha_{n_k}\rangle\}$ is norm-convergent in $\mathcal{H}$.

- One can show that if A is compact, A is bounded. Compactness is sufficient for a Hermitian operator to be complete, but boundedness is neither necessary not sufficient. However, we will still consider observables that are neither bounded nor compact, when it turns out to be useful.

- If $|a_i\rangle$ and $|b_i\rangle$ are two complete orthonormal bases, then U defined by $U|a_i\rangle = |b_i\rangle$ is unitary. This yields the change of basis formula,

$$X = X_{ij}|a_i\rangle\langle a_j| = Y_{kl}|b_k\rangle\langle b_l|, \quad X_{ij} = U_{ik}Y_{kl}U_{lj}^{\dagger}.$$

- Using the above formula, a finite-dimensional Hermitian matrix can always be diagonalized by a unitary, i.e. a matrix that changes basis to an orthonormal eigenbasis.

- If A and B are diagonalizable, they are simultaneously diagonalizable iff $[A, B] = 0$, in which case we say A and B are compatible. The forward direction is easy. For the converse, let $A|\alpha_i\rangle = a_i|\alpha_i\rangle$. Then $AB|\alpha_i\rangle = a_iB|\alpha_i\rangle$ so B preserves A's eigenspaces. Therefore when A is diagonalized, B is block diagonal, and we can make B diagonal by diagonalizing within each eigenspace of A.

We gather here for later reference a few useful commutator identities.

- The Hadamard lemma states that for operators A and B, we have

$$e^A B e^{-A} = B + [A, B] + \frac{1}{2!}[A, [A, B]] + \frac{1}{3!}[A, [A, [A, B]]] + \cdots.$$

  Intuitively, this is simply the adjoint action of A on B, which infinitesimally is the commutator $[A, B]$. Therefore the operation of e^A on B must be the exponential of the commutator operation. Defining $\mathrm{ad}_A(B) = [A, B]$, this means

$$e^A B e^{-A} = e^{\mathrm{ad}_A} B$$

  which is exactly the desired identity.

- The more straightforward way of proving this is to define

$$F(\lambda) = e^{\lambda A} B e^{-\lambda A}$$

  and finding a differential equation for F; this is the same idea in different notation.

- Glauber's theorem states that if $[A, B]$ commutes with both A and B, then

$$e^A e^B = \exp\left(A + B + \frac{1}{2}[A, B]\right).$$

  To see this, define

$$F(\lambda) = e^{\lambda A} e^{\lambda B}, \quad F'(\lambda) = (A + e^{\lambda A} B e^{-\lambda A}) F(\lambda).$$

  However, using the previous theorem, we have

$$F'(\lambda) = (A + B + \lambda[A, B]) F(\lambda).$$

  We therefore guess the solution

$$F(\lambda) = \exp\left(\lambda(A + B) + \frac{\lambda^2}{2}[A, B]\right)$$

  This solution satisfies the differential equation as long as the argument of the exponential commutes with its derivative, which we can quickly verify. Setting $\lambda = 1$ gives the result.

- A special case of Glauber's theorem is that if $[A, B] = cI$, then

$$e^{A+B} = e^B e^A e^{c/2} = e^A e^B e^{-c/2}.$$

  This tells us how to multiply things that "almost commute".

- In the case of general $[A, B]$, $e^A e^B$ can still be expressed as a single exponential in a more complicated way, using the full Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff theorem, which subsumes Glauber's theorem as a special case.

- Note that the exponential of an operator A can be defined in two ways: through the series $\sum_n A^n/n!$, or, if A has a complete eigenbasis, through the spectral decomposition. That is, if the eigenvalues of A are λ_i, then e^A has the same eigenvectors but with eigenvalues e^{λ_i}. Our proofs above are agnostic to the definition used, but the series definition can fail to converge even in simple situations; the spectral decomposition is more reliable for Hermitian operators.

We are now ready to state the postulates of quantum mechanics.

1. The state of a system at time t is given by a ray in a Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}$. By convention, we normalize states to unit norm.

2. Observable quantities correspond to Hermitian operators whose eigenstates are complete. These quantities may be measured in experiments.

3. A observable H called the Hamiltonian defines time evolution by

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} |\psi(t)\rangle = H |\psi(t)\rangle.$$

4. If an observable A is measured when the system is in a state $|\alpha\rangle$, where A has an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors $|\alpha_i\rangle$ with eigenvalues a_i, the probability of observing $A = a$ is

$$\sum_{a_j = a} |\langle a_j | \alpha \rangle|^2 = \langle \alpha | P_a | \alpha \rangle, \quad P_a = \sum_{a_j = a} |a_j\rangle\langle a_j|.$$

   After this occurs, the (unnormalized) state of the system is $P_a |\alpha\rangle$.

5. If two individual systems have Hilbert spaces $\mathcal{H}^{(i)}$ with orthonormal bases $|\phi_n^{(i)}\rangle$, then the composite system describing both of them has Hilbert space $\mathcal{H}^{(1)} \otimes \mathcal{H}^{(2)}$, with orthonormal basis $|\phi_{ij}\rangle = |\phi_i^{(1)}\rangle \otimes |\phi_j^{(2)}\rangle$. An operator A on $\mathcal{H}^{(1)}$ is promoted to $A \otimes I$, and so on.

The fourth postulate implies the state of a system can change in an irreversible, discontinuous way. There are other formalisms that do not have this feature, though we'll take it as truth here.

Example. Spin 1/2. The Hilbert space is two-dimensional, and the operators that measure spin about each axis are

$$S_i = \frac{\hbar}{2}\sigma_i, \quad \sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \sigma_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

For a general axis $\hat{n}$, the operator $\vec{S} \cdot \hat{n}$ has eigenvalues $\pm\hbar/2$, and measures spin along the $\hat{n}$ direction. The commutation relations are

$$[S_i, S_j] = i\hbar\epsilon_{ijk}S_k, \quad \{S_i, S_j\} = \frac{1}{2}\hbar^2\partial_{ij}, \quad S^2 = \frac{3\hbar^2}{4}$$

so that S^2 commutes with S_i.

Example. The uncertainty principle. For an observable A and state $|\alpha\rangle$, define $\Delta A = A - \langle A\rangle$. Then the variance of A is

$$\langle \Delta A^2\rangle = \langle A^2\rangle - \langle A\rangle^2.$$

Now note that for observables A and B,

$$\langle\alpha|\Delta A^2|\alpha\rangle\langle\alpha|\Delta B^2|\alpha\rangle \geq |\langle\alpha|\Delta A \Delta B|\alpha\rangle|^2$$

by the Schwartz inequality. Note that we can write

$$\Delta A \Delta B = \frac{1}{2}\left([\Delta A, \Delta B], \{\Delta A, \Delta B\}\right).$$

These two terms are skew-Hermitian and Hermitian, so their expectation values are imaginary and real, respectively. Then we have

$$\langle\Delta A^2\rangle\langle\Delta B^2\rangle \geq \frac{1}{4}\left(|\langle[A, B]\rangle|^2 + |\langle\{\Delta A, \Delta B\}\rangle|^2\right).$$

Ignoring the second term gives

$$\sigma_A\sigma_B \geq \frac{1}{2}|\langle[A, B]\rangle|$$

where σ_X is the standard deviation. This is the uncertainty principle.

5.2   Wave Mechanics

We now review position and momentum operators for particles on a line.

- The state of a particle on a line is an element of the Hilbert space $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{L}^2(\mathbb{R})$, the set of square integrable functions on $\mathbb{R}$. This space is separable, and hence has a countable basis.

- Typical observables in this space include the projections,

$$(P_{[a,b]}f)(x) = f(x) \text{ for } a \leq x \leq b, 0 \text{ otherwise.}$$

  However, this approach is physically inconvenient because most operators of interest (e.g. $\hat{x}$, $\hat{p} = -i\hbar\partial_x$) cannot be diagonalized in $\mathcal{H}$, as their eigenfunctions would not be normalizable.

- We will treat all of these operators as acceptable, and formally include their eigenvectors, even if they are not in $\mathcal{H}$. This severely enlarges the space under consideration, because x and p have uncountable eigenbases while the original space had a countable basis. Physically, this is not be a problem because all physical measurements of x are "smeared out" and not infinitely precise. Thus the observables we actually measure do live in $\mathcal{H}$, and x is just a convenient formal tool.

- To begin, let $|x\rangle$ with $x \in \mathbb{R}$ be a complete orthonormal eigenbasis for x, with

$$\hat{x}|x\rangle = x|x\rangle, \quad \langle x'|x\rangle = \delta(x'-x), \quad \int dx\,|x\rangle\langle x| = 1.$$

  Using completeness,

$$|\psi\rangle = \int dx\,|x\rangle\langle x|\psi\rangle = \int dx\,\psi(x)|x\rangle.$$

  The quantity $\psi(x) = \langle x|\psi\rangle$ is called the wavefunction.

- In many cases, a quantum theory can be obtained by "canonical quantization", replacing Poisson brackets of classical observables with commutators of quantum operators, times a factor of $i\hbar$. When applied to position and momentum, this gives $[\hat{x}, \hat{p}] = i\hbar$.

- Note that for a finite-dimensional Hilbert space, the trace of the left-hand side vanishes by the cyclic property of the trace, while the trace of the right-hand side doesn't. The cyclic property doesn't hold in infinite-dimensional Hilbert spaces, which are hence required to describe position and momentum. Heuristically this is because $\text{tr}(\hat{x}\hat{p})$ and $\text{tr}(\hat{p}\hat{x})$ are both infinite, so subtracting them isn't meaningful.

- If $\hat{x}$ is realized by multiplying a wavefunction by x, then the Stone–von Neumann theorem states that $\hat{p}$ is uniquely specified by the commutation relation, up to isomorphisms, as

$$\hat{p} = -i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial x}.$$

- Now let $|p\rangle$ be an orthonormal basis for $\hat{p}$,

$$\hat{p}|p\rangle = p|p\rangle.$$

  Hence we may define a momentum space wavefunction, and the commutation relation immediately yields the Heisenberg uncertainty principle $\sigma_x\sigma_p \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}$.

- We can relate the $|x\rangle$ and $|p\rangle$ bases by noting that

$$-i\hbar\partial_x\langle x|p\rangle = p\langle x|p\rangle, \quad \langle x|p\rangle = Ne^{ipx/\hbar}.$$

  Here, we acted with p to the left on $\langle x|$. To normalize, note that

$$\langle p|p'\rangle = \int dx\,\langle p|x\rangle\langle x|p'\rangle = |N|^2\int dx\,e^{ix(p'-p)/\hbar} = |N|^2(2\pi\hbar)\delta(p-p').$$

Therefore, we conclude

$$\langle x|p\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}e^{ipx/\hbar}$$

where we set an arbitrary phase to one.

- Formally, states like $|x\rangle$ and $|p\rangle$ live in a "rigged Hilbert space". Such a space consists of a genuine Hilbert space, and a set of vectors that don't have well-defined inner products with each other, but do have them with all elements of the genuine Hilbert space. In other words, the mathematical formalism is simply defined so that the heuristic rules we've been using work.

Example. The momentum basis is complete if the position basis is. Insert the identity twice for

$$\int dp\,|p\rangle\langle p| = \int dxdx'dp\,|x\rangle\langle x|p\rangle\langle p|x'\rangle\langle x'| = \int dxdx'dp\,|x\rangle\frac{e^{ip(x'-x)/\hbar}}{2\pi\hbar}\langle x'| = \int dx\,|x\rangle\langle x|.$$

Then if one side is the identity, so is the other.

Example. The momentum-space wavefunction $\phi(p) = \langle p|\psi\rangle$ is related to $\psi(x)$ by Fourier transform,

$$\phi(p) = \int dx\,\langle p|x\rangle\langle x|\psi\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\int dx\,e^{-ipx/\hbar}\psi(x), \quad \psi(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}}\int dp\,e^{ipx/\hbar}\phi(p).$$

This is the main place where conventions may differ. The original factor of 2π comes from the representation of the delta function

$$\delta(x) = \int d\xi\,e^{2\pi ix\xi}.$$

When defining the momentum eigenstates, we have freedom in choosing the scale of p, which can change the $\langle x'|p'\rangle$ expression above. This allows us to move the 2π factor around. In field theory texts, we prefer define momentum integrals to have a differential of the form $d^k p/(2\pi)^k$.

Note. In general, there is no recipe that determines quantum theories from classical ones, and we shouldn't expect any such recipe to exist, because quantum mechanics contains more information than classical mechanics. Physically distinct quantum systems can have exactly the same classical limit. For example, consider applying canonical quantization to a Hamiltonian containing q^2p^2. Classically, q^2p^2 and p^2q^2 are the same phase space function, but their quantum analogues differ,

$$\hat{q}^2\hat{p}^2 - \hat{p}^2\hat{q}^2 = \hat{q}[\hat{q},\hat{p}^2] + [\hat{q},\hat{p}^2]\hat{q} = 2i\hbar(\hat{q}\hat{p} + \hat{p}\hat{q})$$

where we've used the commutator identity $[A, BC] = B[A, C] + [A, B]C$. There are many distinct "ordering prescriptions". One particularly nice one is Weyl ordering, discussed further in the notes on Optics, which essentially symmetrizes the ordering of q and p.

But even if you fix an ordering prescription, it's still impossible to canonically quantize all Hamiltonians in a "nice" way. Specifically, we want to have a linear quantization map Q from phase space functions f to self-adjoint operators, so that Poisson brackets map to commutators,

$$Q(\{f, g\}) = \frac{1}{i\hbar}[Q(f), Q(g)],$$

the constant function maps to the identity, $Q(1) = I$, and powers map to powers, $Q(f^n) = Q(f)^n$. The Groenewold–van Hove theorem shows this is impossible, through a concrete counterexample for a particle in one dimension. Classically, the Poisson bracket expression

$$\{q^3, p^3\} + \frac{1}{12}\{\{p^2, q^3\}, \{q^2, p^3\}\}$$

vanishes, as can easily be shown starting from the identity $\{q^n, p^m\} = nmq^{n-1}p^{m-1}$. However, the canonically quantized analogue of this quantity does not vanish,

$$\frac{1}{i\hbar}[\hat{q}^3, \hat{p}^3] + \frac{1}{12(i\hbar)^2}[[\hat{p}^2, \hat{q}^3], [\hat{q}^2, \hat{p}^3]] = -3\hbar^2$$

as can be shown through an exhausting brute force calculation.

Therefore, we can only quantize all Hamiltonians if we're willing to drop some of the conditions above. One method is deformation quantization, where we replace the product of phase space functions with a noncommutative "star product", replicating the noncommutativity of quantum operators. We can then define an analogue of the Poisson bracket, called the Moyal bracket, and apply canonical quantization to Moyal brackets instead. Geometric quantization is a more mathematically complex method which first produces a "prequantization" on a Hilbert space which is much larger than desired, then reduces to the desired Hilbert space by choosing a "polarization".

In practice, this is largely irrelevant to physics. The quantization problems demonstrated in the above counterexample only show up at cubic order in p and q, but terms like $p^3 q^3$ are quite rare and unnatural in Hamiltonian mechanics; in these notes we won't run into them. However, as we've seen above, operator ordering ambiguities can make a difference, and they do in practical physical situations. Such ambiguities are usually handled by taking a limit of a more general theory, where they don't appear. For example, the fine structure corrections for the hydrogen atom contain a "Darwin term" proportional to $\nabla^2 V(r)$, corresponding to a somewhat complicated ordering of $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{r}$. That would be a problem if the Darwin term was motivated by classical arguments, but it's not: instead, it arises from taking the nonrelativistic limit of the Dirac equation. The operator ordering in the Dirac equation is simple and known, and it tells us the physically correct ordering for the Darwin term.

In turn, the Dirac equation can be derived by taking a limit of a relativistic quantum field theory, where the above puzzles play little role, because the canonical momenta of the fields are never used. Instead, a distinct problem appears: some operators have to be "normal ordered" to avoid ultraviolet divergences, as discussed at length in the notes on Quantum Field Theory.

We now cover some facts about one-dimensional wave mechanics.

- The time-independent Schrodinger equation is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\psi'' + V\psi = E\psi.$$

  Consider two degenerate solutions ψ and ϕ. Then combining the equations gives

$$\phi\psi'' - \psi\phi'' = 0 = \frac{dW}{dx}$$

  where W is the Wronskian of the solutions,

$$W = \phi\psi' - \psi\phi' = \det\begin{pmatrix} \phi & \psi \\ \phi' & \psi' \end{pmatrix}.$$

  In general, the Wronskian determines the independence of a set of solutions of a differential equation; if it is zero the solutions are linearly dependent.

- In this case, if both ψ and ϕ vanish at some point, then $W = 0$ so the solutions are simply multiples of each other. In particular, bound state wavefunctions vanish at infinity, so bound states are not degenerate. Unbound states can be two-fold degenerate, such as $e^{\pm ikx}$ for the free particle.

- Since the Schrodinger equation is real, if ψ is a solution with energy E, then ψ^* is a solution with energy E. If the solution ψ is not degenerate, then we must have $\psi = c\psi^*$, which means ψ is real up to a constant phase. Hence bound state wavefunctions can be chosen real. It turns out nonbound state wavefunctions can also be chosen real. (This argument is really just using time reversal symmetry in disguise, since we are conjugating the wavefunction.)

- For bound states, the bound state with the nth lowest energy has $n - 1$ nodes. To justify this, suppose that one was trying to numerically find a bound state wavefunction of energy E. Then we could use the following "shooting" algorithm.

    1. Pick an energy E and start at some point x_- far to the left.

    2. Set $\psi(x_-)$ to an arbitrary real value, and fix $\psi'(x_-)$ so that the wavefunction doesn't blow up when we integrate to $x \to -\infty$.

    3. Integrate the Schrodinger equation through the potential, all the way to $x \to \infty$.

    For a general value of E, this will give a wavefunction that blows up, to positive or negative infinity, at $x \to \infty$. As E is increased, the blowup alternates between going to positive or negative infinity. Every time this happens, we find a bound state, and simultaneously the number of nodes goes up by one.

- The hole in the above argument is that, as the energy is adjusted, nodes could also appear in pairs at intermediate x. For example, why can't $\psi(x)$ locally look like $x^2 - a$, thus producing two nodes at once when a passes zero? The reason this can't happen is that when $a = 0$, we have a solution that locally has $\psi'' \neq 0$ at a point where $\psi = 0$. This is possible for a general differential equation, but not for the Schrodinger equation.

- We can also use the Wronskian to show that the number of nodes increases with energy. Let ψ_n and ψ_m be two real, normalized bound state wavefunctions, with energies $E_n > E_m$. Their Wronskian $W = \psi'_m \psi_n - \psi_m \psi'_n$ satisfies

$$\frac{dW}{dx} = \frac{2m}{\hbar^2}(E_n - E_m)\psi_m \psi_n.$$

Let ψ_m have adjacent nodes at x_1 and x_2. Integrating from x_1 to x_2 gives

$$\psi'_m(x_2)\psi_n(x_2) - \psi'_m(x_1)\psi_n(x_1) = \frac{2m}{\hbar^2}(E_n - E_m)\int_{x_1}^{x_2} \psi_m \psi_n \, dx.$$

If $\psi_n(x)$ had no nodes between x_1 and x_2, then the two sides would have to have opposite signs. Thus, $\psi_n(x)$ has a node between every pair of adjacent nodes of $\psi_m(x)$. Since we can also set $x_1 = -\infty$ or $x_2 = \infty$, this shows that $\psi_n(x)$ has at least one more node than $\psi_m(x)$, and furthermore that they interleave.

Example. Consider a "double well" potential with two identical, but very widely separated dips. It seems like this is an example where bound states can be degenerate. For instance, the states ψ_i

which peak in the ith well, with no nodes, and are nearly zero at the other well, seem like degenerate ground states. However, in reality the ψ_i are not stationary states at all, because the particle can quantum tunnel between the wells with an exponentially small rate calculable with the WKB approximation, as explained in the notes on Quantum Field Theory. The true ground state is the symmetric combination $\psi_1 + \psi_2$, since it has no nodes. The first excited state is $\psi_1 - \psi_2$, which is higher in energy by an tiny amount.

Example. Suppose a particle is in an attractive, short-ranged potential $gV(x)$. What happens to the bound state energies as the potential gets very weak, $g \to 0$? In general, as an attractive potential gets weaker, the number of bound states decreases, but one bound state always remains, as we will prove later with the variational principle.

Now let's suppose we only have one bound state left, of energy $-E_0$. What is confusing here is that E_0 and gV should both decrease as $g \to 0$, so what could it mean for the potential to be weak? To understand this, note that when the potential is strong, it dominates the Schrodinger equation. The bound state wavefunctions have to follow the potential's wiggles in detail, oscillating rapidly when it goes above E_0, and growing or shrinking rapidly when it goes below E_0. Therefore, the opposite limit $g \to 0$ means the wavefunction changes slowly over the range of the potential, which means the potential can be approximated as a delta function,

$$gV(x) \to g\delta(x) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} V(x)\,dx = g'\delta(x).$$

To say this another way, the potential is short ranged for our purposes precisely when this integral exists. Solving the Schrodinger equation for a delta function is straightforward. We must have exponentials decaying away on both sides,

$$\psi(x) \propto \begin{cases} e^{\sqrt{2mE}\,x/\hbar} & x < 0 \\ e^{-\sqrt{2mE}\,x/\hbar} & x > 0 \end{cases}.$$

The delta function produces a change of slope at the origin, $g'\psi(0) = (\hbar^2/2m)\Delta\psi'(0)$, which gives

$$E_0 = \frac{g^2 m}{2\hbar^2}\left(\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} V(x)\,dx\right)^2.$$

Note. The probability density and current are

$$\rho = |\psi|^2, \quad \mathbf{J} = \frac{1}{2}(\psi^* \mathbf{v}\psi + \psi \mathbf{v}\psi^*) = \text{Re}(\psi^* \mathbf{v}\psi)$$

where the velocity operator is defined in general by Hamilton's equations,

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{\partial H}{\partial \mathbf{p}}.$$

In simple cases where the kinetic term is $p^2/2m$, this implies

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{\mathbf{p}}{m} = -\frac{i\hbar}{m}\nabla.$$

The probability density and current satisfy the continuity equation

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{J} = 0.$$

In particular, note that for an energy eigenfunction, $\mathbf{J} = 0$ identically since it can be chosen real. Also note that with a magnetic field, we would have $\mathbf{v} = (\mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A})/m$ instead.

However, physically interpreting ρ and $\mathbf{J}$ is subtle. For example, consider multiplying by the particle charge q, so we have formal charge densities and currents. It is not true that a particle sources an electromagnetic field with charge density $e\rho$ and current density $e\mathbf{J}$. The electric field of a particle at $\mathbf{x}$ is

$$\mathbf{E_x}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{q(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{x})}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{x}|^3}.$$

Hence a perfect measurement of $\mathbf{E}$ is a measurement of the particle position $\mathbf{x}$. Thus for the hydrogen atom, we would not measure an exponentially small electric field at large distances, but a dipole field! The state of the system is not $|\psi\rangle \otimes \mathbf{E}_\rho$, but rather an entangled state like

$$\int d\mathbf{x} \, |\mathbf{x}\rangle \otimes |\mathbf{E_x}\rangle$$

where we consider only the electrostatic field. To avoid these errors, it's better to think of the wavefunction as describing an ensemble of particles, rather than a single "spread out" particle. (However, note that if the measurement takes longer than the characteristic orbit time of the electron, then we will only see the averaged field due to $q\mathbf{J}$.)

We now consider identities for expectation values, generally referred to as Ehrenfest relations.

- As we'll see in more detail later, in Heisenberg picture the operators evolve according to the Heisenberg equation of motion,

$$i\hbar \frac{dA}{dt} = [A, H(t)] + i\hbar \frac{\partial A}{\partial t}$$

  where $\partial A/\partial t$ describes the change of the operator in Schrodinger picture. This is the easiest way to link our quantum results to classical mechanics, since it looks like Hamilton's equations.

- Upon taking the expectation value of both sides, we get a result that is independent of picture,

$$\frac{d}{dt}\langle A \rangle = \frac{i}{\hbar}\langle [H(t), A] \rangle + \left\langle \frac{\partial A}{\partial t} \right\rangle.$$

  For example, suppose that A is a constant operator which describes a symmetry of the system, $[A, H(t)] = 0$. Then its expectation value is constant. In the classical limit, the distribution of A can generally be chosen sharply peaked, turning this expectation value into a definite classical value, and recovering the classical notion of a conservation law.

- In general, a relation between quantum expectation values that parallels a classical result is called an Ehrenfest relation. For example, for a single particle with Hamiltonian $p^2/2m + V(x)$, we have Heisenberg equations of motion

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = -\frac{i}{\hbar}[\mathbf{x}, H] = \frac{\mathbf{p}}{m}, \quad \dot{\mathbf{p}} = -\frac{i}{\hbar}[\mathbf{p}, H].$$

  Taking the expectation values gives the Ehrenfest relations

$$\frac{d\langle \mathbf{x} \rangle}{dt} = \frac{\langle \mathbf{p} \rangle}{m}, \quad \frac{d\langle \mathbf{p} \rangle}{dt} = -\langle \nabla V \rangle, \quad m\frac{d^2\langle \mathbf{x} \rangle}{dt^2} = -\langle \nabla V \rangle$$

  which holds exactly.

- When the particle is well-localized, we can replace $\langle \nabla V \rangle$ with $\nabla V(\langle \mathbf{x} \rangle, t)$, which implies that $\langle \mathbf{x} \rangle$ obeys the classical equations of motion. In fact, this result holds more generally than just in the classical limit. Replacing $\langle \nabla V \rangle$ with $\nabla V(\langle \mathbf{x} \rangle, t)$ is *exact* when ∇V is at most linear in $\mathbf{x}$, and thus exact when V is at most quadratic in $\mathbf{x}$.

- Thus, $\langle \mathbf{x} \rangle$ satisfies the classical equations of motion for a particle in a harmonic potential or gravitational field, a charged particle in a uniform electric field, and a neutral particle with a magnetic moment in a linearly changing magnetic field (as in the Stern–Gerlach experiment) It remains true when the Hamiltonian is at most quadratic in $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{x}$ jointly, which means it also holds for a charged particle in a uniform magnetic field.

- Setting $A = xp$ for a particle in potential $V(x)$ and kinetic energy $T = p^2/2m$ gives

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle xp \rangle = 2 \langle T \rangle - \langle \mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla V \rangle.$$

  In a stationary state, the left-hand side vanishes, giving the quantum virial theorem.

- For a power law potential, $V(x) \propto r^n$, this reduces to

$$\langle T \rangle = \frac{n}{2} \langle V \rangle.$$

  This gives reasonable and classically expected results for the harmonic oscillator, where $n = 2$, and the Coulomb potential, where $n = -1$.

Note. Just as in classical mechanics, applying the virial theorem comes with pitfalls, because we need to make sure we're in an appropriate stationary state. For instance, for a repulsive Coulomb potential we find the nonsensical result that $\langle T \rangle$ and $\langle V \rangle$ have opposite sign, even though the potential is everywhere positive. This is because that potential has no bound states, and for the unbound states $\langle xp \rangle$ is not even defined. Another example is the attractive Coulomb potential in one spatial dimension. Here, there is no angular momentum barrier, which means the particle can fall "all the way in", to infinite negative potential energy, making the expectation values singular. The potential well has to be regularized in an appropriate way, which then renders the virial theorem inapplicable. The precise nature of the bound states seems to depend sensitively on the way the regularization is performed, leading to continued controversy in the literature, where this system is called the "one-dimensional hydrogen atom".

For the potential $-a/x^2$ potential in one dimension, the virial theorem gives $\langle T \rangle + \langle V \rangle = 0$, which seems to suggest there are no bound states. However, for sufficiently large a, solutions to the time-independent Schrodinger equation with negative total energy do exist; it's just that they behave too wildly as $x \to 0$, causing $\langle xp \rangle$ to not be defined. But as described in detail here, there are far deeper pathologies at play: in such a potential, the Schrodinger equation has no parameters with dimensions of length, or energy! This symmetry implies there is a continuous infinity of states with negative energy, related to each other by scaling, and reaching arbitrarily low total energy. There is no ground state, and each of these bound states has an infinite number of nodes.

This pathology occurs in any dimension, as long as the potential is strong enough, because for dimension $d > 1$ the angular momentum barrier is also proportional to $1/r^2$, and adding it thus only shifts the coefficient a. As with the Coulomb potential in one dimension, the potential must be regularized to get reasonable results. Any regulator breaks the scaling symmetry and thus sets a scale for the ground state energy (which is completely normal, with no nodes), providing a

simple example of an anomaly. Once the regularization is in place, we can compute observables without problems. For instance, though we can't predict the ground state energy, we can derive a relationship between the ground state energy and the scattering phase shift, providing a simple example of renormalization.

Example. An example of a Gaussian wavepacket is

$$\psi(x,t) = \left(\frac{2a}{\pi}\right)^{1/4} \frac{e^{-ax^2/(1+2i\hbar at/m)}}{\sqrt{1+2i\hbar at/m}}$$

which obeys the Schrodinger equation for a free particle. As expected by Ehrenfest's relations, $\langle x \rangle$ is constant. Since there is no potential, we can think of this wavepacket as a superposition of momentum states propagating completely independently. The momentum uncertainty is constant, but the position uncertainty reaches a minimum at $t = 0$ as the plane wave components line up, and the wavepacket then spreads out in both the future and the past. The spread is alarmingly fast: for large t we have spread $\Delta x \sim (\hbar t/m)\sqrt{a}$, which means that for an electron with $a = (1\,\text{nm})^{-2}$ after one second, $\Delta x \sim 100\,\text{km}$! The reason we don't see such macroscopic superpositions is because they are unstable to decoherence, as covered in the notes on Optics.

As an followup question, one can ask how the variance of a wavepacket with Gaussian position distribution can evolve over time. The variance above grows for $t > 0$, but one can also easily construct a wavepacket whose variance begins to shrink; on the other hand, there is a limit to how far it can shrink because of the uncertainty principle. The easiest way to address this question in general is in Heisenberg picture, where the operators evolve simply as

$$p(t) = p_0, \quad x(t) = \frac{pt}{m} + x_0.$$

Therefore, the variance $V = \langle x^2 \rangle - \langle x \rangle^2$ evolves as

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{1}{m}\langle [x^2, p^2] \rangle - \frac{2}{m}\langle x \rangle\langle p \rangle = \frac{1}{m}\left(\langle xp + px \rangle - 2\langle x \rangle\langle p \rangle\right).$$

Taking a second derivative,

$$\frac{d^2 V}{dt^2} = \frac{2\langle p^2 \rangle}{m^2} - \frac{2\langle p \rangle^2}{m^2}$$

which is constant, because the momentum distribution is constant. Therefore, in general $V(t)$ is a quadratic in time, and furthermore $V''(t) > 0$, so that all wavepackets eventually spread. There are a few ways out of this: coherent states don't spread because they experience an appropriate potential, and nonspreading wavepackets evade the above argument by having infinite variance.

This argument also shows a strength of Heisenberg picture: it is ideal if you are mostly interested in the expectation values of simple operators. On the other hand, if you're interested in the full wavefunction, the equivalent information is encoded in the evolution of infinitely many operators. These are clunky to work with, even for a setup as simple as the free particle.

Example. As another example, suppose we wanted to perform a Galilean boost to get a moving wavepacket. Naively, we would simply take $\psi(x - vt, t)$, but this can't be right, because this state evaluated at time $t = 0$ is precisely the same as a non-moving wavepacket. To actually change the momentum, we need to add a phase factor; the result is

$$\psi_v(x,t) = e^{i(mvx - mv^2t/2)/\hbar}\psi(x - vt, t)$$

as can be checked by brute force, or shown in a more formal way in the notes on Group Theory. It also makes intuitive sense: the $e^{imvx/\hbar}$ factor shifts the momentum, while the $e^{-imv^2t/2\hbar}$ factor accounts for the change in kinetic energy.

More generally, for a particle in free fall, $V(x) = mgx$, we have

$$\psi_{\text{ff}}(x,t) = e^{-i(mgt/\hbar)(x+gt^2/6)}\psi_0(x + gt^2/2, t)$$

where the wavepacket motion obeys Ehrenfest's relations. The phase factors have the same explanation as for the uniformly moving wavepacket, and can be derived by integrating over boosts. This final example also illustrates how forces work in quantum mechanics: a spatial gradient in potential energy leads to a spatial gradient in phase, which corresponds to momentum.

Even more generally, you can formulate nonrelativistic quantum mechanics in an arbitrary noninertial reference frame; just start with the Lagrangian in that frame, perform a Legendre transformation, and then do canonical quantization to get the Schrodinger equation. However, this is almost certainly more trouble than it's worth.

Example. Consider the stationary states of the infinite square well,

$$V(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & a \le x \le b, \\ \infty & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

At the boundaries, ψ' can be discontinuous, though the Schrodinger equation ensures ψ is continuous. Now suppose we wanted to compute the standard deviation of the energy for some state. This requires computing $\langle\psi|H^2|\psi\rangle \propto \langle\psi|p^4|\psi\rangle$. But since ψ' can be discontinuous at the boundaries, ψ'' can contain delta functions at the boundaries, which means this expectation value can contain squares of delta functions, and is thus infinite!

There are a few ways to fix the problem. First, one can note that iterating derivatives makes functions nastier, so the right definition of H^2 shouldn't involve differentiating four times. Instead, since H is perfectly nice, we use the spectral decomposition: we simply define the eigenvectors of H^2 to be the same as H, with squared eigenvalues, and avoid thinking about evaluating H^2 "directly". (Or, more formally, many familiar states, such as the energy eigenstates, are simply declared to be outside the domain of definition of H^2.) Alternatively, we can regularize the problem by making the depth of the well finite. Now ψ' is always continuous, though it has a small exponential tail outside the well, and $\langle\psi|H^2|\psi\rangle$ is perfectly well defined. We get back the expected results when we take the well depth to infinity. This kind of physicist's regulator is extremely reliable, since it is in accord with how nature actually works, but it's also very clunky to use in practice.

Here's another issue that tends to trouble mathematicians, though it doesn't trouble physicists. In mathematics, we often want to take an "intrinsic" perspective. That is, it would be nice to set up the problem on the interval $[a, b]$, without invoking the entire real line. The potential on this interval is exactly zero. However, it becomes subtle to define the momentum operator. The crux of the problem is that the momentum operator should generate translations, but there is no obvious notion of translations on a finite interval: if you start at $x = a$ and translate left, where do you go?

We can phrase this problem more formally as follows. To check that the momentum operator is Hermitian, we need to show that

$$(\psi, -i\hbar D\phi) = (-i\hbar D\psi, \phi)$$

where D is the derivative operator. By a simple calculation, this happens when

$$\psi^*(b)\phi(b) = \psi^*(a)\phi(a).$$

Thus, we have to restrict the domain of definition of p and $p^\dagger$, i.e. put conditions on the allowed $\phi(x)$ and $\psi(x)$, respectively. Clearly one possibility is to demand $\phi(a) = \phi(b) = 0$, which is motivated by the original physical setup, but then this leaves no condition at all for $\psi(x)$, making $p^\dagger$ defined on a larger domain than p. We say that p is self-adjoint if it is Hermitian and has the same domain of definition as $p^\dagger$, and under this choice p is not self-adjoint. This leads to a number of pathologies. For example, the spectral theorem doesn't work, as p has *no* eigenfunctions with real eigenvalues.

In order to solve this problem, we need to define a self-adjoint extension of p. That is, we need to enlarge the domain of definition of p, thereby shrinking the domain of definition of $p^\dagger$, until the two match. The most general choice that makes p self-adjoint is

$$\phi(b) = e^{i\theta}\phi(a), \quad \psi(b) = e^{i\theta}\psi(a).$$

The choice $\theta = 0$ corresponds to the familiar periodic boundary conditions. Conceptually, what's going on is that translation at $x = a$ is now defined to teleport you to $x = b$ with a phase shift. Mathematically, everything is now well, and p now has a complete set of eigenfunctions as expected for a self-adjoint operator. (It's not always possible to do this; if we had worked on the interval $[0, \infty)$ there is no self-adjoint extension of the momentum operator, since there's no where to "teleport to" from zero.)

Of course, for a finite square well in real life, this is all just an irrelevant formal game, because the intrinsic perspective doesn't work: a *real* translation just takes you out of the well. On the other hand, sometimes quantities really are meaningful only on finite intervals, such as angles, which are defined on $[0, 2\pi]$ with periodic boundary conditions. As another application, we can run the same analysis for the $1/r^2$ potential. Here the interval $r \in [0, \infty)$ is certainly meaningful, since r can't be negative. It turns out in this case that the Hamiltonian has a continuum of self-adjoint extensions, which can be interpreted as describing what physically happens when the particle hits $r = 0$. The choice of self-adjoint extension sets the ground state energy, just like the choice of regularization.

5.3   The Adiabatic Theorem

We now review the adiabatic theorem, which describes the result of slowly changing the Hamiltonian.

- Suppose we have a Hamiltonian $H(x^a, \lambda^i)$ with control parameters λ^i. If the energies never cross, we can index the eigenstates as a function of λ as $|n(\lambda)\rangle$. If the space of control parameters is contractible, the $|n(\lambda)\rangle$ can be taken to be smooth, though we will see cases where they cannot.

- The adiabatic theorem states that if the λ^i are changed sufficiently slowly, a state initially in $|n(\lambda(t_i))\rangle$ will end up in the state $|n(\lambda(t_f))\rangle$, up to an extra phase called the Berry phase. This is essentially because the rapid phase oscillations of the coefficients prevent transition amplitudes from accumulating, as we've seen in time-dependent perturbation theory.

- The phase oscillations between two energy levels have timescale $\hbar/\Delta E$, so the adiabatic theorem holds if the timescale of the change in the Hamiltonian is much greater than this; it fails if energy levels become degenerate with the occupied one.

- The quantum adiabatic theorem implies that quantum numbers n are conserved, and in the semiclassical limit

$$\oint p\, dq = nh$$

which implies the classical adiabatic theorem. Additionally, since the occupancy of quantum states is preserved, the entropy stays the same, linking to the thermodynamic definition of an adiabatic process.

- To parametrize the error in the adiabatic theorem, we could write the time dependence as $H = H(\tau)$ with $\tau = \epsilon t$ and take $\epsilon \to 0$ and $t \to \infty$, holding τ fixed. We can then expand the coefficients in a power series in ϵ.

- When this is done carefully, we find that as long as the energy levels are nondegenerate, the adiabatic theorem holds to all orders in ϵ. To see why, note that the error terms will look like

$$\int_{\tau_i}^{\tau_f} d\tau \, e^{i\omega\tau/\epsilon} f(\tau)$$

  If the levels are nondegenerate, then the integral must be evaluated by the saddle point approximation, giving a result of the form $e^{-\omega\tau/\epsilon}$, which vanishes faster than any power of ϵ.

- For comparison, note that for a constant perturbation, time-dependent perturbation theory gives a transition amplitude that goes as ϵ, rather than $e^{-1/\epsilon}$. This discrepancy is because the constant perturbation is suddenly added, rather than adiabatically turned on; if all time derivatives of the Hamiltonian are smooth, we get $e^{-1/\epsilon}$.

We now turn to Berry's phase.

- We assume the adiabatic theorem holds and plug the ansatz

$$|\psi(t)\rangle = e^{i\gamma(t)} |n(\lambda(t))\rangle$$

  into the Schrodinger equation,

$$i\frac{\partial|\psi\rangle}{\partial t} = H(\lambda(t))|\psi\rangle$$

  where $\gamma(t)$ is a phase to be determined. For simplicity we ignore all other states, and set the energy of the current state to zero at all times to ignore the dynamical phase.

- Plugging in the ansatz and operating with $\langle\psi|$, we find

$$i\dot{\gamma} + \langle n|\dot{n}\rangle = 0.$$

  The quantity γ is real because

$$0 = \frac{d}{dt}\langle n|n\rangle = \langle\dot{n}|n\rangle + \langle n|\dot{n}\rangle = 2\,\text{Re}\langle n|\dot{n}\rangle.$$

- Using the chain rule, we find

$$\gamma(t) = \int \mathcal{A}_i(\lambda)\, d\lambda^i, \quad \mathcal{A}_i(\lambda) = i\langle n|\frac{\partial}{\partial\lambda^i}|n\rangle$$

  where $\mathcal{A}$ is called the Berry connection, and implicitly depends on n. However, this phase is only meaningful for a closed path in parameter space, because the Berry connection has a gauge redundancy from the fact that we can redefine the states $|n(\lambda)\rangle$ by phase factors.

- More explicitly, we may redefine the states by the 'gauge transformation'

$$|n'(\lambda)\rangle = e^{i\omega(\lambda)} n(\lambda)$$

in which case the Berry connection is changed to

$$\mathcal{A}_i' = \mathcal{A}_i + \partial_i \omega.$$

This is just like a gauge transformation in electromagnetism, except there, the parameters λ^i are replaced by spatial coordinates. Geometrically, $\mathcal{A}_i$ is a one-form over the space of parameters, like A_i is a one-form over Minkowski space.

- Hence we can define a gauge-invariant curvature

$$\mathcal{F}_{ij}(\lambda) = \partial_i \mathcal{A}_j - \partial_j \mathcal{A}_i$$

called the Berry curvature. Using Stokes' theorem, we may write the Berry phase as

$$\gamma = \int_C \mathcal{A}_i \, d\lambda^i = \int_S \mathcal{F}_{ij} \, dS^{ij}$$

where S is a surface bounding the closed curve C.

- Geometrically, we can describe this situation using a $U(1)$ bundle over M, the parameter space. The Berry connection is simply a connection on this bundle; picking a phase convention amounts to choosing a section.

- More generally, if our state has n-fold degeneracy, we have a non-abelian Berry connection for a $U(n)$ bundle. The equations pick up more indices; we have

$$(\mathcal{A}_i)(\lambda)_{ba} = i\langle n_a | \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda^i} | n_b \rangle$$

while a gauge transformation $|n'(\lambda)\rangle = \Omega_{ab}(\lambda) |n_b(\lambda)\rangle$ produces

$$\mathcal{A}_i' = \Omega \mathcal{A}_i \Omega^\dagger - i \frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial \lambda^i} \Omega^\dagger.$$

- The field strength is

$$\mathcal{F}_{ij} = \partial_i \mathcal{A}_j - \partial_j \mathcal{A}_i - i[\mathcal{A}_i, \mathcal{A}_j], \quad \mathcal{F}_{ij}' = \Omega \mathcal{F}_{ij} \Omega^\dagger$$

and the generalization of the Berry phase, called the Berry holonomy, is

$$U = \mathcal{P} \exp\left(i \oint \mathcal{A}_i \, d\lambda^i \right).$$

Example. A particle with spin s in a magnetic field of fixed magnitude. The parameter space S^2 is in magnetic field space. We may define states in this space as

$$|\theta, \phi, m\rangle = e^{i\phi m} e^{-i\phi S_z} e^{-i\theta S_y} |0, 0, m\rangle.$$

This is potentially singular at $\theta = 0$ and $\theta = \pi$, and the extra phase factor ensures there is no singularity at $\theta = 0$. The Berry connection is

$$A^{(m)} = m(\cos\theta - 1)\, d\phi$$

by direct differentiation, which gives a field strength

$$F^{(m)}_{\phi\theta} = m\sin\theta, \quad \int_{S^2} F = 4\pi m.$$

Hence we have a magnetic monopole in **B**-space of strength proportional to m, and the singularity in the states and in $A^{(m)}$ is due to the Dirac string.

Next, we consider the Born–Oppenheimer approximation, an important application.

- In the theory of molecules, the basic Hamiltonian includes the kinetic energies of the nuclei and electrons, as well as Coulomb interactions between them. We have a small parameter $\kappa \sim (m/M)^{1/4}$ where m is the electron mass and M is the mass of the nuclei.

- In a precise treatment, we would expand in orders of κ. For example, for diatomic molecules we can directly show that electronic excitations have energies of order $E_0 = e^2/a_0$, where a_0 is the Bohr radius, vibrational modes have energies of order $\kappa^2 E_0$, and rotational modes have energies of order $\kappa^4 E_0$. These features generalize to all molecules.

- A simpler approximation is to simply note that if the electrons and nuclei have about the same kinetic energy, the nuclei move much slower. Moreover, the uncertainty principle places weaker constraints on their positions and momenta. Hence we could treat the positions **R** of the nuclei as classical, giving a Hamiltonian $H_{\text{elec}}(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}; \mathbf{R})$ for the electrons,

$$H_{\text{elec}} = \sum_i \frac{p_i^2}{2m} + \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0}\left(\sum_{i\neq j}\frac{1}{|\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{r}_j|} - \sum_{i\alpha}\frac{Z_\alpha}{|\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{R}_\alpha|}\right).$$

The total Hamiltonian is

$$H = H_{\text{nuc}} + H_{\text{elec}}, \quad H_{\text{nuc}} = \sum_\alpha \frac{P_\alpha^2}{2M_\alpha} + \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0}\sum_{\alpha\neq\beta}\frac{Z_\alpha Z_\beta}{|\mathbf{R}_\alpha - \mathbf{R}_\beta|}.$$

- Applying the adiabatic theorem to variations of **R** in H_{elec}, we find eigenfunctions and energies

$$\phi_n(\mathbf{r}; \mathbf{R}), \quad E_n(\mathbf{R})$$

for the electrons alone. We can hence write the wavefunction of the full system as

$$|\Psi\rangle = \sum_n |\Phi_n\rangle|\phi_n\rangle$$

where $|\Phi_n\rangle$ is a nuclear wavefunction. The Schrodinger equation is

$$(H_{\text{nuc}} + H_{\text{elec}})|\Psi\rangle = E|\Psi\rangle.$$

- To reduce this to an effective Schrodinger equation for the nuclei, we act with $\langle \phi_m |$, giving

$$\sum_n \langle \phi_m | H_{\mathrm{nuc}} | \phi_n \Phi_n \rangle + E_m(\mathbf{R}) | \phi_m \rangle = E | \phi_m \rangle.$$

Then naively, H_{nuc} is diagonal in the electron space and the effective Schrodinger equation for the nuclei is just the ordinary Schrodinger equation with an extra contribution to the energy, $E_m(\mathbf{R})$. This shows quantitatively how nuclei are attracted to each other by changes in electronic energy levels, in a chemical bond.

- A bit more accurately, we note that H_{nuc} contains ∇_α^2, which also acts on the electronic wavefunctions. Applying the product rule and inserting the identity,

$$\langle \phi_m | \nabla_\alpha^2 | \phi_n \Phi_n \rangle = \sum_k \left(\delta_{mk} \nabla_\alpha + \langle \phi_m | \nabla_\alpha | \phi_k \rangle \right) \left(\delta_{kn} \nabla_\alpha + \langle \phi_k | \nabla_\alpha | \phi_n \rangle \right) | \Phi_n \rangle.$$

Off-diagonal elements are suppressed by differences of electronic energies, which we assume are large. However, differentiating the electronic wavefunction has converted ordinary derivatives to covariant derivatives, giving

$$H_{\mathrm{nuc}}^{\mathrm{eff}} = \sum_\alpha \frac{\hbar^2}{2M_\alpha} (\nabla_\alpha - i\mathcal{A}_\alpha)^2 + \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0} \sum_{\alpha \neq \beta} \frac{Z_\alpha Z_\beta}{|\mathbf{R}_\alpha - \mathbf{R}_\beta|} + E_n(\mathbf{R}).$$

The electron motion provides an effective magnetic field for the nuclei.

5.4 Particles in Electromagnetic Fields

Next, we set up the quantum mechanics of a particle in an electromagnetic field.

- The Hamiltonian for a particle in an electromagnetic field is

$$H = \frac{(\mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A})^2}{2m} + q\phi$$

as in classical mechanics. Here, $\mathbf{p}$ is the canonical momentum, so it corresponds to $-i\hbar\nabla$.

- There is an ordering ambiguity, since $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{p}$ do not commute at the quantum level. We will set the term linear in $\mathbf{A}$ to $\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{p}$, as this is the only combination that makes H Hermitian, as one can check by demanding $\langle \psi | H | \psi \rangle$ to be real. Another way out is to just stick with Coulomb gauge, $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} = 0$, since in this case $\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{p}$.

- The kinetic momentum is $\boldsymbol{\pi} = \mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A}$ and the velocity operator is $\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\pi}/m$. The velocity operator is the operator that should appear in the continuity equation for probability, as it corresponds to the classical velocity.

- Under a gauge transformation specified by an arbitrary function α, called the gauge scalar,

$$\phi \to \phi - \partial_t \alpha, \quad \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{A} + \nabla\alpha.$$

As a result, the Hamiltonian is not gauge invariant.

- In order to make the Schrodinger equation gauge invariant, we need to allow the wavefunction to transform as well, by

$$\psi \to e^{iq\alpha/\hbar}\psi.$$

  If the Schrodinger equation holds for the old potential and wavefunction, then it also holds for the gauge-transformed potential and wavefunction. Roughly speaking, the extra $e^{iq\alpha/\hbar}$ factor can be 'pulled through' the time and space derivatives, leaving behind extra $\partial_\mu \alpha$ factors that exactly cancel the additional terms from the gauge transformation.

- In the context of gauge theories, the reasoning goes the other way. Given that we want to make $\psi \to e^{iq\alpha/\hbar}\psi$ a symmetry of the theory, we conclude that the derivative (here, $\mathbf{p}$) must be converted into a covariant derivative (here, $\boldsymbol{\pi}$).

- The phase of the wavefunction has no direct physical meaning, since it isn't gauge invariant. Similarly, the canonical momentum isn't gauge invariant, but the kinetic momentum $\boldsymbol{\pi}$ is. The particle satisfies the Lorentz force law in Heisenberg picture if we work in terms of $\boldsymbol{\pi}$.

- The fact that the components of velocity $\mathbf{v}$ don't commute can be understood directly from our intuition for Poisson brackets; in the presence of a magnetic field parallel to $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$, a particle moving in the $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$ direction is deflected in the $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$ direction.

Note. As mentioned above, we can think of $q\mathbf{A}$ as "potential momentum". For example, suppose a particle is near a solenoid, which is very rapidly turned on. According to the Schrodinger equation, $\mathbf{p}$ does not change during this process if it is sufficiently fast. On the other hand, the particle receives a finite impulse since

$$\mathbf{E} = -\frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}.$$

This changes the kinetic and potential momenta by opposite amounts, keeping the canonical momentum the same. Another place this picture works is in the interaction of charges and monopoles, since we have translational invariance, giving significant insight into the equations of motion.

Electromagnetic fields lead to some interesting topological phenomena.

Example. A particle around a flux tube. Consider a particle constrained to lie on a ring of radius r, through which a magnetic flux Φ passes. Then we can take

$$A_\phi = \frac{\Phi}{2\pi r}$$

and the Hamiltonian is

$$H = \frac{(p_\phi - qA_\phi)^2}{2m} = \frac{1}{2mr^2}\left(-i\hbar\partial_\phi - \frac{q\Phi}{2\pi}\right)^2.$$

The energy eigenstates are still exponentials, of the form

$$\psi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi r}}e^{in\phi}$$

where $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ since the wavefunction is single-valued. Plugging this in, the energy is

$$E = \frac{\hbar^2}{2mr^2}\left(n - \frac{\Phi}{\Phi_0}\right)^2$$

where $\Phi_0 = 2\pi\hbar/q$ is the quantum of flux. Since generally Φ/Φ_0 is not an integer, the presence of the magnetic field affects the spectrum even though the magnetic field is zero everywhere the wavefunction is nonzero!

We can also look at this phenomenon in a slightly different way. Suppose we were to try to gauge away the vector potential. Since

$$\mathbf{A} = \nabla\alpha, \quad \alpha = \frac{\Phi\phi}{2\pi}$$

we might try a gauge transformation with gauge scalar α. Then the wavefunction transforms as

$$\psi \to \exp\left(\frac{iq\alpha}{\hbar}\right)\psi = \exp\left(\frac{\Phi}{\Phi_0}i\phi\right)\psi.$$

This is invalid unless Φ is a multiple of Φ_0, as it yields a non-single-valued wavefunction. This reflects the fact that the spectrum really changes when Φ/Φ_0 is not an integer; it is a physical effect that can't be gauged away. The constraint that ψ is single-valued is perfectly physical; it's just what we used to get the energy eigenstates when A is zero. The reason it restricts the gauge transformations allowed is because the wavefunction wraps around the flux tube. This is a first look at how topology appears in quantum mechanics. The general fact that an integer Φ/Φ_0 has no effect on the spectrum of a system is called the Byers–Yang theorem.

Note. Sometimes, these two arguments are mixed up, leading to claims that the flux through any loop must be quantized in multiples of Φ_0. This is simply incorrect, but it is true for superconducting loops if ψ is interpreted as the macroscopic wavefunction. This is because the energy of the superconducting loop is minimized when Φ/Φ_0 is an integer. **(add more detail)**

Note. It is also useful to think about how the energy levels move, i.e. the "spectral flow". For zero field, the $|n = 0\rangle$ state sits at the bottom, while the states $\pm|n\rangle$ are degenerate. As the field is increased, the energy levels shift around so that once the flux is Φ_0, the $|n\rangle$ state has moved to the energy level of the original $|n + 1\rangle$ state.

Example. The Aharanov–Bohm effect. Consider the double slit experiment, but with a solenoid hidden behind the wall between the slits. Then the presence of the solenoid affects the interference pattern, even if its electromagnetic field is zero everywhere the particle goes! To see this, note that a path from the starting point to a point $\mathbf{x}$ picks up a phase

$$\Delta\theta = \frac{q}{\hbar}\int^{\mathbf{x}}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x}')\cdot d\mathbf{x}'.$$

Then the two possible paths through the slits pick up a relative phase

$$\Delta\theta = \frac{q}{\hbar}\oint\mathbf{A}\cdot d\mathbf{x} = \frac{q}{\hbar}\int\mathbf{B}\cdot d\mathbf{S} = \frac{q\Phi}{\hbar}$$

which shifts the interference pattern. Again, we see that if Φ is a multiple of Φ_0, the effect vanishes, but in general there is a physically observable effect.

Note. There are many ways to justify the phases. In the path integral formulation, we sum over all classical paths with phase $e^{iS/\hbar}$. The dominant contribution comes from the two classical paths, so we can ignore all others; the phase shift for each path is just $e^{i\Delta S/\hbar}$.

Alternatively, we can use the adiabatic theorem. Suppose that we have a well-localized, slowly-moving particle in a vector potential $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x})$. Then we can apply the adiabatic theorem, where the parameter is the particle's position, one can show the Berry connection is $\mathbf{A}$, and the Berry curvature is $\mathbf{B}$, giving the same conclusion. This method is quite concrete, but requires using the adiabatic approximation to avoid picking up unwanted extra contributions, such as the dynamical $\mathbf{p} \cdot d\mathbf{x}$ phase; such phases are automatically separated out in the path integral approach.

Yet another way, which is in some sense intermediate between the above two, is to directly use the algebra of translation operators, as explained here.

Note. Sometimes, the Aharanov–Bohm effect is used to claim that the vector potential is "physical", a somewhat vague notion that expresses the intuition that the effect cannot be captured by local effects of the gauge-invariant electric and magnetic fields alone. This point of view has been contested by Vaidman, who claims that the phase shift can also be explained through the interaction of the charged particle's field with the solenoid. This indicates that the potential is not the only way of getting the effect, but merely the most convenient way. However, the debate is ongoing.

Note. We may also describe the above effects with fiber bundles, though it adds little because all $U(1)$ bundles over S^1 are trivial. However, it can be useful to think in terms of gauge patches. If we cover S^1 with two patches, we can gauge away $\mathbf{A}$ within each patch, and the physical phases in both examples above arise solely from transition functions. This can be more convenient in some situations, since the effects of $\mathbf{A}$ don't appear in the Schrodinger equations in each patch.

Example. Dirac quantization of magnetic monopoles. A magnetic monopole has a magnetic field

$$\mathbf{B} = \frac{g\hat{\mathbf{r}}}{4\pi r^2}$$

where the magnetic charge g is its total flux. To get around Gauss's law (i.e. writing $\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}$), we must use a singular vector potential. Two possible examples are

$$A_\phi^N = \frac{g}{4\pi r}\frac{1 - \cos\theta}{\sin\theta}, \quad A_\phi^S = -\frac{g}{4\pi r}\frac{1 + \cos\theta}{\sin\theta}.$$

These vector potentials are singular along the lines $\theta = \pi$ and $\theta = 0$, respectively, which we call Dirac strings. Physically, we can think of a magnetic monopole as one end of a solenoid that extends off to infinity that's too thin to detect; the solenoid then lies on the Dirac string. Note that there is only one Dirac string, not two, but where it is depends on whether we use A_ϕ^N or A_ϕ^S.

To solve the Schrodinger equation for a particle in this field, we must solve it separately in the Northern hemisphere (where A_ϕ^N is nonsingular) and the Southern hemisphere, giving wavefunctions ψ_N and ψ_S. On the equator, where they overlap, they must differ by a gauge transformation

$$\psi_N = e^{iq\alpha/\hbar}\psi_S, \quad \alpha = \frac{g\phi}{2\pi}.$$

But since the wavefunction must be single-valued, g must be a multiple of Φ_0, giving the Dirac quantization condition

$$qg = 2\pi\hbar n.$$

A slight modification of this argument for dyons, with both electric and magnetic charge, gives

$$q_1 g_2 - q_2 g_1 = 2\pi\hbar n.$$

This is the Dirac–Zwanziger quantization condition.

We see that if a single magnetic monopole exists, charge is quantized! Alternatively, going in the opposite direction, the experimental observation of quantization of charge tells us that the gauge group of electromagnetism should be $U(1)$ rather than $\mathbb{R}$, and magnetic monopoles can only exist in the former. Hence the quantization of charge gives us a reason to expect monopoles to exist.

Note. An alternate derivation of the Dirac quantization condition. Consider a particle that moves in the field of a monopole, in a closed path that subtends a magnetic flux Φ. As we know already, the resulting phase shift is $\Delta\theta = q\Phi/\hbar$. But we could also have taken a surface that wrapped about the monopole the other way, with a flux $\Phi - g$ and phase shift $\Delta\theta' = q(\Phi - g)/\hbar$.

Since we consider the exact same path in both situations (and the phase shift is observable, as we could interfere it with a state that didn't move at all), the phase shifts must differ by a multiple of 2π for consistency. This recovers the Dirac quantization condition.

The exact same argument applies to the abstract monopole in **B**-space in the previous section. This underscores the fact that the quantization of magnetic charge has nothing to do with real space; it is fundamentally because there are discretely many distinct $U(1)$ bundles on the sphere, as we show in more detail below.

Note. A heuristic derivation of the Dirac quantization condition. One can show the conserved angular momentum of the monopole-charge system, with the monopole again fixed, is

$$\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{r} \times m\mathbf{v} - \frac{qg}{4\pi}\hat{\mathbf{r}}.$$

The second term is the angular momentum stored in the electromagnetic fields. Using the fact that angular momentum is quantized in units of $\hbar/2$ gives the same result.

Note. Formally, a wavefunction is a section of a complex line bundle associated with the $U(1)$ gauge bundle. In the case of a nontrivial bundle, the wavefunction can only be defined on patches; naively attempting to define it globally will give a multivalued or singular wavefunction. This is why some say that the wavefunction can be multivalued in certain situations. In all the cases we have considered here, the bundle is trivial, so all wavefunctions may be globally defined. It turns out that over a manifold M the equivalence classes of complex line bundles are classified by the Picard group $H^2(M, \mathbb{Z})$. For instance, this is nontrivial for a two-dimensional torus.

This formalism lets us derive the Dirac quantization condition without referring to matter. The point is that $A^N - A^S = d\lambda$ for a single-valued function λ defined on the equator S^1. Then

$$\int_{S^2} F = \int_N dA^N + \int_S dA^S = \int_{S^1} (A^N - A^S) = \int_{S^1} d\lambda$$

which is an integer. This quantity is called the first Chern class of the $U(1)$ bundle.

Note. The behavior of a wavefunction has a neat analogy with fluid flow. We let $\psi = \sqrt{\rho}e^{i\theta}$. Then the Schrodinger equation is

$$\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial t} = -\nabla \cdot (\rho\mathbf{v}), \quad \hbar\frac{\partial\theta}{\partial t} = -\frac{mv^2}{2} - q\phi + \frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\frac{1}{\sqrt{\rho}}\nabla^2(\sqrt{\rho})$$

where the velocity is $\mathbf{v} = (\hbar\nabla\theta - q\mathbf{A})/m$. The first equation is simply the continuity equation, while the second is familiar from hydrodynamics if $\hbar\theta$ is identified as the "velocity potential", and the

right-hand side is identified as the negative of the energy. We see there is an additional "quantum" contribution to the energy, which can be interpreted as the energy required to compress the fluid.

The second equation becomes a bit more intuitive by taking the gradient, giving

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t} = \frac{q}{m}\left(-\nabla\phi - \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial t}\right) - \mathbf{v} \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{v}) - (\mathbf{v}\cdot\nabla)\mathbf{v} + \nabla\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{\rho}}\nabla^2\sqrt{\rho}\right).$$

Note that the definition of the velocity relates the vorticity with the magnetic field,

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{v} = -\frac{q}{m}\mathbf{B}.$$

Then the first two terms on the right-hand side are simply the Lorentz force. The third simply converts the partial time derivative to a convective derivative. Now in general this picture isn't physical, because we can't think of the wavefunction ψ as a classical field, identifying the probability density with charge density. However, it is a perfectly good picture when ψ is a macroscopic wavefunction, as is the case for superconductivity.

5.5   Harmonic Oscillator and Coherent States

We now consider the model system of the harmonic oscillator.

- The Hamiltonian
$$H = \frac{\hat{p}^2}{2m} + \frac{m\omega^2\hat{x}^2}{2}$$
  has a characteristic length $\sqrt{\hbar/m\omega}$, characteristic momentum $\sqrt{m\hbar\omega}$, and characteristic energy $\hbar\omega$. Setting all of these quantities to one, or equivalently setting $\omega = \hbar = m = 1$,
$$H = \frac{\hat{p}^2}{2} + \frac{\hat{x}^2}{2}, \quad [\hat{x},\hat{p}] = i.$$
  We can later recover all units by dimensional analysis.

- Since the potential goes to infinity at infinity, there are only bound states, and hence the spectrum of H is discrete. Moreover, since we are working in one dimension, the eigenfunctions of H are nondegenerate.

- Classically, the Hamiltonian may be factored as
$$\frac{1}{2}(x^2 + p^2) = \frac{x + ip}{\sqrt{2}}\frac{x - ip}{\sqrt{2}}.$$
  This motivates the definitions
$$a = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\hat{x} + i\hat{p}), \quad a^\dagger = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(\hat{x} - i\hat{p}).$$
  However, these two operators have the nontrivial commutation relation
$$[a, a^\dagger] = 1, \quad H = a^\dagger a + \frac{1}{2} = N + \frac{1}{2}.$$
  The addition of the 1/2 is thus an inherently quantum effect. Incidentally, a nice heuristic for using the commutation relation above is that $[a, f(a, a^\dagger)] = \partial f/\partial a^\dagger$, where the right-hand side is a formal derivative that acts on strings of a's and $a^\dagger$'s.

- We note that the operator N is positive, because

$$\langle \phi | N | \phi \rangle = \| a | \phi \rangle \|^2 \geq 0.$$

  Therefore, N only has nonnegative eigenvalues; we let the eigenvectors be

$$N | \nu \rangle = \nu | \nu \rangle, \quad \nu \geq 0.$$

- Applying the commutation relations, we find

$$Na = a(N - 1), \quad Na^\dagger = a^\dagger (N + 1).$$

  This implies that $a | \nu \rangle$ is an eigenket of N with eigenvalue $\nu - 1$, and similarly $a^\dagger | \nu \rangle$ has eigenvalue $\nu + 1$. Therefore, starting with a single eigenket, we can get a ladder of eigenstates.

- This ladder terminates if $a | \nu \rangle$ or $a^\dagger | \nu \rangle$ vanishes. But note that

$$\| a | \nu \rangle \|^2 = \langle \nu | a^\dagger a | \nu \rangle = \nu, \quad \| a^\dagger | \nu \rangle \| = \nu + 1.$$

  Therefore, the ladder terminates on the bottom with $\nu = 0$ and doesn't terminate on the top. Moreover, all eigenvalues ν must be integers; if not, we could lower until the eigenvalue was negative, contradicting the positive definiteness of N. We can show there aren't multiple copies of the ladder by switching to wavefunctions and using uniqueness, as shown below.

- Therefore, the eigenstates of the harmonic oscillator are indexed by integers,

$$H | n \rangle = E_n | n \rangle, \quad E_n = n + \frac{1}{2}.$$

- Using the equations above, we find that for the $| n \rangle$ to be normalized, we have

$$a | n \rangle = \sqrt{n} | n - 1 \rangle, \quad a^\dagger | n \rangle = \sqrt{n + 1} | n + 1 \rangle.$$

  There can in principle be a phase factor, but we use our phase freedom in the eigenkets to rotate it to zero. Repeating this, we find

$$| n \rangle = \frac{(a^\dagger)^n}{\sqrt{n!}} | 0 \rangle.$$

Note. Explicit wavefunctions. The ground state wavefunction satisfies $a | 0 \rangle = 0$, so

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} (x + \partial_x) \psi_0(x) = 0, \quad \psi_0(x) = \frac{1}{\pi^{1/4}} e^{-x^2/2}.$$

Similarly, the excited states satisfy

$$\psi_n(x) = \frac{1}{\pi^{1/4}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{n! 2^n}} (x - \partial_x)^n e^{-x^2/2}$$

To simplify, we "move the derivatives past the exponential", using the identity

$$(x - \partial_x) e^{x^2/2} f = e^{-x^2/2} \partial_x f.$$

Therefore we find

$$\psi_n(x) = \frac{1}{\pi^{1/4}} \frac{(-1)^n}{\sqrt{n!2^n}} e^{x^2/2} \partial_x^n e^{-x^2}.$$

This can be expressed simply in terms of the Hermite polynomials,

$$\psi_n(x) = \frac{1}{\pi^{1/4}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{n!2^n}} H_n(x) e^{-x^2/2}, \quad H_n(x) = (-1)^n e^{x^2} \partial_x^n e^{-x^2}.$$

Generally the nth state is an nth degree polynomial times a Gaussian.

Note. Similarly, we can find the momentum space wavefunction $\widetilde{\psi}_n(p)$ by writing $a^\dagger$ in momentum space. The result turns out to be identical up to phase factors and scaling; this is because unitary evolution with the harmonic oscillator potential for time $\pi/2$ Fourier transforms the wavefunction (as shown below), and this evolution leaves $\psi_n(x)$ unchanged up to a phase factor.

Next we turn to coherent states, where it's easiest to work in Heisenberg picture.

- The Hamiltonian is still $H = (\hat{x}^2 + \hat{p}^2)/2$, but the operators have time-dependence equivalent to the classical equations of motion,

$$\frac{d\hat{x}}{dt} = \hat{p}, \quad \frac{d\hat{p}}{dt} = -\hat{x}.$$

The solution to this is simply clockwise circular motion in phase space, as it is classically,

$$\begin{pmatrix} \hat{x}(t) \\ \hat{p}(t) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & \sin t \\ -\sin t & \cos t \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \hat{x}_0 \\ \hat{p}_0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then the expectation values of position and momentum behave as they do classically.

- Moreover, the time evolution for $\pi/2$ turns position eigenstates into momentum eigenstates. To see this, let $U = e^{-iH(\pi/2)}$ and let $x_0|x\rangle = x|x\rangle$. Then

$$U x_0 U^{-1} U|x\rangle = U x|x\rangle$$

which implies that

$$p_0(U|x\rangle) = x(U|x\rangle).$$

Hence $U|x\rangle$ is a momentum eigenstate with (dimensionless) momentum x. A corollary is that time evolution for $\pi/2$ applies a Fourier transform to the wavefunction in Schrodinger picture. Evolving for a general time implements a general rotation in phase space, i.e. the wavefunction experiences a fractional Fourier transform.

- Classically, it is convenient to consider the complex variable

$$z = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(x + ip), \quad \overline{z} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(x - ip).$$

Expressing the Hamiltonian in terms of these new degrees of freedom gives $H = \overline{z}z$, so $\dot{z} = -iz$ and $\dot{\overline{z}} = i\overline{z}$. As a result, the variable z rotates clockwise in the complex plane.

- The quantum analogues of z and $\overline{z}$ are a and $a^\dagger$, satisfying

$$\dot{a} = -ia, \quad \dot{a}^\dagger = ia^\dagger, \quad a(t) = e^{-it}a(0), \quad a^\dagger(t) = e^{it}a^\dagger(0).$$

- We define a coherent state as one satisfying

$$\Delta x = \Delta p = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

  which saturates the uncertainty relation. These states as 'are classical as possible', in the sense that they have maximally well defined position and momentum. Semiclassically, thinking of a quantum state as a phase space distribution, a coherent state is a circle in phase space with the minimum area h. In addition, there are 'squeezed states' that saturate the uncertainty relation but are ellipses in phase space. We cover applications of such states in the notes on Optics.

- Not all "nearly classical" states are coherent states, but it's also also true that not all states with high occupancy numbers look nearly classical. For example, $|n\rangle$ for high n doesn't look classical, since it is completely delocalized.

- The state $|0\rangle$ is a coherent state, and we can generate others by applying the position and momentum translation operators

$$T(a) = e^{-ia\hat{p}}, \quad S(b) = e^{ib\hat{x}}$$

- By expanding in a Taylor series, or applying the Hadamard lemma,

$$(T(a)\psi)(x) = \psi(x - a), \quad (T(a)\phi)(p) = e^{-iap}\phi(p)$$

  and

$$(S(b)\psi)(x) = e^{ibx}\psi(x), \quad (S(b)\phi)(p) = \phi(p - b).$$

  Therefore the translation operators shift expectation values and keep dispersions constant. Moreover, they don't commute; using the above relations, we instead have

$$S(b)T(a) = e^{iab}T(a)S(b)$$

  so we pick up a phase factor unless $ab = nh$.

- Due to the noncommutativity, the order of the position and momentum translations matters. To put them on an equal footing, we define the displacement operator

$$W(a, b) = e^{i(b\hat{x} - a\hat{p})}.$$

  By Glauber's theorem, we have

$$W(a, b) = e^{iab/2}T(a)S(b) = e^{-iab/2}S(b)T(a),$$

  so this definition simply averages the phase between the two ordering.

- We define coherent states by

$$|a, b\rangle = W(a, b)|0\rangle.$$

  We visualize this state as a circle centered at $(x, p) = (a, b)$ in phase space; the position space and momentum space wavefunctions are Gaussians.

With this setup, it's easy to show some important properties of coherent states.

- From our Heisenberg picture results, we know that the expectation values of $|a, b\rangle$ will evolve classically. To show that the dispersions are constant over time, it's convenient to switch to raising and lowering operators. Defining the complex variable z as before, we have

$$W(x, p) = \exp\left(i(p\hat{x} - x\hat{p})\right) = \exp(za^\dagger - \bar{z}a) \equiv D(z)$$

Applying Glauber's theorem implies

$$D(z) = e^{-|z|^2/2} \exp(za^\dagger) \exp(-\bar{z}a).$$

- Therefore, the coherent state $|z\rangle = D(z)|0\rangle$ is

$$|z\rangle = e^{-|z|^2/2} \exp(za^\dagger)|0\rangle = e^{-|z|^2/2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{z^n}{\sqrt{n!}}|n\rangle.$$

Then $|z\rangle$ is an eigenstate of the lowering operator with eigenvalue z.

- This makes it easy to compute properties of the coherent states; for example,

$$\langle z|\hat{n}|z\rangle = \langle z|a^\dagger a|z\rangle = z^* z \langle z|z\rangle = |z|^2$$

as well as

$$\langle z|\hat{n}^2|z\rangle = \langle z|a^\dagger a a^\dagger a|z\rangle = |z|^2 \langle z|aa^\dagger|z\rangle = |z|^4 + |z|^2.$$

In particular, this means $\mathrm{var}(\hat{n}) = |z|^2$. All these results are consistent with the fact that the number distribution is Poisson with mean $|z|^2$.

- The time evolution of the coherent state is

$$U(t)|z\rangle = e^{-it/2}|e^{-it}z\rangle$$

in accordance with the classical $z(t)$ evolution we saw before. This implies the coherent state remains coherent. We can also see this result from the Heisenberg time evolution of a and $a^\dagger$.

- In the $z/\bar{z}$ variables, the uncertainty relation is $\Delta n \Delta\varphi \gtrsim 1$, where φ is the uncertainty on the phase of z. Physically, if we consider the quantum electromagnetic field, this relation bounds the uncertainty on the number of photons and the phase of the corresponding classical wave.

- Since a is not Hermitian, its eigenvectors are not a complete set, nor are they even orthogonal. By using Glauber's theorem again, we have the overlap

$$\langle w|z\rangle = e^{w^* z} e^{-|z|^2/2} e^{-|w|^2/2}$$

which is a bit more transparent when squared,

$$|\langle w|z\rangle|^2 = e^{-|w-z|^2}.$$

- However, the coherent states form an "overcomplete" set, in the sense that

$$\int \frac{dx\,dp}{2\pi}|z\rangle\langle z| = 1.$$

To see this, act with $\langle m|$ on the left and $|n\rangle$ on the right and use the overlap to find

$$\frac{1}{2\pi} \int dx\,dp\, e^{-|z|^2} \frac{z^n (z^*)^m}{\sqrt{n!m!}} = \int d|z|^2 e^{-|z|^2} \int \frac{d\varphi}{2\pi} \frac{z^n (z^*)^m}{\sqrt{n!m!}}.$$

The phase integral is zero unless $n = m$. When $n = m$, the phase integral is 1, and the $d|z|^2$ integral also gives 1, showing the result.

More properties of coherent states are discussed in the notes on Optics.

Note. Coherent states are ubiquitous in nature, because they are generically produced by classically driving a harmonic oscillator. For a harmonic oscillator experiencing force $f(t)$, we have

$$x(t) = x_0(t) + \int dt' \, \sin(t - t')\theta(t - t')f(t')$$

by Green's functions, where $x_0(t)$ is a homogeneous solution. Then in Heisenberg picture,

$$\hat{x}(t) = \frac{\hat{a}e^{-it} + \hat{a}^\dagger e^{it}}{\sqrt{2}} + \int dt' \, \frac{i\theta(t - t')f(t')}{2}(e^{-i(t-t')} - e^{-i(t-t')})$$

where we fix $\hat{a}$ and $\hat{a}^\dagger$ to be the Heisenberg operators at time $t = 0$. Now we focus on times t after the driving ends. The step function is just 1, so denoting a Fourier transform with a tilde,

$$\hat{x}(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\left(\hat{a} + \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}\tilde{f}(1)\right)e^{-it} + \left(\hat{a}^\dagger - \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}}\tilde{f}(-1)\right)e^{it}\right)$$

where the expressions look a little strange because we have set $\omega = 1$. However, for all times,

$$\hat{x}(t) = \frac{\hat{a}(t) + \hat{a}^\dagger(t)}{\sqrt{2}}$$

so the final expressions for $\hat{a}(t)$ and $\hat{a}^\dagger(t)$ must be the factors in parentheses above. The ground state evolves into a state annihilated by $\hat{a}(t)$, which is precisely a coherent state. The other states evolve into this state, raised by powers of $\hat{a}^\dagger(t)$.

This result can also be derived directly at the level of the states. Setting $\hbar = \omega = 1$ again, let the Hamiltonian be

$$H = a^\dagger a + f^*(t)a + f(t)a^\dagger$$

where we have generalized the forcing term to the most general one, which is Hermitian and linear in x and p. In interaction picture,

$$H_I = e^{-it}f^*(t)a + e^{it}f(t)a^\dagger.$$

Solving the Schrodinger equation then yields a time evolution operator whose form is an exponential of a linear combination of a and $a^\dagger$. But this is precisely the form of the operators $D(z)$ defined above, so it turns the vacuum into a coherent state.

Note. The classical electromagnetic field in a laser is really a coherent state of the quantum electromagnetic field; in general classical fields emerge from quantum ones by stacking many quanta together. A more exotic example occurs for superfluids, where the excitations are bosons which form a coherent field state, $\hat{\psi}(\mathbf{x})|\psi\rangle = \psi(\mathbf{x})|\psi\rangle$. In the limit of large occupancies, we may treat the state as a classical field $\psi(\mathbf{x})$, which is often called a "macroscopic wavefunction".

Note. As we've seen, coherent states simply oscillate indefinitely, with their wavefunctions never spreading out. This is special to the harmonic oscillator, and it is because its frequencies have integer spacing, which makes all frequency differences multiples of $\hbar\omega$. Forming analogues of coherent states in general potentials, such as the Coulomb potential, is much harder.

5.6   The WKB Approximation

In this section, we introduce the WKB approximation and connect it to classical mechanics.

- We consider the standard "kinetic-plus-potential" Hamiltonian, and attempt to solve the time-independent Schrodinger equation. For a constant potential, the solutions are plane waves,

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) = Ae^{iS(\mathbf{x})/\hbar}, \quad S(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{x}.$$

  The length scale here is the de Broglie wavelength $\lambda = h/p$.

- Now consider a potential that varies on scales $L \gg \lambda$. Then we have

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) = A(\mathbf{x})e^{iS(\mathbf{x})/\hbar}$$

  where we expect $A(\mathbf{x})$ varies slowly, on the scale L, while $S(\mathbf{x})$ still varies rapidly, on the scale λ. Then the solution locally looks like a plane wave with momentum

$$\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x}) = \nabla S(\mathbf{x}).$$

  Hence $S(\mathbf{x})$ is analogous to Hamilton's principal function.

- Our approximation may also be thought of as an expansion in $\hbar$, because $L \gg \lambda$ is equivalent to $pL \gg \hbar$. However, the WKB approximation is fundamentally about widely separated length scales; it is also useful in classical mechanics.

- To make this more quantitative, we write the logarithm of the wavefunction as a series in $\hbar$,

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) = \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}W(\mathbf{x})\right), \quad W(\mathbf{x}) = W_0(\mathbf{x}) + \hbar W_1(\mathbf{x}) + \hbar^2 W_2(\mathbf{x}) + \ldots.$$

  Comparing this to our earlier ansatz, we identify W_0 with S and W_1 with $-i\log A$, though the true S and A receive higher-order corrections.

- Plugging this into the Schrodinger equation gives

$$\frac{1}{2m}(\nabla W)^2 - \frac{i\hbar}{2m}\nabla^2 W + V = E.$$

  At lowest order in $\hbar$, this gives the time-independent Hamilton–Jacobi equation

$$\frac{1}{2m}(\nabla S)^2 + V(\mathbf{x}) = E$$

  which describes particles of energy E.

- At the next order,

$$\frac{1}{m}\nabla W_0 \cdot \nabla W_1 - \frac{i}{2m}\nabla^2 W_0 = 0, \quad \nabla S \cdot \nabla \log A + \frac{1}{2}\nabla^2 S = 0$$

  which is equivalent to

$$\nabla \cdot (A^2 \nabla S) = 0.$$

  This is called the amplitude transport equation.

- To see the meaning of this result, define a velocity field and density

$$\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial H}{\partial \mathbf{p}} = \frac{\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x})}{m}, \quad \rho(\mathbf{x}) = A(\mathbf{x})^2.$$

  Then the amplitude transport equation says

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{J} = 0, \quad \mathbf{J}(\mathbf{x}) = \rho(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x})$$

  which is simply conservation of probability in a static situation.

- Semiclassically, we can think of a stationary state as an ensemble of classical particles with momentum field $\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{x})$, where $\nabla \times \mathbf{p} = 0$, and the particle density is constant in time. This picture is correct up to $O(\hbar^2)$ corrections.

- The same reasoning can be applied to the time-dependent Schrodinger equation with a time-dependent Hamiltonian, giving

$$\frac{1}{2m}(\nabla S)^2 + V(\mathbf{x}, t) + \frac{\partial S}{\partial t} = 0.$$

  This is simply the time-dependent Hamilton–Jacobi equation.

Note. We can generally define a quantum velocity operator as

$$\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial H}{\partial \mathbf{p}} = \frac{\partial \omega}{\partial \mathbf{k}}.$$

This corresponds to the group velocity in wave mechanics, which means that in the classical limit of a narrow wavepacket, it reduces to the classical velocity. This makes sense, since we also know that the velocity operator appears in the probability flux. As an application of this, note that for a free nonrelativistic particle we have $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{p}/m$. This is the correct velocity in the classical limit, in contrast to the phase velocity, which would instead be $\mathbf{p}/2m$. More generally, for a free relativistic particle we have $E^2 = p^2c^2 + m^2c^4$, which implies

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{\mathbf{p}c^2}{E}.$$

Note that since the momentum operator is always a space derivative, the de Broglie wavelength is always $\lambda = h/p$. This implies that it "length contracts" as $1/\gamma$ for massive relativistic particles.

We now specialize to one-dimensional problems.

- In the one-dimensional case, we have, at lowest order,

$$\psi(x) = A(x)e^{iS(x)/\hbar}, \quad \frac{1}{2m}\left(\frac{dS}{dx}\right)^2 + V(x) = E, \quad \frac{d}{dx}\left(A^2\frac{dS}{dx}\right) = 0.$$

  The solutions are

$$\frac{dS}{dx} = p(x) = \pm\sqrt{2m(E - V(x))}, \quad A(x) = \frac{\text{const}}{\sqrt{p(x)}}.$$

  Since S is the integral of $p(x)$, it is simply the phase space area swept out by the classical particle's path.

- Note that in classically forbidden regions, S becomes imaginary, turning oscillation into exponential decay. In classically allowed regions, the two signs of S are simply interpreted as whether the particle is moving left or right. For concreteness we choose

$$p(x) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{2m(E - V(x))} & E > V(x), \\ i\sqrt{2m(V(x) - E)} & E < V(x). \end{cases}$$

- The result $A \propto 1/\sqrt{p}$ has a simple classical interpretation. Consider a classical particle oscillating in a potential well. Then the amount of time it spends at a point is inversely proportional to the velocity at that point, and indeed $A^2 \propto 1/p \propto 1/v$. Then the semiclassical swarm of particles modeling a stationary state should be uniformly distributed in time.

- This semiclassical picture also applies to time-independent scattering states, which can be interpreted as a semiclassical stream of particles entering and disappearing at infinity.

- Note that the WKB approximation breaks down for classical turning points (where $V(x) = E$) since the de Broglie wavelength diverges.

We now derive the connection formulas, which deal with turning points.

- Suppose the classically allowed region is $x < x_r$. In this region, we define

$$S(x) = \int_{x_r}^{x} p(x')\, dx'.$$

  Then the WKB solution for $x < x_r$ is

$$\psi_{\mathbf{I}}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{p(x)}} \left(c_r e^{iS(x)/\hbar + i\pi/4} + c_\ell e^{-iS(x)/\hbar - i\pi/4} \right)$$

  where c_r and c_ℓ represent the right-moving and left-moving waves.

- For the classically forbidden region, we define

$$K(x) = \int_{x_r}^{x} |p(x')|\, dx'$$

  to deal with only real quantities. Then the general WKB solution is

$$\psi_{\mathbf{II}}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{|p(x)|}} \left(c_g e^{K(x)/\hbar} + c_d e^{-K(x)/\hbar} \right)$$

  where the solutions grow and decay exponentially, respectively, as we go rightward.

- The connection formulas relate c_r and c_ℓ with c_g and c_d. Taylor expanding near the turning point, the Schrodinger equation is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} + V'(x_r)(x - x_r)\psi = 0.$$

  To nondimensionalize, we switch to the shifted and scaled variable z defined by

$$x = x_r + az, \quad a = \left(\frac{\hbar^2}{2mV'(x_r)} \right)^{1/3}, \quad \frac{d^2\psi}{dz^2} - z\psi = 0.$$

  This differential equation is called Airy's equation.

- The two independent solutions to Airy's equation are $\mathrm{Ai}(x)$ and $\mathrm{Bi}(x)$. They are the exact solutions of Schrodinger's equation for a particle in a uniform field, such a gravitational or electric field. Both oscillate for $z \ll 0$, and exponentially decay and grow for $z \gg 0$,

$$\mathrm{Ai}(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{\cos \alpha(z)}{\sqrt{\pi}(-z)^{1/4}} & z \ll 0 \\[3mm] \dfrac{e^{-\beta(z)}}{2\sqrt{\pi}z^{1/4}} & z \gg 0, \end{cases} \qquad \mathrm{Bi}(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{\sin \alpha(z)}{\sqrt{\pi}(-z)^{1/4}} & z \ll 0 \\[3mm] \dfrac{e^{\beta(z)}}{\sqrt{\pi}z^{1/4}} & z \gg 0, \end{cases}$$

  where

$$\alpha(z) = -\frac{2}{3}(-z)^{3/2} + \frac{\pi}{4}, \quad \beta(z) = \frac{2}{3}z^{3/2}$$

  as can be shown by the saddle point approximation.

- Let the solution near the turning point be

$$\psi_{\mathrm{tp}}(x) = c_a \,\mathrm{Ai}(z) + c_b \,\mathrm{Bi}(z).$$

  We first match this with the solution on the left. Writing the solution in terms of complex exponentials,

$$\psi_{\mathrm{tp}}(z) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi}(-z)^{1/4}}\left((c_a - ic_b)e^{i\alpha(z)} + (c_a + ic_b)e^{-i\alpha(z)}\right), \quad z \ll 0.$$

  On the other hand, the phase factors have been chosen so that in the linear approximation, the WKB solution is

$$\psi_{\mathbf{I}}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{p(x)}}\left(c_r e^{i\alpha(z)} + c_\ell e^{-i\alpha(z)}\right).$$

  Thus we read off the simple result

$$\frac{c_a - ic_b}{2\sqrt{\pi}} = \sqrt{\frac{a}{\hbar}}c_r, \quad \frac{c_a + ic_b}{2\sqrt{\pi}}\sqrt{\frac{a}{\hbar}}c_\ell.$$

- In the classically forbidden region, similar reasoning gives

$$\frac{c_a}{2\sqrt{\pi}} = \sqrt{\frac{a}{\hbar}}c_d, \quad \frac{c_b}{\sqrt{\pi}} = \sqrt{\frac{a}{\hbar}}c_g.$$

  Combining these results gives the connection formulas

$$\begin{pmatrix} c_g \\ c_d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} i & -i \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} c_r \\ c_\ell \end{pmatrix}.$$

- The analysis for a classically forbidden region on the left is very similar. On the left,

$$\psi_{\mathbf{III}}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{|p(x)|}}\left(c_g e^{K(x)/\hbar} + c_d e^{-K(x)/\hbar}\right), \quad K(x) = \int_{x_\ell}^{x} |p(x')|\,dx'$$

  and on the right,

$$\psi_{\mathbf{IV}}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{p(x)}}\left(c_r e^{iS(x)-i\pi/4} + c_\ell e^{-iS(x)-i\pi/4}\right), \quad S(x) = \int_{x_\ell}^{x} p(x')\,dx'$$

  where the phase factors are again chosen for convenience. Then we find

$$\begin{pmatrix} c_g \\ c_d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ -i & i \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} c_r \\ c_\ell \end{pmatrix}.$$

We now apply the connection formulas to some simple problems.

- First, consider a classically forbidden region for $x > x_r$ that is impenetrable. Then we must have $c_g = 0$ in this region, so $c_r = c_\ell$ and the wavefunction on the left is

$$\psi_{\mathbf{I}}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{p(x)}}(e^{iS(x)+i\pi/4} + e^{-iS(x)-i\pi/4}).$$

  Another way to write this is to match the phases at the turning point,

$$\psi_{\mathbf{I}}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{p(x)}}(e^{iS(x)} + re^{-iS(x)}), \quad r = -i.$$

  To interpret this, we picture the wave as accumulating phase $d\theta = p\,dx/\hbar$ as it moves. Then the reflection coefficient tells us the 'extra' phase accumulated due to the turning point, $-\pi/2$.

- Next, consider a oscillator with turning points x_ℓ and x_r. This problem can be solved by demanding exponential decay on both sides. Intuitively, the particle picks up a phase of

$$\frac{1}{\hbar}\oint p\,dx - \pi$$

  through one oscillation, so demanding the wavefunction be single-valued gives

$$2\pi I = \oint p\,dx = (n+1/2)h, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$$

  which is the Bohr–Sommerfeld quantization rule. The quantity I is proportional to the phase space area of the orbit, and called the action in classical mechanics. The semiclassical estimate for the energy of the state is just the energy of the classical solution with action I.

- In the case of the simple harmonic oscillator, we have

$$\oint p\,dx = \pi\sqrt{2mE}\sqrt{\frac{2E}{m\omega^2}} = \frac{2\pi E}{\omega}$$

  which yields

$$E_n = (n+1/2)\hbar\omega$$

  which are the exact energy eigenvalues; however, the energy eigenstates are not exact.

- We can also consider reflection from a hard wall, i.e. an infinite potential. In this case the right-moving and left-moving waves must cancel exactly at the wall, $c_\ell = -ic_r$, which implies that the reflected wave picks up a phase of $-\pi$.

- For example, the quantization condition for a particle in a box is

$$\oint p\,dx = (n+1)h, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$$

  and if the box has length L, then

$$E_n = \frac{(n+1)^2\hbar^2\pi^2}{2mL^2}$$

  which is the exact answer.

- Finally, we can have periodic boundary conditions, such as when a particle moves on a ring. Then there are no phase shifts at all, and the quantization condition is just $\oint p\,dx = nh$.

- Generally, we find that for a system with an n-dimensional configuration space, each stationary state occupies a phase space volume of h^n. This provides a quick way to calculate the density of states.

Note. Classical and quantum frequencies. The classical frequency ω_c is the frequency of the classical oscillation, and obeys $\omega_c = dE/dI$. The quantum frequency ω_q is the rate of change of the quantum phase. These are different; for the harmonic oscillator ω_c does not depend on n but ω_q does.

Now, when a quantum oscillator transitions between states with difference $\Delta\omega_q$ in quantum frequencies, it releases radiation of frequency $\Delta\omega_q$. On the other hand, we know that a classical particle oscillating at frequency ω_c radiates at frequency ω_c. To link these together, suppose a quantum oscillator has $n \gg 1$ and transitions with $\Delta n = -1$. Then

$$\Delta\omega_q = \frac{\Delta E}{\hbar} \approx \frac{\Delta E}{\Delta I} \approx \frac{dE}{dI} = \omega_c$$

which recovers the classical expectation. For higher Δn, radiation is released at multiples of ω_c. This also fits with the classical expectation, where these harmonics come from the higher Fourier components of the motion.

Note. The real Bohr model. Typically the Bohr model is introduced by the postulate that $L = n\hbar$ in circular orbits, but this is a simplification; Bohr actually had a better justification. By the correspondence principle as outlined above, we have $\Delta\omega_q = \omega_c$, and Planck had previously motivated $\Delta E = \hbar\Delta\omega_q$ for matter oscillators. If we assume circular orbits with radii r and $r - \Delta r$, these relations give $\Delta r = 2\sqrt{a_0 r}$, which implies that $r \propto n^2$ when $n \gg 1$. This is equivalent to $L = n\hbar$. Bohr's radical step is then to assume these results hold for all n.

6   Path Integrals

6.1   Formulation

- Define the propagator as the position-space matrix elements of the time evolution operator,

$$K(x, t; x_0, t_0) = \langle x|U(t, t_0)|x_0 \rangle.$$

   Then we automatically have $K(x, t_0; x_0, t_0) = \delta(x - x_0)$. Time evolution is computed by

$$\psi(x, t) = \int dx_0 \, K(x, t; x_0, t_0)\psi(x_0, t_0).$$

- Since we often work in the position basis, we distinguish the Hamiltonian operator acting on kets, $|H\rangle$ and the differential operator acting on wavefunctions, H. They are related by

$$\langle x|\hat{H}|\psi \rangle = H\langle x|\psi \rangle.$$

- Using the above, the time evolution of the propagator is

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial K(x, t; x_0, t_0)}{\partial t} = H(t)K(x, t; x_0, t_0)$$

   which means that $K(x, t)$ is just a solution to the Schrodinger equation with initial condition $\psi(x, t_0) = \delta(x - x_0)$. However, $K(x, t)$ is not a valid wave function; its initial conditions are quite singular, and non-normalizable. Since a delta function contains all momenta, $K(x, t)$ is typically nonzero for all x, for any $t > t_0$.

Example. The propagator for the free particle. Since the problem is time-independent, we set $t_0 = 0$ and drop it. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
K(x, x_0, t) &= \langle x| \exp(-it\hat{p}^2/2m\hbar)|x_0 \rangle \\
&= \int dp \, \langle x| \exp(-it\hat{p}^2/2m\hbar)|p\rangle \langle p|x_0 \rangle \\
&= \int \frac{dp}{2\pi\hbar} \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(p(x - x_0) - \frac{p^2 t}{2m} \right) \right] \\
&= \sqrt{\frac{m}{2\pi i\hbar t}} \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\frac{m(x - x_0)^2}{2t} \right)
\end{aligned}$$

where we performed a Gaussian integral. The limit $t \to 0$ is somewhat singular; we expect it is a delta function, yet the magnitude of the propagator is equal for all x. The resolution is that the phase oscillations in x get faster and faster, so that $K(x, t)$ behaves like a delta function when integrated against a test function.

The path integral is an approach for calculating the propagator in more complicated settings. We work with the Hamiltonian $H = T + V = p^2/2m + V(x)$, as more general Hamiltonians with higher powers of p are more difficult to handle.

- The time evolution for a small time ϵ is

$$U(\epsilon) = 1 - \frac{i\epsilon}{\hbar}(T + V) + O(\epsilon^2) = e^{-i\epsilon T/\hbar}e^{-i\epsilon V/\hbar} + O(\epsilon^2).$$

Therefore the time evolution for a time $t = N\epsilon$ is

$$U(t) = \left(e^{-i\epsilon T/\hbar} e^{-i\epsilon V/\hbar}\right)^N + O(1/N).$$

This is a special case of the Lie product formula; the error vanishes as $N \to \infty$.

- Using this decomposition, we insert the identity $N - 1$ times for

$$K(x, x_0, t) = \lim_{N \to \infty} \int dx_1 \dots dx_{N-1} \prod_{j=0}^{N-1} \langle x_{j+1}|e^{-i\epsilon T/\hbar} e^{-i\epsilon V/\hbar}|x_j\rangle, \quad x = x_N.$$

Within each factor, we insert a resolution of the identity in momentum space for

$$\int dp \, \langle x_{j+1}|e^{-i\epsilon \hat{p}^2/2m\hbar}|p\rangle\langle p|e^{-i\epsilon V(\hat{x})/\hbar}|x_j\rangle = \sqrt{\frac{m}{2\pi i\epsilon\hbar}} \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(m\frac{(x_{j+1} - x_j)^2}{2\epsilon} - \epsilon V(x_j)\right)\right]$$

where we performed a Gaussian integral almost identical to the free particle case. Then

$$K(x, x_0, t) = \lim_{N \to \infty} \left(\frac{m}{2\pi i\hbar\epsilon}\right)^{N/2} \int dx_1 \dots dx_{N-1} \exp\left[\frac{i\epsilon}{\hbar}\sum_{j=0}^{N-1}\left(m\frac{(x_{j+1} - x_j)^2}{2\epsilon^2} - V(x_j)\right)\right]$$

- Recognizing a Riemann sum, the above formula shows that

$$K(x, x_0, t) = C \int \mathcal{D}x(\tau) \, \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_0^t L \, d\tau\right)$$

where C is a normalization constant and $\mathcal{D}x(\tau)$ is the volume element in "path space".

- For each time interval Δt, the range of positions that contributes significantly to the amplitude is $\Delta x \sim \sqrt{\Delta t}$, since rapid oscillations cancel the contribution outside this range. This implies that typical path integral paths are continuous but not differentiable. This is problematic for the compact action integral notation above, since the Lagrangian formalism assumes differentiable paths, but we ignore it for now.

- If we don't perform the momentum integration, we get the phase space path integral,

$$K(x, x_0, t) = C \int \mathcal{D}x(\tau)\mathcal{D}p(\tau) \, \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\int_0^t (p\dot{x} - H) \, d\tau\right)$$

where x is constrained at the endpoints but p is not. This form is less common, but more general, as it applies even when the kinetic energy is not quadratic in momentum. In such cases the momentum integrals are not Gaussian and cannot be performed. Luckily, the usual path integral will work in all the cases we care about.

- The usual path integral can also accommodate terms linear in p, as these are shifted Gaussians; for example, they arise when coupling to a magnetic field, $p^2 \to (p - eA)^2$.

Note. In the relatively simple case of the point particle, we absorb infinities in the path integral with a divergent normalization constant. In quantum field theory, we usually think of this constant as $e^{i\Delta S}$, where ΔS is a "counterterm" contribution to the action. Typically, one chooses an energy cutoff Λ for the validity of the path integral, and shows that there is a way to vary ΔS with Λ so there is a well-defined limit $\Lambda \to \infty$. This is known as renormalization. We could also treat our path integral computations below in the same way, as a quantum mechanical path integral is just a quantum field theory where the operators have no space dependence, i.e. a one-dimensional quantum field theory. This point of view is developed further in the notes on Quantum Field Theory.

6.2 Gaussian Integrals

One of the strengths of the path integral is that it keeps classical paths in view; this makes it well-suited for semiclassical approximations. We first review some facts about Gaussian integration.

- The fundamental result for Gaussian integration is

$$\int dx \, e^{-ax^2/2} = \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{a}}, \quad \operatorname{Re} a > 0.$$

  All bounds of integration are implicitly from $-\infty$ to ∞. Differentiating this gives

$$\int dx \, e^{-ax^2/2} x^2 = \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{a^3}}.$$

- By completing the square and shifting,

$$\int dx \, e^{-ax^2/2+bx} = \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{a}} e^{b^2/2a}.$$

  This holds even for complex b, as we can shift the integration contour in the complex plane; this is legal since there are no singularities to hit.

- To generalize the Gaussian integral to complex arguments; the fundamental result is

$$\int d(\bar{z}, z) \, e^{-\bar{z}wz} = \frac{\pi}{w}, \quad \operatorname{Re} w > 0.$$

  Here, the notation $\int d(\bar{z}, z)$ is a formal notation that stands for $\int dx \, dy$ where $z = x + iy$ and $\bar{z} = x - iy$, and in practice, we always evaluate these integrals by breaking z into real and imaginary parts and doing the dx and dy integrals instead. (Note that, in terms of differential forms, $dz \, d\bar{z} = dx \, dy$ up a constant.)

- Similarly, by taking real/imaginary parts, we find

$$\int d(\bar{z}, z) \, e^{-\bar{z}wz + \bar{u}z + \bar{z}v} = \frac{\pi}{w} e^{\bar{u}v/w}, \quad \operatorname{Re} w > 0.$$

- The multidimensional generalization of the real Gaussian integral is

$$\int d\mathbf{v} \, e^{-\mathbf{v}^T A \mathbf{v}/2} = \sqrt{\frac{(2\pi)^N}{\det A}}$$

  where A must be positive definite and real. Then A is symmetric and can be diagonalized, separating the integral into N standard Gaussian integrals; the positive definiteness ensures that these integrals converge.

- Similarly, with a linear term in $\mathbf{v}$, we have

$$\int d\mathbf{v} \, \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{v}^T A \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{j}^T \mathbf{v}\right) = \sqrt{\frac{(2\pi)^N}{\det A}} \exp\left(\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{j}^T A^{-1} \mathbf{j}\right).$$

  This can be shown using the shift $\mathbf{v} \to \mathbf{v} + A^{-1}\mathbf{j}$.

- Next, we can differentiate the above identity with respect to j at $\mathbf{j} = 0$. But since

$$\partial_{j_m} e^{\mathbf{j}^T A^{-1} \mathbf{j}/2} = (A^{-1} \mathbf{j})_m e^{\mathbf{j}^T A^{-1} \mathbf{j}/2}$$

  the result vanishes for a single derivative when valuated at $\mathbf{j} = 0$. However, for two derivatives, we can get a nonzero result by differentiating the $A^{-1}\mathbf{j}$ term, giving

$$\int d\mathbf{v} \, e^{-\mathbf{v}^T A \mathbf{v}/2} v_m v_n = \sqrt{\frac{(2\pi)^N}{\det A}} A_{mn}^{-1}.$$

  Interpreting the Gaussian as a probability distribution, this implies

$$\langle v_m v_n \rangle = A_{mn}^{-1}.$$

  Similarly, for any even number of derivatives, we get a sum over all pairings,

$$\langle v_{i_1} \cdots v_{i_{2n}} \rangle = \sum_{\text{pairings}} A_{i_{k_1} i_{k_2}}^{-1} \cdots A_{i_{k_{2n-1}} i_{k_{2n}}}^{-1}.$$

  This is known as Wick's theorem.

- In the complex case, we have

$$\int d(\mathbf{v}^\dagger, \mathbf{v}) \, e^{-\mathbf{v}^\dagger A \mathbf{v}} = \frac{\pi^N}{\det A}$$

  where A must be positive definite. (The conclusion also holds if A only has positive definite Hermitian part.) With a linear term, we have

$$\int d(\mathbf{v}^\dagger, \mathbf{v}) \, e^{-\mathbf{v}^\dagger A \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}^\dagger \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{v}^\dagger \mathbf{w}'} = \frac{\pi^N}{\det A} e^{\mathbf{w}^\dagger A^{-1} \mathbf{w}'}.$$

  Similarly, we can take derivatives; to get nonzero results, we must pair derivatives with respect to v with derivatives with respect to $\bar{v}$. Then Wick's theorem is

$$\langle \bar{v}_{i_1} \cdots \bar{v}_{i_n} v_{j_1} \cdots v_{j_n} \rangle = \sum_{\text{perms}} A_{j_1 i_{P_1}}^{-1} \cdots A_{j_n i_{P_n}}^{-1}$$

  where the sum is over permutations of N integers.

- In the continuum limit, the vectors and matrices above become functions and operators, and the integral becomes a path integral, giving

$$\int \mathcal{D}v(x) \, \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \int dx \, dx' \, v(x) A(x, x') v(x') + \int dx \, j(x) v(x)\right)$$
$$\propto \frac{1}{\sqrt{\det A}} \exp\left(\frac{1}{2} \int dx \, dx' \, j(x) A^{-1}(x, x') j(x')\right).$$

  Here, A^{-1} is the Green's function for A, satisfying

$$\int dx' \, A(x, x') A^{-1}(x', x'') = \delta(x - x'')$$

  and we have thrown away some normalization factors, which drop out of averages. Wick's theorem generalizes to this case straightforwardly.

Note. We now review the stationary phase approximation. We consider the integral

$$\int dx\, e^{i\varphi(x)/\kappa}$$

for small κ. Then the integrand oscillates wildly except at points of stationary phase $\overline{x}$. Approximating the exponent as a quadratic there, we have a Gaussian integral, giving

$$\int dx\, e^{i\varphi(x)/\kappa} \approx \sqrt{\frac{2\pi i\kappa}{\varphi''(\overline{x})}} e^{i\varphi(\overline{x})/\kappa} = e^{i\nu\pi/4}\sqrt{\frac{2\pi\kappa}{|\varphi''(\overline{x})|}} e^{i\varphi(\overline{x})/\kappa}, \quad \nu = \mathrm{sign}(\varphi''(\overline{x}))$$

If there are multiple points of stationary phase, we must sum over each such point. Similarly, we can consider the multidimensional integral

$$\int d\mathbf{x}\, e^{i\varphi(\mathbf{x})/\kappa}$$

for small κ. Then the stationary points are where $\nabla\varphi = 0$. Expanding about these points and applying our multidimensional Gaussian formula,

$$\int d\mathbf{x}\, e^{i\varphi(\mathbf{x})/\kappa} = e^{i\nu\pi/4}(2\pi\kappa)^{n/2}\left|\det \frac{\partial^2\varphi(\overline{x})}{\partial x_k \partial x_l}\right|^{-1/2} e^{i\varphi(\overline{x})/\kappa}, \quad \nu = \sum_i \mathrm{sign}(\lambda_i).$$

To get the full result, we sum over all stationary points.

6.3   Semiclassical Approximation

Given this setup, we now apply the stationary phase approximation to the path integral.

- In this case, the small parameter is $\kappa = \hbar$ and the function is the discretized Lagrangian

$$\varphi(x_1, \ldots, x_{N-1}) = \epsilon \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \left(\frac{m}{2}\frac{(x_{j+1}-x_j)^2}{\epsilon^2} - V(x_j)\right).$$

Differentiating, we have

$$\frac{\partial\varphi}{\partial x_k} = \epsilon\left(\frac{m}{\epsilon^2}(2x_k - x_{k+1} - x_{k-1}) - V'(x_k)\right), \quad \frac{\partial^2\varphi}{\partial x_k \partial x_\ell} = \frac{m}{\epsilon}Q_{k\ell}$$

where the matrix $Q_{k\ell}$ is tridiagonal,

$$Q_{k\ell} = \begin{pmatrix} 2-c_1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & \ldots \\ -1 & 2-c_2 & -1 & 0 & \ldots \\ 0 & -1 & 2-c_3 & -1 & \ldots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{pmatrix}, \quad c_k = \frac{\epsilon^2}{m}V''(x_k).$$

- In the limit $N \to \infty$, the stationary points are simply the classical paths $\overline{x}(\tau)$, so

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \varphi(\overline{x}) = S(x, x_0, t).$$

In the case of multiple stationary paths, we add a branch index.

- Next, we must evaluate $\det Q$. This must combine with the path integral prefactor, which is proportional to $\epsilon^{-N/2}$, to give a finite result, so we expect $\det Q \propto 1/\epsilon$. The straightforward way to do this would be to diagonalize Q, finding eigenfunctions of the second variation of the action. However, we can do the whole computation in one go by a slick method.

- Letting D_k be the determinant of the upper-left $k \times k$ block, we have

$$D_{k+1} = (2 - c_{k+1})D_k - D_{k-1}.$$

This may be rearranged into a difference equation, which becomes, in the continuum limit

$$m\frac{d^2 F(\tau)}{d\tau^2} = -V''(\bar{x}(\tau))F(\tau), \quad F_k = \epsilon D_k.$$

We pulled out a factor of ϵ to make $F(\tau)$ regular, with initial conditions

$$F(0) = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0} \epsilon D_0 = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0} \epsilon = 0, \quad F'(0) = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0}(D_1 - D_0) = 1.$$

- The equation of motion for F is the equation of motion for a small deviation about the classical path, $x(\tau) = \bar{x}(\tau) + F(\tau)$, as the right-hand side is the linearized change in force. Thus $F(t)$ is the change in position at time t per unit change in velocity at $t = 0$, so

$$F(t) = \frac{\partial x}{\partial v_i} = m\left(\frac{\partial p_i}{\partial x}\right)^{-1} = -m\left(\frac{\partial^2 S}{\partial x_0 \partial x}\right)^{-1}.$$

This is regular, as expected, and we switch back to $D(t)$ by dividing by ϵ. Intuitively, this factor tells us how many paths near the original classical path contribute. In the case where $V''(\tau) < 0$, nearby paths rapidly diverge away, while for $V''(\tau) < 0$ a restoring force pushes them back, enhancing the contribution.

- Finally, we need the number of negative eigenvalues, which we call μ. It will turn out that μ approaches a definite limit as $N \to \infty$. In that limit, it is the number of perturbations of the classical path that further decrease the action, which is typically small.

- Putting everything together and restoring the branch index gives the Van Vleck formula

$$K(x, x_0, t) \approx \sum_b \frac{e^{-i\mu_b \pi/2}}{\sqrt{2\pi i\hbar}} \left|\frac{\partial^2 S_b}{\partial x \partial x_0}\right|^{1/2} \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}S_b(x, x_0, t)\right).$$

The van Vleck formula expands the action to second order about stationary paths. It is exact when the potential energy is at most quadratic, i.e. for a particle that is free, in a uniform electric or gravitational field, or in a harmonic oscillator. It is also exact for a particle in a magnetic field, since the Lagrangian remains at most quadratic in velocity.

Note. The van Vleck formula has a simple intuitive interpretation. It essentially states that

$$P(x, x_0) \propto \left|\frac{\partial^2 S}{\partial x \partial x_0}\right|.$$

By changing variables, we have

$$P(x, x_0) = \tilde{P}(x_0, p_0)\left|\frac{\partial p_0}{\partial x}\right| = \frac{1}{h}\left|\frac{\partial p_0}{\partial x}\right|$$

because the initial phase space distribution $\tilde{P}(x_0, p_0)$ must always fill a Planck cell. These two expressions are consistent since $p_0 = -\partial S/\partial x_0$.

Example. The free particle. In this case the classical paths are straight lines and

$$S = \frac{m\dot{x}^2 t}{2} = \frac{m(x - x_0)^2}{2t}.$$

The determinant factor is

$$\left| \frac{\partial^2 S}{\partial x \partial x_0} \right|^{1/2} = \sqrt{\frac{m}{t}}.$$

The second-order change in action would be the integral of $m(\delta\dot{x})^2/2$ which is positive definite, so $\mu = 0$. Putting everything together gives

$$K(x, x_0, t) = \sqrt{\frac{m}{2\pi i\hbar t}} \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar} \frac{m(x - x_0)^2}{2t} \right)$$

as we found earlier.

Example. Recovering the Schrodinger equation. For a small time $t = \epsilon$, we have

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}, \epsilon) = \psi(\mathbf{x}, 0) - \frac{i\epsilon}{\hbar} \left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 + V(\mathbf{x}) \right) \psi(\mathbf{x}, 0) + O(\epsilon^2).$$

Now we compare this to the path integral. Here we use a single timestep, so

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}, \epsilon) = \int d\mathbf{y}\, K(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}, \epsilon)\psi(\mathbf{y}, 0), \quad K(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}, 0) = \left(\frac{m}{2\pi i\hbar\epsilon} \right)^{3/2} \exp\left(\frac{i\epsilon}{\hbar} \left(\frac{m(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y})^2}{2\epsilon^2} - V(\mathbf{y}) \right) \right).$$

The expansion is a little delicate because of the strange dependence on ϵ. The key is to note that by the stationary phase approximation, most of the contribution comes from $\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y} = O(\epsilon^{1/2})$. We then expand everything to first order in ϵ, treating $\boldsymbol{\xi} = O(\epsilon^{1/2})$, for

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}, \epsilon) = \left(\frac{m}{2\pi i\hbar\epsilon} \right)^{3/2} \int d\boldsymbol{\xi}\, \exp\left(\frac{im\xi^2}{2\epsilon\hbar} \right) \left(1 - \frac{i\epsilon}{\hbar} V(\mathbf{x} + \boldsymbol{\xi}) + \dots \right)$$

$$\times \left(\psi(\mathbf{x}, 0) + \xi^i \partial_i \psi(\mathbf{x}, 0) + \frac{1}{2} \xi^i \xi^j \partial_i \partial_j \psi(\mathbf{x}, 0) + \dots \right).$$

where we cannot expand the remaining exponential since its argument is $O(1)$. Now we consider the terms in the products of the two expansions. The $O(1)$ term gives $\psi(\mathbf{x}, 0)$, as expected. The $O(\epsilon^{1/2})$ term gives zero because it is odd in ξ. The $O(\epsilon)$ term is

$$-\frac{i\epsilon}{\hbar} V(\mathbf{x})\psi(\mathbf{x}, 0) + \frac{1}{2} \xi^i \xi^j \partial_i \partial_j \psi(\mathbf{x}, 0).$$

The first of these terms is the potential term. The second term integrates to give the kinetic term. Finally, the $O(\epsilon^{3/2})$ term vanishes by symmetry, proving the result.

Example. Path integrals in quantum statistical mechanics. Since the density matrix is $\rho = e^{-\beta H}/Z$, we would like to compute the matrix elements of $e^{-\beta H}$. This is formally identical to what we've done before if we set $t = -i\hbar\beta$. Substituting this in, we have

$$\langle x | e^{-\beta H} | x_0 \rangle = \lim_{N \to \infty} \left(\frac{m}{2\pi\hbar\eta} \right)^{N/2} \int dx_1 \dots dx_{N-1} \exp\left(-\frac{\eta}{\hbar} \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \left(\frac{m(x_{j+1} - x_j)^2}{2\eta^2} + V(x_j) \right) \right)$$

where we have defined $\eta = \hbar\beta/N$, and $\epsilon = -i\eta$. The relative sign between the kinetic and potential terms has changed, so we have an integral for the Hamiltonian instead, and the integral is now damped rather than oscillatory. Taking the continuum limit, the partition function is

$$Z = C \int dx_0 \int \mathcal{D}x(u) \, \exp\left(-\frac{1}{\hbar} \int_0^{\beta\hbar} H \, du\right)$$

where the path integral is taken over paths with $x(0) = x(\beta\hbar) = x_0$. As a simple example, suppose that the temperature is high, so $\beta\hbar$ is small. Then the particle can't move too far from $x(0)$ in the short 'time' $u = \beta\hbar$, so we can approximate the potential as constant,

$$Z \approx C \int dx_0 \, e^{-\beta V(x_0)} \int \mathcal{D}x(u) \, \exp\left(-\frac{1}{\hbar} \int_0^{\beta\hbar} \frac{m}{2} \left(\frac{dx}{du}\right)^2 du\right) = \sqrt{\frac{m}{2\pi\beta\hbar^2}} \int dx_0 \, e^{-\beta V(x_0)}$$

where the last step used the analytically continued free particle propagator. This is the result from classical statistical mechanics, where Z is simply an integral of $e^{-\beta H}$ over phase space, but we can now find corrections order by order in $\beta\hbar$.

Example. The harmonic oscillator with frequency ω. This is somewhat delicate since some choices of (x_0, x, t) give infinitely many branches, or no branches at all. However, assuming we have chosen a set with exactly one branch, we can show

$$S(x, x_0, t) = \frac{m\omega}{2\sin(\omega t)}((x_0^2 + x^2)\cos(\omega t) - 2xx_0).$$

To find μ, note that we may write the second variation as

$$\delta S = \int d\tau \, \delta x(\tau) \left(-\frac{m}{2}\left(\frac{d^2}{d\tau^2} + \omega^2\right)\right) \delta x(\tau)$$

by integration by parts; hence we just need the number of negative eigenvalues of the operator above, where the boundary conditions are $\delta x(0) = \delta x(t) = 0$. The eigenfunctions are of the form $\sin(n\pi\tau/t)$ for positive integer n with eigenvalue $(n\pi/t)^2 - \omega^2$. Therefore the number of negative eigenvalues depends on the value of t, but for sufficiently small t there are none.

   Applying the Van Vleck formula gives the exact propagator,

$$K(x, x_0, t) = \sqrt{\frac{m\omega}{2\pi i\hbar\sin(\omega t)}} \exp(iS(x, x_0, t)/\hbar), \quad t < \pi/\omega.$$

Setting $t = -i\hbar\beta$ and simplifying gives the partition function

$$Z = \frac{e^{-\beta\hbar\omega/2}}{1 - e^{-\beta\hbar\omega}}$$

which matches the results from standard statistical mechanics.

Example. Operator ordering in the path integral. At the quantum level, operators generally do not commute, and their ordering affects the physics. But all the variables in the path integral appear to commute. It turns out that the operator ordering is determined by the discretization procedure. For example, for a particle in an electromagnetic field, the correct phase factor is

$$\exp\left(\frac{i\epsilon}{\hbar} \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \left(\frac{m(\mathbf{x}_{j+1} - \mathbf{x}_j)^2}{2\epsilon^2} + \frac{q}{c}\frac{\mathbf{x}_{j+1} - \mathbf{x}_j}{\epsilon} \cdot \mathbf{A}\left(\frac{\mathbf{x}_{j+1} + \mathbf{x}_j}{2}\right) - V(\mathbf{x}_j)\right)\right)$$

where V is evaluated as usual at the initial point, but $\mathbf{A}$ is evaluated at the midpoint. One can show this is the right choice by expanding order by order in ϵ as we did before. While the evaluation point of V doesn't matter, the evaluation point of $\mathbf{A}$ ensures that the path integral describes a Hamiltonian with term $\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{p}$.

Naively, the evaluation point can't matter because it makes no difference in the continuum limit. The issue is that the path integral paths are not differentiable, as we saw earlier, with $\boldsymbol{\xi} = O(\epsilon^{1/2})$ instead of $\boldsymbol{\xi} = O(\epsilon)$. The midpoint evaluation makes a difference at order $O(\xi^2) = O(\epsilon)$, which is exactly the term that matters. This subtlety is swept under the rug in the casual, continuum notation for path integrals.

In general there are various prescriptions for operator ordering, including normal ordering (used in quantum field theory) and Weyl ordering, which heuristically averages over all possible orders. However, we won't encounter any other Hamiltonians below for which this subtlety arises.

Note. If we take the path integral as primary, we can even use it to define the Hilbert space, by "cutting it open". Note that by the product property of the path integral,

$$K(x_f, x_0, t) = \int dx' \int_{x(0)=x_0}^{x(t')=x'} \mathcal{D}x(\tau)\, e^{iS} \int_{x(t')=x'}^{x(t)=x_f} \mathcal{D}x(\tau)\, e^{iS}.$$

The extra $\int dx'$ integral produced is an integral over the Hilbert space of the theory. In a more general setting, such as string theory, we can "cut open" the path integral in different ways, giving different Hilbert space representations of a given amplitude. This is known as world-sheet duality.

7 Angular Momentum

7.1 Classical Rotations

First, we consider rotations classically.

- Physical rotations are operators $\mathcal{R}$ that take spatial points to spatial points in an inertial coordinate system, preserving lengths and the origin.

- By taking coordinates, $\mathbf{r} = x_i \hat{\mathbf{e}}_i$, we can identify every spatial point with a 3-vector. As a result, we can identify rotation operators $\mathcal{R}$ with 3×3 rotation matrices R_{ij}. Under a rotation $\mathbf{r}' = R\mathbf{r}$, we have $x_i' = R_{ij} x_j$.

- We distinguish the physical rotations $\mathcal{R}$ and the rotation matrices R. The latter provide a representation of the former.

- It's also important to distinguish active/passive transformations. We prefer the active viewpoint; the passive viewpoint is tied to coordinate systems, so we can't abstract out to the geometric rotations $\mathcal{R}$.

- Using the length-preserving property shows $R^t = R^{-1}$, so the group of rotations is isomorphic to $O(3)$. From now on we specialize to proper rotations, with group $SO(3)$. The matrices R acting on $\mathbb{R}^3$ form the fundamental representation of $SO(3)$.

- Every proper rotation can be written as a rotation of an angle θ about an axis $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$, $\mathcal{R}(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta)$.

  Proof: every rotation has a unit eigenvalue because $\prod \lambda_i = 1$ and $|\lambda_i| = 1$. The corresponding eigenvalue is the axis. (Note that this argument fails in higher dimensions.)

- Working in the fundamental representation, we consider the infinitesimal elements $R = I + \epsilon A$. Then we require $A + A^t = 0$, so the (fundamental representation of the) Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}(3)$ contains antisymmetric matrices. One convenient basis is

$$(J_i)_{jk} = -\epsilon_{ijk}$$

  and we write an algebra element as $A = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{J}$.

- Using the above definition, we immediately find

$$(J_i J_j)_{jk} = \delta_{il}\delta_{kj} - \delta_{ij}\delta_{kl}$$

  which gives the commutation relations

$$[J_i, J_j] = \epsilon_{ijk} J_k, \quad [\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{J}, \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{J}] = (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{J}.$$

- We also immediately find that for an arbitrary vector $\mathbf{u}$,

$$A\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{u}$$

  Physically, we can picture $\mathbf{a}$ as specifying an angular velocity and $A\mathbf{u}$ as the resulting velocity of $\mathbf{u}$. This also shows that an infinitesimal axis-angle rotation is

$$R(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta) = I + \theta \hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \mathbf{J}, \quad \theta \ll 1.$$

  Exponentiating gives the result

$$R(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta) = \exp(\theta \hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \mathbf{J}).$$

- More generally, the set of infinitesimal elements of a Lie group is a Lie algebra, and we go between the two by taking exponentials, or differentiating paths through the origin (to get tangent vectors).

A group acts on itself by conjugation; this is called the adjoint action. The Lie algebra is closed under this operation, giving an action of the group on the algebra. Viewing the algebra as a vector space, this gives a representation of the Lie group on $V = \mathfrak{g}$ called the adjoint representation.

Example. In the case of $SO(3)$, the fundamental representation happens to coincide with the adjoint representation. To see this, note that

$$R(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{u}) = (R\mathbf{a}) \times (R\mathbf{u})$$

which simply states that the cross product transforms as a vector under rotations (it's actually a pseudovector). Then we find

$$R(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{J})\mathbf{u} = ((R\mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{J})R\mathbf{u}, \quad R(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{J})R^{-1} = (R\mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{J}.$$

This provides a representation of the Lie group, representing $\mathcal{R}$ as the operator that takes the vector $\mathbf{a}$ to $R\mathbf{a}$. This is just the fundamental representation, but viewed in a more abstract way – the vector space now contains infinitesimal rotations rather than spatial vectors.

Another statement of the above is that 'angular velocity is a vector'. This is not generally true; in $SO(2)$, it is a scalar and the adjoint representation is trivial; in $SO(4)$, the Lie group is six-dimensional, and the angular velocity is more properly a two-form.

Example. Variants of the adjoint representation. Exponentiating the above gives the formula for the adjoint action on the group,

$$R_0 R(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta) R_0^{-1} = R(R_0(\hat{\mathbf{n}}), \theta).$$

We can also derive the adjoint action of an algebra on itself, which yields a representation of the Lie algebra. First consider conjugation acting on an infinitesimal group element,

$$A(1 + \epsilon h)A^{-1} = 1 + \epsilon AhA^{-1}, \quad A \in G, \quad h \in \mathfrak{g}.$$

This shows that the adjoint action also conjugates algebra elements. Then if $A = 1 + \epsilon g$ with $g \in \mathfrak{g}$,

$$h \to (1 + \epsilon g)h(1 - \epsilon g) = h + \epsilon(gh - hg).$$

Taking the derivative with respect to ϵ to define the algebra's adjoint action, we find that g acts on h by sending it to $[g, h]$. Incidentally, this is also a proof that the Lie algebra is closed under commutators, since we know the algebra is closed under the adjoint action.

As a direct example, consider the matrix Lie group $SO(3)$. Since the operation is matrix multiplication, the commutator above is just the matrix commutator. Our above calculations shows that the adjoint action of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{so}(3)$ on itself is the cross product.

Note. Noncommutativity in the Lie group reflects a nontrivial Lie bracket. The first manifestation of this is the fact that

$$e^{tg}e^{th}e^{-tg}e^{-th} = 1 + t^2[g, h] + \dots$$

This tells us that a nonzero Lie bracket causes the corresponding group elements to not commute; as a simple example, the commutator of small rotations about $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$ is a rotation about $\hat{\mathbf{x}} \times \hat{\mathbf{y}} = \hat{\mathbf{z}}$. Conversely, the Lie bracket is zero, the commutator is zero.

Another form of the above statement is the Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff theorem, which is the matrix identity

$$e^X e^Y = e^Z, \quad Z = X + Y + \frac{1}{2}[X, Y] + \frac{1}{12}[X, [X, Y]] + \frac{1}{12}[Y, [Y, X]] + \dots$$

where all the following terms are built solely out of commutators of X and Y. Therefore, if we can compute the commutator in the algebra, we can in principle compute multiplication in the group.

The group $SO(3)$ is a compact connected three-dimensional manifold; it is also the configuration space for a rigid body, so wavefunctions for rigid bodies are defined on the $SO(3)$ manifold. As such, it's useful to have coordinates for it; one set is the Euler angles.

Note. The Euler angles. A rotation corresponds to an orientation of a coordinate system; therefore, we can specify a rotation uniquely by defining axes $\hat{\mathbf{x}}'$, $\hat{\mathbf{y}}'$, $\hat{\mathbf{z}}'$ that we would like to rotate our original axes into. Suppose the spherical coordinates of $\hat{\mathbf{z}}'$ in the original frame are α and β. Then the rotation

$$R(\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \alpha) R(\hat{\mathbf{y}}, \beta)$$

will put a vector originally pointing along $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ along $\hat{\mathbf{z}}'$. However, the $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$ axes won't be in the right place. To fix this, we can perform a pre-rotation about $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ before any of the other rotations; therefore, any rotation may be written as

$$R(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = R(\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \alpha) R(\hat{\mathbf{y}}, \beta) R(\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \gamma).$$

This is the *zyz* convention for the Euler angles. We see that α and γ range from 0 to 2π, while β ranges from 0 to π. The group manifold $SO(3)$, however, is not $S^1 \times S^1 \times [0, \pi]$. This is reflected in the fact that for extremal values of the angles, the Euler angle parametrization is not unique.

7.2   Representations of $\mathfrak{su}(2)$

Next we consider quantum spin, focusing on the case of spin $1/2$.

- Given a quantum mechanical system with an associated Hilbert space, we expect rotations R are realized by unitary operators $U(R)$ on the space. It is reasonable to expect that $R \to U(R)$ is a group homomorphism, so we have a representation of $SO(3)$ on the Hilbert space.

- Given a representation of a Lie group, we automatically have a representation of the Lie algebra. Specifically, we define

$$J_k = i\hbar \frac{\partial U(\boldsymbol{\theta})}{\partial \theta_k}\bigg|_{\boldsymbol{\theta}=0}$$

where $U(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ is the rotation with axis $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ and angle θ. Then we must have

$$[J_i, J_j] = i\hbar \epsilon_{ijk} J_k.$$

This can be shown directly by considering the commutator of infinitesimal rotations.

- The operators $\mathbf{J}$ generate rotations, the factor of i makes them Hermitian, and the factor of $\hbar$ makes them have dimensions of angular momentum. We hence define $\mathbf{J}$ to be the angular momentum operator of the system.

- With this definition, near-identity rotations take the form

$$U(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta) = 1 - \frac{i}{\hbar}\theta\hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \mathbf{J} + \dots, \quad U(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta) = \exp\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}\theta\hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \mathbf{J}\right).$$

Since we can recover a representation of the group by exponentiation, it suffices to find representations of the algebra, i.e. triplets of matrices that satisfy the above commutation relations.

- One possible representation is

$$\mathbf{J} = \frac{\hbar}{2}\boldsymbol{\sigma}$$

in which case

$$U(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta) = e^{-i\theta\hat{\mathbf{n}}\cdot\boldsymbol{\sigma}/2} = \cos\frac{\theta}{2} - i(\hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma})\sin\frac{\theta}{2}.$$

This gives the spin $1/2$ representation; it tells us how states transform under rotations.

- Even though the angular momentum of a spin $1/2$ particle is not a vector, we still expect that angular momentum behaves like a vector under rotations, in the sense that the expectation value $\langle\mathbf{J}\rangle$ transforms as a vector. Then we require

$$\langle U\psi|\boldsymbol{\sigma}|U\psi\rangle = \langle\psi|U^\dagger\boldsymbol{\sigma}U|\psi\rangle = R\langle\psi|\boldsymbol{\sigma}|\psi\rangle$$

which implies that

$$U^\dagger\boldsymbol{\sigma}U = R\boldsymbol{\sigma}.$$

This may be verified directly using our explicit formula for U above.

- The above formula is equivalent to our earlier adjoint formula. Inverting and dotting with $\mathbf{a}$, we find

$$U(\mathbf{a} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma})U^\dagger = (R\mathbf{a}) \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma}.$$

This is just another formula for the adjoint action; conjugation by the group takes $\mathbf{a}$ to $R\mathbf{a}$.

- Using our explicit formula above, we notice that

$$U(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, 2\pi) = -1.$$

This phase is physically observable; in neutron inferferometry, we may observe it by splitting a beam, rotating by a relative 2π, and recombining it. Then our representation is actually one-to-two. Mathematically, this tells us we actually want projective representations of $SO(3)$, which turns out to be equivalent to representations of $SU(2)$, the double cover of $SO(3)$. In the case of spin $1/2$, we're simply working with the fundamental representation of $SU(2)$.

- Using the definition of $SU(2)$, we find that for any $U \in SU(2)$,

$$U = x_0 + i\mathbf{x} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma}, \quad \sum x_i^2 = 1$$

so $SU(2)$ is topologically S^3. The x_i are called the Cayley-Klein parameters.

Note. Euler angle decomposition also works for spinor rotations, with

$$U(\hat{\mathbf{x}}, \theta) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\theta/2 & -i\sin\theta/2 \\ -i\sin\theta/2 & \cos\theta/2 \end{pmatrix}, U(\hat{\mathbf{y}}, \theta) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\theta/2 & -\sin\theta/2 \\ \sin\theta/2 & \cos\theta/2 \end{pmatrix}, U(\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \theta) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-i\theta/2} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{i\theta/2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then a general rotation may be written as

$$U(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = U(\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \alpha) U(\hat{\mathbf{y}}, \beta) U(\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \gamma)$$

where $\alpha \in [0, 2\pi]$, $\beta \in [0, \pi]$, $\gamma \in [0, 4\pi]$. The extended range of γ accounts for the double cover. To see that this gives all rotations, note that classical rotations R are a representation of spinor rotations U with kernel $\pm I$. Then with the extended range of γ, which provides the -1, we get everything.

Example. The ket $|+\rangle = (1, 0)$ points in the $+\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ direction, since $\langle+|\boldsymbol{\sigma}|+\rangle = \hat{\mathbf{z}}$ and $\sigma_z|+\rangle = |+\rangle$. Similarly, we can define the kets pointing in arbitrary directions as

$$|\hat{\mathbf{n}}, +\rangle = U|+\rangle.$$

Writing $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ in spherical coordinates and applying the Euler angle decomposition,

$$U = U(\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \alpha) U(\hat{\mathbf{y}}, \beta), \quad |\hat{\mathbf{n}}, +\rangle = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-i\alpha/2}\cos\beta/2 \\ e^{i\alpha/2}\sin\beta/2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Applying the adjoint formula, we have

$$\hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \boldsymbol{\sigma}|\hat{\mathbf{n}}, +\rangle = |\hat{\mathbf{n}}, +\rangle, \quad \langle\hat{\mathbf{n}}, +|\boldsymbol{\sigma}|\hat{\mathbf{n}}, +\rangle = \hat{\mathbf{n}}.$$

Then the expectation value of the spin along any direction perpendicular to $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ vanishes.

We now consider general representations of $\mathfrak{su}(2)$ on a Hilbert space. That is, we are looking for triplets of operators $\mathbf{J}$ satisfying the angular momentum commutation relations. Given these operators, we can recover the rotation operators by exponentiation; conversely, we can get back to the angular momentum operators by differentiation at $\boldsymbol{\theta} = 0$.

- Begin by constructing the operator

$$J^2 = J_1^2 + J_2^2 + J_3^2.$$

  which commutes with $\mathbf{J}$; such an operator is called a Casimir operator. As a result, J^2 commutes with any function of $\mathbf{J}$, including the rotation operators.

- Given the above structure, we consider simultaneous eigenkets $|am\rangle$ of J^2 and J_3, with eigenvalues $\hbar^2 a$ and $\hbar m$. Since J^2 and J_3 are Hermitian, a and m are real, and since J^2 is nonnegative definite, $a \geq 0$. For simplicity, we assume we are dealing with an irrep; physically, we can guarantee this by postulating that J^2 and J_3 form a CSCO.

- We introduce the ladder operators

$$J_\pm = J_1 \pm iJ_2, \quad [J_3, J_\pm] = \pm\hbar J_\pm, \quad [J_+, J_-] = 2\hbar J_3, \quad [J^2, J_\pm] = 0.$$

  They satisfy the relations

$$J^2 = \frac{1}{2}(J_+J_- + J_-J_+) + J_3^2, \quad J_-J_+ = J^2 - J_3(J_3 + \hbar), \quad J_+J_- = J^2 - J_3(J_3 - \hbar).$$

  In this setting, $J_\pm$ play a very similar formal role to a and $a^\dagger$ for the QHO.

- Next, as in the QHO, we investigate norms. We have

$$\langle am|J_-J_+|am\rangle = \hbar^2(a - m(m+1)) \geq 0$$

and similarly

$$\hbar^2(a - m(m-1)) \geq 0.$$

Therefore, we require $a \geq \max(m(m+1), m(m-1))$. If the maximum value of $|m|$ is j, the corresponding value of a is $j(j+1)$. For convenience, we switch to labeling the states by j and m values.

- Then our first equation above becomes

$$\langle jm|J_-J_+|jm\rangle = \hbar^2(j - m)(j + m + 1) \geq 0$$

where we have equality if $j = m$. (The other case is forbidden by our second equation.) Doing a similar analysis on the second equation, we conclude

$$J_+|jm\rangle = 0 \text{ iff } m = j, \quad J_-|jm\rangle = 0 \text{ iff } m = -j.$$

- Finally, using the commutation relations, we see that acting with $J_\pm$ doesn't change the j value, but raises/lowers m by 1. As a result, we conclude that $m - j$ is an integer; if not, we can keep applying the raising operator until our inequalities above are broken. Similarly, $m - (-j)$ is an integer. Therefore, $2j$ is an integer and $m = -j, \ldots, +j$. These are all of the irreps of $\mathfrak{su}(2)$.

Now that we've found all of the irreps, we turn to calculations and applications.

- Using our norm calculation above, we find

$$J_+|jm\rangle = \hbar\sqrt{(j-m)(j+m+1)}|j, m+1\rangle, \quad J_-|jm\rangle = \hbar\sqrt{(j+m)(j-m+1)}|j, m-1\rangle.$$

Above we used the phase freedom in the $|jm\rangle$ to set all possible phase factors to zero. Then

$$|jm\rangle = \sqrt{\frac{(j+m)!}{(2j)!(j-m)!}} \left(\frac{J_-}{\hbar}\right)^{j-m} |jj\rangle.$$

- Given the above, we know the matrix elements of $J_\pm$, as well as the matrix elements of J_3,

$$\langle j'm'|J_3|jm\rangle = \hbar\delta_{j'j}\delta_{m'm}m.$$

Then we can simply write down the matrix elements of all of the **J**, and hence the matrix of any function of **J**, including the rotation operators.

Note. The j values which appear must be determined separately for each physical situation. If we're considering central force motion of a particle, it turns out that only integral j matter. If we consider p-wave scattering, $j = 1$ appears. The spin state of a photon is (roughly) described by $j = 1$, but the spin state of two electrons is described by $j = 0, 1$.

Example. In the case $j = 1$, we have

$$J_3 = \hbar \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & \\ & & \\ & & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad J_+ = \hbar \begin{pmatrix} & \sqrt{2} & \\ & & \sqrt{2} \\ & & \end{pmatrix}.$$

Evaluating $e^{-2\pi i J_3/\hbar}$, we find that a rotation by 2π is the identity. In general, for integer j, we end up with a normal representation of $SO(3)$, rather than a projective one.

Note. Reading a table of rotation matrices. The operator $U(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta)$ has matrix elements

$$D^j_{m'm}(U) = \langle jm' | U | jm \rangle.$$

Note that U must be diagonal in j-space, so we aren't missing any information here. We think of the $D^j_{m'm}$ as a set of matrices indexed by j. Parametrizing a rotation by Euler angles as above,

$$D^j_{mm'}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = \langle jm | e^{-i\alpha J_z/\hbar} e^{-i\beta J_y/\hbar} e^{-i\gamma J_z/\hbar} | jm' \rangle.$$

It is straightforward to expand this since J_z is diagonal, giving

$$D^j_{mm'}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = e^{-i\alpha m - i\gamma m'} d^j_{mm'}(\beta), \quad d^j_{mm'}(\beta) = \langle jm | e^{-i\beta J_y/\hbar} | jm \rangle.$$

Here, $d^j_{mm'}(\beta)$ is the reduced rotation matrix. Using tables of $d^j_{mm'}$ values, we may construct rotation matrices for arbitrary spin.

The D^j matrices have numerous properties which aid calculation. We can view them as a representation of the U operators; the distinction is that while the U operators act on a physical Hilbert space, the D^j matrices are just numbers acting on vectors of numbers. Since U is unitary, and we are using the orthonormal basis $|jm\rangle$, the D^j are also unitary. These two properties imply

$$D^j_{mm'}(U^{-1}) = D^{j*}_{m'm}(U).$$

This is one of several symmetries of the D matrices.

Note. Multiple copies of the same irrep. If we have just one copy of an irrep, we construct an orthonormal basis for it by starting with $|jm\rangle$ for $m = j$ and acting with J_-. Similarly, if there are many copies, we may pick an orthonormal basis for the $m = j$ subspace, labeling the vectors by γ, and carry them down with J_-. We write the resulting basis vectors as $|\gamma jm\rangle$, and all matrix elements defined above are identical except for a factor of $\delta_{\gamma'\gamma}$. In particular, the $D^j_{mm'}$ matrices still suffice to calculate everything we need.

Note. The adjoint formula carries over, becoming

$$U\mathbf{J}U^\dagger = R^{-1}\mathbf{J}.$$

Here, $\mathbf{J} = \hat{J}_i \mathbf{e}_i$ is a vector of operators; the U operates on the $\hat{J}_i$ and the R operates on the $\mathbf{e}_i$. The formula can be proven by considering infinitesimal rotations and building them up; for an infinitesimal rotation $U(\hat{n}, \theta)$ with $\theta \ll 1$, the left-hand side is

$$\mathbf{J} - \frac{i\theta}{\hbar}[\hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \mathbf{J}, \mathbf{J}].$$

The commutator is equal to

$$[n_i J_i, J_j \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j] = i\hbar\epsilon_{ijk} n_i \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j J_k = -i\hbar\hat{\mathbf{n}} \times \mathbf{J}.$$

Therefore, the left-hand side is $\mathbf{J} - \theta\hat{\mathbf{n}} \times \mathbf{J}$, which is simply the infinitesimal spatial rotation R^{-1}.

Note. For higher spin, we can define a spin state to be "pointing" in the $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ direction if it is an eigenket of $\mathbf{J} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{n}}$ with maximum eigenvalue. As for spin $1/2$, if $R\hat{\mathbf{n}} = \hat{\mathbf{n}}'$, then by the adjoint formula, $U(R)$ maps the spin state pointing in the $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ direction to the spin state pointing in the $\hat{\mathbf{n}}'$ direction.

But what's different is that for higher spin, most states are not "pointing" in any direction at all. For example, for a spin 1 particle, the state $(0, 1, 0)$ has $\langle \mathbf{J} \rangle = 0$. That means that since the state $(1, 0, 0)$ points "up", there is no rotation $U(R)$ that maps $(1, 0, 0)$ to $(0, 1, 0)$ at all. This is generic for spin higher than $1/2$, i.e. the action of the $U(R)$ on the spin states can't be transitive, since the dimension of $SU(2)$ is less than the (real) dimension of the state space. (This is compatible with the spin representations being irreps, as that only requires that the *span* of the entire orbit of each vector is the whole representation.)

7.3   Spin and Orbital Angular Momentum

Next, we turn to physical realizations of angular momentum in quantum mechanics. We first consider the case of spins in a magnetic field.

- The Hamiltonian of a magnetic moment $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ in a magnetic field $\mathbf{B}$ is $H = -\boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{x})$, both classically and in quantum mechanics. Magnetic moments obey

$$F = -\nabla U = \nabla(\boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B}), \quad \boldsymbol{\tau} = \boldsymbol{\mu} \times \mathbf{B}.$$

- Experimentally, we find that for nuclei and elementary particles, $\boldsymbol{\mu} \propto \mathbf{J}$, and the relevant state space is just a single copy of a single irrep of $\mathfrak{su}(2)$.

- For a classical current loop with total mass m and charge q, we can show that

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = \frac{q}{2mc}\mathbf{L}.$$

The coefficient is called the gyromagnetic ratio γ. For general configurations, $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ and $\mathbf{L}$ need not be proportional, since the former depends only on the current distribution while the latter depends only on the mass distribution. However, the relation does hold for orbital angular momentum in quantum mechanics, as we'll justify below.

- For spin, the relation above holds with a modified gyromagnetic ratio,

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = g\frac{q}{2mc}\mathbf{S}.$$

For electrons, $\mu_B = e/2mc$ is called the Bohr magneton, and $g \approx 2$.

- For nuclei, the magnetic moment must be determined experimentally. Since many nuclei are neutral but still have magnetic moments, it is useful to define the g-factors in terms of the nuclear magneton,

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = g\mu_N \mathbf{S}, \quad \mu_N = \frac{q}{2m_p c}$$

where q is the elementary charge and m_p is the proton mass. For the proton and neutron,

$$g_p \approx 5.56, \quad g_n \approx -3.83.$$

Note the factors of 2. When we take magnitudes, μ_N gives a $1/2$, $\mathbf{S}$ gives a $1/2$, and for electrons only, g gives a 2.

- The magnetic moment of the proton comes from a mix of the spin and orbital motion of the quarks and gluons. Similarly, the magnetic moment of the deuteron (one proton and one neutron) comes from a combination of the magnetic moments of the proton and neutron, and the orbital motion of the proton. For spin zero particles, like the α particle, $\mathbf{S} = 0$, so $\boldsymbol{\mu} = 0$.

We now show why the experimental facts above make sense.

- Assuming rotational invariance, $[H, \mathbf{J}] = 0$, the spectrum of the Hamiltonian is split into irreps each containing $2j + 1$ degenerate states. Now, since accidental degeneracies are very unlikely, the irreps won't be degenerate; instead, they will be separated by energies on the nuclear energy scale. This energy scale is much larger than the splitting within each irrep induced by an external field; therefore, if the nucleus starts in the ground state, it suffices to only consider the lowest-energy irrep. (While additional symmetries can cause more degeneracies, such symmetries are not generic.)

- The above argument explains the situation for nuclei. For fundamental particles, the reason there isn't degeneracy of different j is that no symmetries besides supersymmetry can relate particles of different j. This is the Coleman–Mandula theorem, and its proof requires relativistic quantum field theory.

- Supposing that a single irrep is relevant, we will show below that every vector operator (i.e. triplet of operators transforming as a vector) is a multiple of $\mathbf{J}$. Since $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ is a vector, $\boldsymbol{\mu} \propto \mathbf{J}$.

- In the case of atoms, the irreps are much closer together, as the atomic energy scale is much smaller than the nuclear energy scale. In this case we do see mixing of irreps for sufficiently strong fields, such as in the strong field Zeeman effect. Each irrep has its own g-factor, so that the total $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ is no longer proportional to the total angular momentum, recovering the classical behavior.

We now consider the example of a spinless particle in three-dimensional space. We again assume rotational symmetry, which in this case means $V = V(r)$.

- We can define angular momentum as $\mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{p}$, but instead we define it as the generator of rotations, which is more fundamental. Let

$$U(R)|\mathbf{x}\rangle = |R\mathbf{x}\rangle.$$

Then it's straightforward to check the $U(R)$ are a unitary representation of $SO(3)$.

- Wavefunctions transform as

$$\psi'(\mathbf{x}) = \psi(R^{-1}\mathbf{x}) \text{ where } |\psi'\rangle = U(R)|\psi\rangle.$$

One way of remembering this rule is to note that if the rotation takes $\mathbf{x}$ to $\mathbf{x}'$, then we must have $\psi'(\mathbf{x}') = \psi(\mathbf{x})$. This rule is necessary in the active point of view, which we take throughout these notes.

- To find the form of the $\mathbf{L}$ operators, we substitute infinitesimal rotations

$$R(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta) = 1 + \theta\hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \mathbf{J}, \quad U(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta) = 1 - \frac{i}{\hbar}\theta\hat{\mathbf{n}} \cdot \mathbf{L}$$

into the above relation, where $\mathbf{J}$ contains the generators of the fundamental representation of $\mathfrak{so}(3)$, as defined earlier. Equating first-order terms in θ, we have

$$\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}\theta\hat{\mathbf{n}}\cdot\mathbf{L}\right)\psi(\mathbf{x}) = -\theta(\hat{\mathbf{n}}\times\mathbf{x})\cdot\nabla\psi$$

where we used the property $(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{J})\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{u}$. Simplifying,

$$(\hat{\mathbf{n}}\cdot\mathbf{L})\psi = (\hat{\mathbf{n}}\times\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{p}\psi = \hat{\mathbf{n}}\cdot(\mathbf{x}\times\mathbf{p})$$

which implies $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{x}\times\mathbf{p}$ as expected.

- Note that in this context, $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{p}$ don't have ordering issues. For example, we have

$$\mathbf{x}\times\mathbf{p} = -\mathbf{p}\times\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{p}\cdot\mathbf{L} = 0.$$

The reason is that there are only nonzero commutators between x_i and the same component of momentum p_i, and the cross products prevent components from matching.

- We now find the standard angular momentum basis $|lm\rangle$ in the position basis. That is, we are looking for wavefunctions $\psi_{lm}(\mathbf{x})$ such that

$$L^2\psi_{lm} = \hbar^2 l(l+1)\psi_{lm}, \quad L_z\psi_{lm} = \hbar m\psi_{lm}.$$

The easiest way to start is with the stretched state $m = l$, satisfying

$$L_z\psi_{ll} = l\hbar\psi_{ll}, \quad L_+\psi_{ll} = 0.$$

- We know the L_i in Cartesian coordinates; switching to spherical coordinates, we find

$$L_z = -i\hbar\partial_\phi, \quad L_\pm = -i\hbar e^{\pm i\phi}\left(\pm i\partial_\theta - \cot\theta\partial_\phi\right)$$

and

$$L^2 = -\hbar^2\left(\frac{1}{\sin\theta}\partial_\theta(\sin\theta\partial_\theta) + \frac{1}{\sin^2\theta}\partial_\phi^2\right).$$

That is, L^2 is just the spherical Laplacian, up to a constant factor.

- We notice that ∂_r appears nowhere above, which makes sense since angular momentum generates rotations, which keep r constant. Therefore, it suffices to find wavefunctions on the unit sphere, $f(\theta,\phi) = f(\hat{\mathbf{r}})$. We define their inner product by

$$\langle f|g\rangle = \int d\Omega\, f(\theta,\phi)^* g(\theta,\phi), \quad d\Omega = \sin\theta\, d\theta d\phi.$$

As an example, the state $|\mathbf{r}\rangle$ has angular wavefunction $\delta(\theta-\theta_0)\delta(\phi-\phi_0)/\sin\theta$, where the sine cancels the Jacobian factor in $d\Omega$.

- The solutions for the ψ_{lm} on the sphere are the spherical harmonics Y_{lm}. Using the definition of L_z, we have $Y_{lm}\propto e^{im\phi}$. After solving for Y_{ll}, we apply the lowering operator to find

$$Y_{lm}(\theta,\phi) = \frac{(-1)^l}{2^l l!}\sqrt{\frac{2l+1}{4\pi}\frac{(l+m)!}{(l-m)!}}\frac{e^{im\phi}}{\sin^m\theta}\left(\frac{d}{d(\cos\theta)}\right)^{l-m}\sin^{2l}\theta.$$

Here, the choice of phase factor $(-1)^l$ is conventional and makes Y_{l0} real and positive at the North pole. The $(l+m)!/(l-m)!$ normalization factor comes from the application of L_-.

- We may also write the θ dependence in terms of the Legendre polynomials, which can be given by the Rodriguez formula

$$P_l(x) = \frac{(-1)^l}{2^l l!} \frac{d^l}{dx^l} (1 - x^2)^l,$$

and the associated Legendre functions

$$P_{lm}(x) = (1 - x^2)^{m/2} \frac{d^m P_l(x)}{dx^m}.$$

This yields

$$Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi) = (-1)^m \sqrt{\frac{2l + 1}{4\pi} \frac{(l + m)!}{(l - m)!}} e^{im\phi} P_{lm}(\cos\theta), \quad m \geq 0$$

where the $m < 0$ spherical harmonics are related by

$$Y_{l,-m} = (-1)^m Y_{lm}^*.$$

- In the above analysis, we have found that precisely one copy of each integer irrep appears, since the solution to $L_+ \psi_{ll} = 0$ is unique for each l. For a particle in three-dimensional space, the Y_{lm} will be multiplied by a function $u(r)$. Then multiple copies of each irrep may appear, depending on how many solutions there are for $u(r)$, and we must index the states by a third quantum number (e.g. n for the hydrogen atom).

- The spherical harmonics are then our standard angular momentum basis $|lm\rangle$. We can find an identity by computing $\langle \hat{\mathbf{r}} | U(R) | lm \rangle$ in two different ways. Acting on the right, we have $Y_{lm}(R^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{r}})$. Alternatively, we may insert an identity for

$$\sum_{m'} \langle \hat{\mathbf{r}} | lm' \rangle \langle lm' | U(R) | lm \rangle = \sum_{m'} Y_{lm'}(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) D_{m'm}^l(R).$$

Here, we only needed to insert states with the same l since they form an irrep. Then

$$Y_{lm}(R^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{r}}) = \sum_{m'} Y_{lm'}(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) D_{m'm}^l(R).$$

- One useful special case of the above is to choose $\hat{\mathbf{r}} = \hat{\mathbf{z}}$ and replace R with R^{-1}, for

$$Y_{lm}(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) = \sum_{m'} Y_{lm'}(\hat{\mathbf{z}}) D_{m'm}^l(R^{-1})$$

where R is the rotation that maps $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ to $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$, i.e. the one with Euler angles $\alpha = \phi$ and $\beta = \theta$. Moreover, only the $m = 0$ spherical harmonic is nonzero at $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ (because of the centrifugal force), and plugging it in gives

$$Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi) = \sqrt{\frac{2l + 1}{4\pi}} D_{m0}^{l*}(\phi, \theta, 0)$$

where we applied the unitarity of the D matrices.

- For a multiparticle system, with state space $|\mathbf{x}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_n\rangle$, the angular momentum operator is $\mathbf{L} = \sum \mathbf{x}_i \times \mathbf{p}_i$. To construct the angular momentum basis, we use addition of angular momentum techniques, as discussed later.

Note. A few examples of spherical harmonics.

$$Y_{00} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi}}, \quad Y_{11} = -\sqrt{\frac{3}{8\pi}}\sin\theta\,e^{i\phi}, \quad Y_{10} = \sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}}\cos\theta, \quad Y_{1,-1} = \sqrt{\frac{3}{8\pi}}\sin\theta\,e^{-i\phi},$$

$$Y_{22} = \sqrt{\frac{15}{32\pi}}\sin^2\theta\,e^{2i\phi}, \quad Y_{21} = -\sqrt{\frac{15}{8\pi}}\sin\theta\cos\theta\,e^{i\phi}, \quad Y_{20} = \sqrt{\frac{5}{16\pi}}(3\cos^2\theta - 1),$$

$$Y_{2,-1} = \sqrt{\frac{15}{8\pi}}\sin\theta\cos\theta\,e^{-i\phi}, \quad Y_{2,-2} = \sqrt{\frac{15}{32\pi}}\sin^2\theta\,e^{-2i\phi}.$$

It is sometimes useful to write the spherical harmonics in Cartesian coordinates. Note that our explicit expression for Y_{lm} gives

$$r^l Y_{ll}(\theta,\phi) = \frac{(-1)^l}{2^l l!}\sqrt{\frac{(2l+1)!}{4\pi}}(x+iy)^l.$$

The right-hand side is a homogeneous polynomial of degree l. The other spherical harmonics can be found by applying the operator operator, which in Cartesian coordinates is

$$L_- = L_x - iL_y = -i\hbar\left((y\partial_z - z\partial_y) - i(z\partial_x - x\partial_z)\right)$$

which implies that $r^l Y_{lm}$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree l. In this representation, it is also easy to see that the parity of Y_{lm} is $(-1)^l$.

7.4   Central Force Motion

We now apply the results of the previous section to central force motion.

- Consider a spinless particle moving in a central potential. Since L^2 and L_z commute with H, the eigenstates are of the form

$$\psi(r,\theta,\phi) = R(r)Y_{lm}(\theta,\phi).$$

Substituting this into the Schrodinger equation, and noting that L^2 is $-\hbar^2/r^2$ times the angular part of the Laplacian, we have

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\frac{1}{r^2}\partial_r(r^2\partial_r R) + UR = ER, \quad U(r) = V(r) + \frac{l(l+1)\hbar^2}{2mr^2}$$

where the extra contribution to the effective potential $U(r)$ is equal to $L^2/2mr^2$. As in the classical case, this is the angular part of the kinetic energy.

- Next, we let $f(r) = rR(r)$. This is reasonable, because then $|f|^2$ gives the radial probability density, so we expect this should simplify the radial kinetic energy term. Indeed we have

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\frac{d^2 f(r)}{dr^2} + U(r)f(r) = Ef(r), \quad \int_0^\infty dr\,|f(r)|^2 = 1.$$

The resulting equation looks just like the regular 1D Schrodinger equation, but on $(0,\infty)$.

- We could also have arrived at this conclusion using separation of variables. Generally, this technique works when there is a continuous symmetry. Then the (differential) operator that generates this symmetry commutes with the Hamiltonian, and we can take the eigenfunctions to be eigenfunctions of that operator. In an appropriate coordinate system (i.e. when fixing some of the coordinates gives an orbit of the symmetry) this automatically gives separation of variables; for example, L_z generates rotations which change only ϕ, so diagonalizing L_z separates out the coordinate ϕ.

- As another example, the free particle separates in Cartesian coordinates by conservation of linear momentum. The hydrogen atom has a hidden $SO(4)$ symmetry, so it can be separated in confocal parabolic coordinates, in addition to spherical coordinates.

- We index the radial solutions for a given l by n, giving

$$\psi_{nlm}(r, \theta, \phi) = R_{nl}(l)Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi).$$

These account for the bound states; there also may be unbound states with a continuous spectrum. Focusing on just the bound states, the irreps are indexed by n and l and each contain $2l + 1$ states.

- There generally is no degeneracy in l unless there is additional symmetry; this occurs for the hydrogen atom (hidden $SO(4)$ symmetry, generated by **L** and the Laplace–Runge–Lenz vector **A**) and the 3D harmonic oscillator ($SU(3)$ symmetry, where the eight generators are $a_i^\dagger a_j$, and the trace $\sum_i a_i^\dagger a_i$ is not included because it is the Hamiltonian itself).

- The hydrogen atom's energy levels are also degenerate in m_s. This is simply because nothing in the Hamiltonian depends on the spin, but in terms of symmetries, it is because there are two independent $SU(2)$ rotational symmetries, which act on the orbital or spin parts alone.

- Next, we consider degeneracy in n, i.e. degenerate eigenfunctions $f(r)$ of the same effective potential. These eigenfunctions satisfy the same Schrodinger equation (with the same energy E and effective potential $U(r)$), so there can be at most two of them, as the Schrodinger equation is second-order. However, as we'll show below, we must have $f(0) = 0$, which effectively removes one degree of freedom – eigenfunctions are solely determined by $f'(0)$. Therefore there is only one independent solution for each energy, bound or not, so different values of n are nondegenerate. (In the bound case, we can also appeal to the fact that f vanishes at infinity.) Therefore we conclude that irreps are generically nondegenerate.

- We now consider the behavior of $R(r)$ for small r. If $R(r) \sim ar^k$ for small r, then the terms in the reduced (1D) Schrodinger equation scale as:

    - Radial kinetic energy: $-a(\hbar^2/2m)k(k+1)r^{k-2}$.
    - Centrifugal potential: $a(\hbar^2/2m)l(l+1)r^{k-2}$.
    - Potential energy: $aV(r)r^k$.
    - Right-hand side: aEr^k.

If we suppose the potential is regular at the origin and diverges no faster than $1/r$, then the last two terms are negligible. Then for the equation to remain true, the first two terms must cancel, so

$$k(k+1) = l(l+1), \quad k = l \text{ or } k = -l - 1.$$

The second solution is nonnormalizable for $l \geq 1$, so we ignore it. For $l = 0$, it gives $R(r) \propto 1/r$, which is the solution for the delta function potential, which we have ruled out by regularity. (However, this kind of solution could be relevant in problems with very short-range potentials.) Therefore the first solution is physical,

$$R(r) \sim r^l \text{ for small r}$$

and hence $f(0) = 0$ in general.

Now we consider some important examples of central force motion.

Example. Two-body interactions. Suppose that two massive bodies interact with Hamiltonian

$$H = \frac{p_1^2}{2m_1} + \frac{p_2^2}{2m_2} + V(|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2|).$$

In this case it's convenient to switch to the coordinates

$$\mathbf{R} = \frac{m_1 \mathbf{x}_1 + m_2 \mathbf{x}_2}{M}, \quad \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_1$$

where $M = m_1 + m_2$. Defining the conjugate momenta $\mathbf{P} = -i\hbar\partial_{\mathbf{R}}$ and $\mathbf{p} = -i\hbar\partial_{\mathbf{r}}$, we have

$$\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{p}_2, \quad \mathbf{p} = \frac{m_1 \mathbf{p}_2 - m_2 \mathbf{p}_1}{M}.$$

This transformation is an example of a canonical transformation, as it preserves the canonical commutation relations. The Hamiltonian becomes

$$H = \frac{P^2}{2M} + \frac{p^2}{2\mu} + V(r), \quad \frac{1}{\mu} = \frac{1}{m_1} + \frac{1}{m_2}.$$

We see that $P^2/2M$ commutes with H, so we can separate out the variable R, giving the overall center-of-mass motion. We then focus on the wavefunction of the relative coordinate, $\psi(\mathbf{r})$. This satisfies the same equation as a single particle in a central force, with m replaced with μ.

Finally, we may decompose the total angular momentum $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{L}_1 + \mathbf{L}_2$ into

$$\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{P} + \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p}$$

which is a "orbit" plus "spin" (really, "relative") contribution, just as in classical mechanics. The relative contribution commutes with the relative-coordinate Hamiltonian $p^2/2\mu + V(r)$, so the quantum numbers l and m in the solution for $\psi(\mathbf{r})$ refer to the angular momentum of the particles in their CM frame.

Example. The rigid rotor. Consider two masses m_1 and m_2 connected with a massless, rigid rod of length r_0. The Hamiltonian is

$$H = \frac{L^2}{2I}, \quad I = \mu r_0^2.$$

Since the length r_0 is fixed, there is no radial dependence; the solution is just

$$E_l = \frac{l(l+1)\hbar^2}{2\mu r_0^2}, \quad \psi_{lm}(\theta, \phi) = Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi).$$

This can also be viewed as a special case of the central force problem, with a singular potential.

Note. Another, more mundane example of hidden symmetry is in the two-dimensional infinite square well. The energy eigenstates are parametrized by integers $|n_1, n_2\rangle$, and the energy is proportional to $n_1^2 + n_2^2$, so most energy levels are two-fold degenerate. The system obviously has the geometric symmetry of the square, and the corresponding discrete symmetry group C_{4v} does have two-dimensional irreps. But most degenerate pairs of states $|n_1, n_2\rangle \pm |n_2, n_1\rangle$ lie in separate one-dimensional irreps, so more symmetry is needed to explain the degeneracy.

The additional symmetry we need is "dynamical", in the sense that it is not obvious from the geometry but just happens to be conserved in the dynamics. We note that when a particle hits the walls, it flips the sign of p_x or p_y. (Here we are glossing over some difficulties with rigorously defining these operators.) Therefore, p_x^2 and p_y^2 are conserved separately. Their sum is just the Hamiltonian, but the difference $p_x^2 - p_y^2$ is an independent symmetry generator, giving a symmetry group $U(1) \rtimes C_{4v}$. Because this new operator links $|n_1, n_2\rangle + |n_2, n_1\rangle$ and $|n_1, n_2\rangle - |n_2, n_1\rangle$, it explains the remaining degeneracy.

We could consider more complex examples, but at some point this becomes an empty mathematical game. For example, suppose that in any problem whatsoever, $|n\rangle$ and $|m\rangle$ are "accidentally" degenerate energy eigenstates. Then we can *always* explain it by defining two "dynamical" symmetry generators which act as

$$Q_1|n\rangle = |m\rangle, \quad Q_1|m\rangle = |n\rangle, \quad Q_2|n\rangle = |n\rangle, \quad Q_2|m\rangle = -|m\rangle$$

and trivially on other states. These operators commute with the Hamiltonian by construction, and $\{|n\rangle, |m\rangle\}$ form a two-dimensional irrep of the corresponding symmetry group. But we've gained no new insight into the problem unless Q_1 and Q_2 are operators we care about for other reasons.

Next, we consider diatomic molecules.

- For a typical diatomic molecule, such as CO, the reduced mass is on the order of several times the atomic mass, so the rotational energy levels are much more closely spaced than the atomic levels. (Here, we treat the two atoms as point particles; this is justified by the Bohr-Oppenheimer approximation, which works because the atomic degrees of freedom are faster, i.e. higher energy.) There are also vibrational degrees of freedom due to oscillations in the separation distance between the atoms.

- To estimate the energy levels of the vibrational motion, we use dimensional analysis on the parameters m, e, and $\hbar$, where m and e are the mass and charge of the electron; this is reasonable because valence electrons are responsible for bonding. We don't use c, as the situation is nonrelativistic.

- We find the following units:

  - If we include relativistic corrections, a dimensionless parameter appears: the fine structure constant. In SI units, it is

    $$\alpha = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 \hbar c} \approx \frac{1}{137}.$$

    In Gaussian units, this simplifies to $e^2/\hbar c$. In atomic units, it just becomes $1/c$.
  - Distance: $a_0 = \hbar^2/me^2 \approx 0.5\,\text{Å}$, the Bohr radius.
  - Energy: $K_0 = e^2/a_0 = me^4/\hbar^2 \approx 27\,\text{eV}$, twice the Rydberg constant.
  - Velocity: $v_0 = e^2/\hbar = \alpha c$, which confirms the motion is nonrelativistic.

In atomic units, we set $e = m = \hbar = 1$, setting all of these quantities to unity, so $c = 1/\alpha \approx 137$.

- Now, we estimate the diatomic bond as a harmonic oscillator near its minimum. Assuming that the 'spring constant' of the bond is about the same as the 'spring constant' of the bond between the valence electrons and their own atoms (which makes sense since the bond is covalent), and using $\omega \propto 1/\sqrt{m}$, we have

$$\omega_{\text{vib}} = \sqrt{\frac{m}{M}}\omega_0, \quad \omega_0 = K_0/\hbar$$

  where M is the reduced mass, on the order of $10^4\, m$. Therefore the vibrational energy level spacing is about 100 times closer than the electronic energy level spacing, or equivalently the bond dissociation energy.

- The rotational energy levels have a different dependence, as

$$\Delta E_{\text{rot}} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2I} \sim \frac{\hbar^2}{Ma_0^2} = \frac{m}{M}K_0 \sim 10^{-4}K_0.$$

  The rotational levels are another factor of 100 times closer spaced than the vibrational ones.

- At room temperature, the rotational levels are active, and the vibrational levels are partially or completely frozen out, depending on the mass of the atoms involved.

Next, we consider the classic example of hydrogen.

- We consider a spinless, electrostatic, nonrelativistic model. For generality, we consider general one-electron atoms with atomic number Z, and hence potential

$$V(r) = -\frac{Ze^2}{r}.$$

  Note that we are using Gaussian units; to switch to SI, we substitute $e^2 \to e^2/4\pi\epsilon_0$.

- The radial Schrodinger equation is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2\mu}\frac{d^2f}{dr^2} + \left(\frac{l(l+1)\hbar^2}{2\mu r^2} - \frac{Ze^2}{r}\right)f = Ef$$

  where μ is the reduced mass. In this potential, the atomic units above are modified.

  - The characteristic distance is $a = \hbar^2/me_{\text{el}}e_{\text{nuc}} = a_0/Z$, so the electrons orbit closer for higher Z.
  - The characteristic energy is $K = e_{\text{el}}e_{\text{nuc}}/a = Z^2K_0$, so the energies are higher for higher Z.
  - The characteristic velocity is $v = e_{\text{el}}e_{\text{nuc}}/\hbar = Zv_0 = (Z\alpha)c$, so for heavy nuclei, the nonrelativistic approximation breaks down.

- Taking distance and energy in units of a and K, we have

$$\frac{d^2f}{dr^2} + \left(-\frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} + \frac{2}{r} + 2E\right)f = 0.$$

There are both bound states and free states in the spectrum. Searching for bound states, we change radial variable to

$$\rho = \frac{2r}{\nu}, \quad \nu = \frac{1}{\sqrt{-2E}}$$

which reduces the equation to

$$\frac{d^2 f}{d\rho^2} + \left(-\frac{l(l+1)}{\rho^2} + \frac{\nu}{\rho} - \frac{1}{4}\right) f = 0.$$

- We can now solve the equation by standard methods. As an overview, we first take the high ρ limit to find the asymptotic behavior for normalizable solutions, $f \propto e^{-\rho/2}$. We also know that at small ρ, $R(r) \propto r^l$, so $f(r) \propto r^{l+1}$. Peeling off these two factors, we let

$$f(\rho) = \rho^{l+1} e^{-\rho/2} g(\rho)$$

and get a simple equation for g,

$$\rho \frac{d^2 g}{d\rho^2} + (2l + 2 - \rho) \frac{dg}{d\rho} + (\nu - l - 1)g = 0.$$

- To solve this, we use the standard "method of Frobenius", which is to expand $g(\rho)$ in a power series, obtaining a recursion relation for the coefficients. If the series does not terminate, this series sums up to a growing exponential e^{ρ} that causes $f(\rho)$ to diverge. It turns out the series terminates if

$$\nu = n \in \mathbb{Z}, \quad l < n.$$

We call n the principal quantum number.

- If one is interested in the non-normalizable solutions, one way to find them is to peel off $f(\rho) = \rho^{-l} e^{-\rho/2} h(\rho)$ and expand $h(\rho)$ in a power series. This is motivated by the fact that the non-normalizable solutions to the Laplace equation look like ρ^{-l-1} at small ρ.

- The solutions for f are polynomials of degree n times the exponential $e^{-\rho/2}$, with energies

$$E_n = -1/2n^2$$

independent of l. Therefore we have n^2 degeneracy for each value of n, or $2n^2$ if we count the spin. Restoring ordinary units, the energies are

$$E_n = -\frac{Z^2 e^4 m}{2\hbar^2} \frac{1}{n^2}$$

where m is really the reduced mass, which is within 0.1% of the electron mass.

- Explicitly, the radial wavefunctions have the form

$$R_{10} = 2e^{-r}, \quad R_{20} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} (2 - r)e^{-r/2}, \quad R_{21} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{6}} re^{-r/2}$$

and

$$R_{30} = \frac{2}{9\sqrt{3}} \left(3 - 2r + \frac{2}{9}r^2\right) e^{-r/3}, \quad R_{31} = \frac{2}{27\sqrt{6}} \left(4r - \frac{2}{3}r^2\right) e^{-r/3}, \quad R_{32} = \frac{4}{81\sqrt{30}} r^2 e^{-r/3}.$$

Here, we have set $a = 1$. To restore a, we replace r with r/a and add a prefactor of $1/a^{3/2}$.

- One result that will be useful in several places below is

$$R_{n0}(0) = 2\left(\frac{Z}{n}\right)^{3/2}$$

  in atomic units. This quantity is zero for $\ell \neq 0$ because of the angular momentum barrier.

- The bound $l < n$ can be understood classically. For a planet orbiting a star with a fixed energy (and hence fixed semimajor axis), there is a highest possible angular momentum corresponding to $l \approx n$ (in some units), corresponding to a circular orbit. The analogous quantum states have $f(\rho)$ peaked around a single value. The low angular momentum states correspond to long, thin ellipses, and indeed the corresponding $f(\rho)$ extend further out with multiple nodes.

Note. Many perturbations break the degeneracy in l. For example, consider an alkali atom, i.e. a neutral atom with one valence electron. The potential interpolates between $-e^2/r$ at long distances and $-Ze^2/r$ at short distances, because of the shielding effect of the other electrons. Orbits which approach the core are lowered in energy, and this happens more for low values of l. In sodium, this effect makes the $3s$ state significantly lower in energy than the $3p$ state. In general atoms, this causes the strange ordering of orbital filling in the aufbau principle.

In practice, these energy level shifts can be empirically parametrized as

$$E_{n\ell} = -\frac{Z^2 e^4 m}{2\hbar^2} \frac{1}{(n - \delta_\ell)^2}$$

where δ_ℓ is called the quantum defect, which rapidly falls as ℓ increases and does not depend on n. For example, the electron energies in sodium can be fit fairly well by taking $\delta_s = 1.35$, $\delta_p = 0.86$, and all others zero. The reason this works is that, for each fixed ℓ and in the Hartree–Fock approximation, the energies $E_{n\ell}$ are the energy eigenvalues associated with a fixed radial potential, which has a $1/r$ tail. A correspondence principle argument, just like that used to derive the Bohr model, shows that $E_{n\ell} \propto 1/(n - \delta_\ell)^2$ for integers n when $n \gg 1$. Thus the quantum defect is an excellent way to parametrize the energy levels of a Rydberg atom, i.e. an atom with an electron in a state with $n \gg 1$. It turns out, just as for the Bohr model, that it still works decently for $n \sim 1$.

For reference, we summarize facts about special functions and the contexts in which they appear.

- The most general equation we consider is the time-independent Schrodinger equation,

$$-\nabla^2 \psi + V\psi = E\psi$$

  which comes from separating the ordinary Schrodinger equation. We only consider the rotationally symmetric case $V = V(r)$.

- If we separate the wave equation, the spatial part is the Helmholtz equation, which is the special case $V = 0$ above. If we further set $E = 0$ above, we get Laplace's equation, whose solutions are harmonic functions. These represent static solutions of the wave equation.

- It only makes sense to add source terms to full PDEs, not separated ones, so we shouldn't add sources to the time-independent Schrodinger equation or the Helmholtz equation. By contrast, Laplace's equation is purely spatial, and adding a source term gives Poisson's equation.

- By rotational symmetry, the time-independent Schrodinger equation separates into a radial and angular part. The angular solutions are the eigenfunctions of L^2, the angular part of the Laplacian, and are called spherical harmonics.

  - The spherical harmonics $Y_{\ell m}(\theta, \phi)$ form a complete basis for functions on the sphere. The quantity ℓ can take on nonnegative integer values.
  - They are proportional to $e^{im\phi}$ times an associated Legendre function $P_\ell^m(\cos\theta)$.
  - Setting $m = 0$ gives the Legendre polynomials, which are orthonormal on $[-1, 1]$.
  - More generally, the associated Legendre functions satisfy orthogonality relations which, combined with those for $e^{im\phi}$, ensure that the spherical harmonics are orthogonal.
  - Spherical harmonics are *not* harmonic functions on the sphere. Harmonic functions on the sphere have zero L^2 eigenvalue, and the only such function is the constant function Y_{00}.
  - If we were working in two dimensions, we'd just get $e^{im\theta}$.

- The radial equation depends on the potential $V(r)$ and the total angular momentum ℓ, which contributes a centrifugal force term.

  - For $V = 0$, the solutions are spherical Bessel functions, $j_\ell(r)$ and $y_\ell(r)$. They are called Bessel functions of the first and second kind; the latter are singular at $r = 0$.
  - For high r, the Bessel functions asymptote to sinusoids with amplitude $1/r$. (As a special case, setting $\ell = 0$ gives $j_0(r) = \sin(r)/r$, $y_0(r) = \cos(r)/r$, recovering the familiar form of an isotropic spherical wave.)
  - If we were working in two dimensions, we would instead get the ordinary, or cylindrical Bessel functions.
  - We define the (spherical) Hankel functions in terms of linear combinations of Bessel functions to correspond to incoming and outgoing waves at infinity.
  - For a Coulomb field, the solutions are exponentials times associated Laguerre polynomials. Again, there are two solutions, with exponential growth and decay, but only the decaying solution is relevant for bound states.

- Our results also apply to Laplace's equation, in which case the radial equation yields solutions r^ℓ and $1/r^{\ell+1}$. These are the small-r limits of the spherical Bessel functions, because near the origin the energy term $E\psi$ is negligible compared to the centrifugal term.

- As an application, applying this decomposition to the potential created by a charge distribution near the origin yields the multipole expansion, with $\ell = 0$ giving the monopole contribution, and so on.

## 7.5   Addition of Angular Momentum

We now discuss addition of angular momentum.

- Consider two Hilbert spaces with angular momentum operators $\mathbf{J}_1$ and $\mathbf{J}_2$. Then the tensor product space has angular momentum operator

$$\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{J}_1 \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes \mathbf{J}_2 = \mathbf{J}_1 + \mathbf{J}_2.$$

The goal is to relate the angular momentum basis of the joint system $|jm\rangle$ in terms of the uncoupled angular momentum basis $|j_1 m_1\rangle \otimes |j_2 m_2\rangle = |j_1 m_1 j_2 m_2\rangle$.

- It suffices to consider the tensor product of two irreps; for concreteness, we consider $\frac{5}{2} \otimes 1$. The J_z eigenvalue is just $m_1 + m_2$, so the m eigenvalues of the uncoupled basis states are:
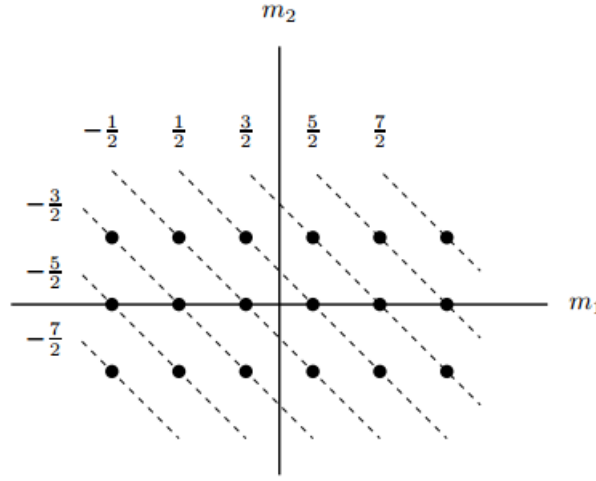
- To find the coupled angular momentum basis, we first consider the state $|\frac{5}{2}\frac{5}{2}\rangle \otimes |11\rangle$, which has $m = 7/2$. This state is a one-dimensional eigenspace of J_z. However, since J_z commutes with J^2, it must also be a one-dimensional eigenspace of J^2, so it has a definite j value. Since there are no states with higher m, we must have $j = 7/2$, so $|\frac{5}{2}\frac{5}{2}11\rangle = |\frac{7}{2}\frac{7}{2}\rangle$.

- Next, we may apply the total lowering operator to give $|\frac{7}{2}\frac{5}{2}\rangle$. There are two states with $m = 5/2$, and hence by similar reasoning, the orthogonal state with $m = 5/2$ must be an eigenstate of J^2, so it is $|\frac{5}{2}\frac{5}{2}\rangle$.

- Continuing this process, lowering our basis vectors and finding new irreps by orthogonality, we conclude that $\frac{5}{2} \otimes 1 = \frac{3}{2} \oplus \frac{5}{2} \oplus \frac{7}{2}$. By very similar reasoning, we generally have

$$ j_1 \otimes j_2 = |j_1 - j_2| \oplus |j_1 - j_2| + 1 \oplus \cdots \oplus j_1 + j_2. $$

- We define the Clebsch–Gordan coefficients as the overlaps $\langle j_1 j_2 m_1 m_2 | jm \rangle$. These coefficients satisfy the relations

$$ \sum_{m_1 m_2} \langle jm | j_1 j_2 m_1 m_2 \rangle \langle j_1 j_2 m_1 m_2 | j' m' \rangle = \delta_{jj'} \delta_{mm'}, $$

$$ \sum_{jm} \langle j_1 j_2 m_1 m_2 | jm \rangle \langle jm | j_1 j_2 m_1' m_2' \rangle = \delta_{m_1 m_1'} \delta_{m_2 m_2'} $$

which simply follow from completeness of the coupled and uncoupled bases. In addition we have the selection rule

$$ \langle jm | j_1 j_2 m_1 m_1 \rangle \propto \delta_{m, m_1 + m_2}. $$

We may also obtain recurrence relations for the Clebsch–Gordan coefficients by applying J_- in both the coupled and uncoupled bases.

- Next, we consider the operation of rotations. Since $\mathbf{J}_1$ and $\mathbf{J}_2$ commute,

$$U(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta) = e^{-i\theta\hat{\mathbf{n}}\cdot(\mathbf{J}_1+\mathbf{J}_2)/\hbar} = U_1(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta)U_2(\hat{\mathbf{n}}, \theta)$$

where the U_i are the individual rotation operators. Then

$$U|j_1j_2m_1m_2\rangle = \sum_{jm}\sum_{m'}|jm'\rangle D^j_{m'm}\langle jm|j_1j_2m'_1m'_2\rangle$$

in the coupled basis, and

$$U|j_1j_2m_1m_2\rangle = U_1|j_1m_1\rangle U_2|j_2m_2\rangle = \sum_{m'_1m'_2}|j_1j_2m'_1m'_2\rangle D^{j_1}_{m'_1m_1}D^{j_2}_{m'_2m_2}$$

in the uncoupled basis. Combining these and relabeling indices, we have

$$D^{j_1}_{m_1m'_1}D^{j_2}_{m_2m'_2} = \sum_{jmm'}\langle j_1j_2m_1m_2|jm\rangle D^j_{mm'}\langle jm'|j_1j_2m'_1m'_2\rangle$$

which allows products of D matrices to be reduced.

Example. Combining spin and spatial degrees of freedom for the electron. We must work in the tensor product space with basis $|\mathbf{r}, m\rangle$. Wavefunctions are of the form

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}, m) = \langle \mathbf{r}, m|\psi\rangle$$

which is often written in the notation

$$\psi(\mathbf{r}) = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_s(\mathbf{r}) \\ \psi_{s-1}(\mathbf{r}) \\ \vdots \\ \psi_{-s}(\mathbf{r}) \end{pmatrix}$$

which has a separate wavefunction for each spin component, or equivalently, a spinor for every position in space. The inner product is

$$\langle \phi|\psi\rangle = \sum_m \int d^3\mathbf{r}\, \phi^*(\mathbf{r}, m)\psi(\mathbf{r}, m).$$

In the case of the electron, the Hamiltonian is the sum of the spatial and spin Hamiltonians we have considered before,

$$H = \frac{1}{2m}(\mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A})^2 + q\phi - \boldsymbol{\mu}\cdot\mathbf{B}, \quad \boldsymbol{\mu} = \frac{g}{2}\mu\boldsymbol{\sigma}.$$

This is called the Pauli Hamiltonian and the resulting evolution equation is the Pauli equation. In practice, it looks like two separate Schrodinger equations, for the two components of ψ, which are coupled by the $\boldsymbol{\mu}\cdot\mathbf{B}$ term.

The Pauli equation arises from expanding the Dirac equation to order $(v/c)^2$. The Dirac equation also fixes $g = 2$. Further terms can be systematically found using the Foldy–Wouthuysen transformation, as described here. At order $(v/c)^4$, this recovers the fine structure corrections we will consider below.

Note. The probability current in this case can be defined as we saw earlier,

$$\mathbf{J} = \operatorname{Re} \psi^\dagger \mathbf{v} \psi, \quad \mathbf{v} = \frac{1}{m} \left(-i\hbar \nabla - q\mathbf{A} \right).$$

Mathematically, $\mathbf{J}$ is not unique, as it remains conserved if we add any divergence-free vector field; in particular, we can add any curl. But the physically interesting question is which possible $\mathbf{J}$ is relevant when we perform a measurement. Performing a measurement of abstract "probability current" is meaningless, in the sense that there do not exist detectors that couple to it. However, in the case of a spinless charged particle, we can measure the electric current, and experiments indicate it is $\mathbf{J}_c = e\mathbf{J}$ where $\mathbf{J}$ is defined as above; this gives $\mathbf{J}$ preference above other options.

However, when the particle has spin, the situation is different. By a classical analogy, we would expect to regard $\mathbf{M} = \psi^\dagger \boldsymbol{\mu} \psi$ as a magnetization. But a magnetization gives rise to a bound current $\mathbf{J}_b = \nabla \times \mathbf{M}$, so we expect to measure the electric current

$$\mathbf{J}_c = e\mathbf{J} + \nabla \times (\psi^\dagger \boldsymbol{\mu} \psi).$$

This can be derived from quantum field theory, and matches what is seen experimentally. For instance, without the second term, magnetic fields could not arise from spin alignment, though they certainly do in ferromagnets.

Example. The Landau–Yang theorem states that a massive, spin 1 particle can't decay into two photons. This places restrictions on the decay of, e.g. some states of positronium and charmonium, and the weak gauge bosons. To demonstrate this, work in the rest frame of the decaying particle. By energy and momentum conservation, after some time, the state of the system will be a superposition of the particle still being there, and terms involving photons coming out back to back in various directions and polarizations, $|\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{e}_1, -\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{e}_2\rangle$.

Now, pick an arbitrary z-axis. We will show that photons can't come out back to back along this axis, i.e. that terms $|k\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \mathbf{e}_1, -k\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \mathbf{e}_2\rangle$ cannot appear in the state. Since $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ is arbitrary, this shows that the decay can't occur at all. The $\mathbf{e}_i$ can be expanded into circular polarizations,

$$\mathbf{e}_{1R} = \mathbf{e}_{2L} = \hat{\mathbf{x}} + i\hat{\mathbf{y}}, \quad \mathbf{e}_{1L} = \mathbf{e}_{2R} = \hat{\mathbf{x}} - i\hat{\mathbf{y}}$$

where these two options have J_z eigenvalues ± 1. Since $|J_z| \leq 1$ for a spin 1 particle, the J_z eigenvalues of the two photons must be opposite, so the allowed polarization combinations are $|k\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \mathbf{e}_{1R}, -k\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \mathbf{e}_{2R}\rangle$ and $|k\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \mathbf{e}_{1L}, -k\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \mathbf{e}_{2L}\rangle$, giving $J_z = 0$. Now consider the effect of a rotation $R_y(\pi)$. Both of these states are eigenstates of this rotation, with an eigenvalue of 1. But the $J_z = 0$ state of a spin 1 irrep flips sign, as can be seen by considering the transformation of $Y_{10}(\theta, \phi)$, so the term is forbidden. Similar reasoning can be used to restrict various other decays; further constraints come from parity.

Note. Why did we "ignore" the orbital angular momentum in the above argument? Actually, we didn't. We decomposed the final state in eigenvectors of the photon momentum and spin. These states do carry orbital angular momentum, or more precisely their orbital angular momentum is not defined: $|\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{e}_1, -\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{e}_2\rangle$ is not an eigenvector of general spatial rotations. To see the orbital angular momentum explicitly, we would decompose the state in a different basis, namely the partial waves. In that case the linear momentum would not be defined, in the sense that each orbital angular momentum state has indefinite linear momentum. The eventual conclusion would be the same, but it would be much harder to reach. **(understand better)** Our particular argument used the former basis, and considered the properties of the state under rotations, which automatically account for both spin and orbital angular momentum.

7.6   Tensor Operators

Classically, we say the position $\mathbf{x}$ is a vector because of how it transforms under rotations. In quantum mechanics, observables correspond to operators, motivating us to consider how operators transform under rotations.

- States transform as $|\psi\rangle \to |\psi'\rangle = U(R)|\psi\rangle$. Under a rotation, an operator A becomes

$$A' = U(R)AU(R)^\dagger$$

  so that $\langle\psi'|A'|\psi'\rangle = \langle\psi|A|\psi\rangle$.

- A scalar operator K is any operator invariant under rotations, $K' = K$. Therefore K commutes with all rotations, or, taking the case of an infinitesimal rotation, K commutes with $\mathbf{J}$. One important example is the Hamiltonian in a central force problem.

- A vector operator $\mathbf{V}$ is a triplet of operators satisfying

$$\langle\psi'|\mathbf{V}|\psi'\rangle = R\langle\psi|\mathbf{V}|\psi\rangle.$$

  That is, $\mathbf{V}$ corresponds to a classical vector quantity. Expanding in components yields

$$U(R)V_iU(R)^\dagger = V_j R_{ji}.$$

  Taking infinitesimal rotations on both sides gives the commutation relations

$$[J_i, V_j] = i\hbar\epsilon_{ijk}V_k$$

  which serves as an alternate definition of a vector operator.

- Similarly, we may show that the dot product of vector operators is a scalar operator, the cross product is a vector operator, and so on. For example, p^2 is a scalar operator and $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p}$ is a vector operator. The adjoint formula shows that angular momentum is always a vector operator.

- Similarly, we define a rank-2 tensor operator as one that transforms by

$$U(R)T_{ij}U(R)^\dagger = T_{kl}R_{ki}R_{lj}.$$

  For example, the outer product of vector operators $T_{ij} = V_iW_j$ is a tensor operator. A physical example of a rank-2 tensor operator is the quadrupole moment.

Next, we turn to an apparently unrelated subject: the spherical basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

- Starting with the Cartesian basis $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$, $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$, $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$, we define the spherical basis vectors

$$\hat{\mathbf{e}}_1 = -\frac{\hat{\mathbf{x}} + i\hat{\mathbf{y}}}{\sqrt{2}}, \quad \hat{\mathbf{e}}_0 = \hat{\mathbf{z}}, \quad \hat{\mathbf{e}}_{-1} = \frac{\hat{\mathbf{x}} - i\hat{\mathbf{y}}}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

  We may expand vectors in this basis (or technically, the basis $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_q^*$) by

$$\mathbf{X} = \hat{\mathbf{e}}_q^* X_q, \quad X_q = \hat{\mathbf{e}}_q \cdot \mathbf{X}$$

- As an example application, consider calculating the dipole transition rate, which is proportional to $\langle n'\ell'm'|\mathbf{x}|n\ell m\rangle$. This is messy, but a simplification occurs if we expand $\mathbf{x}$ in the spherical basis, because

$$rY_{1q}(\Omega) = \sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}}x_q.$$

  Then the matrix element factors into an angular and radial part,

$$\langle n'\ell'm'|x_q|n\ell m\rangle = \int_0^\infty r^2 dr\, R^*_{n'\ell'}(r)rR_{n\ell}(r) \times \sqrt{\frac{4\pi}{3}}\int d\Omega\, Y^*_{\ell'm'}(\Omega)Y_{1q}(\Omega)Y_{\ell m}(\Omega).$$

  This is a substantial improvement: we see that n and n' only appear in the first factor, while m and m' only appear in the second. Furthermore, the integral vanishes automatically unless $m' = q + m$, which significantly reduces the work that must be done. Even better, the angular part is the same for *all* rotationally symmetric systems; the radial part factors out what is specific to hydrogen.

- The 'coincidence' arises because both the spherical harmonics and spherical basis arise out of the representation theory of $SU(2)$. The Y_{lm}'s are the standard angular momentum basis for the action of rotations on functions on the sphere. Similarly, the spherical basis is the standard angular momentum basis for the action of rotations in space, which carries the representation $j = 1$.

- More generally, tensor quantities carry representations of $SO(3)$ classically, and hence tensor operators carry representations of $SU(2)$ in quantum mechanics. Hence it is natural for the photon, which is represented by the vector $\mathbf{A}$ classically, to have spin 1.

- Tensor operators can be broken down into irreps. Scalar and vector operators are already irreps, but the tensor operator $T_{ij} = V_iW_j$ contains the scalar and vector irreps

$$\operatorname{tr} T = \mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{W}, \quad \mathbf{X} = \mathbf{V} \times \mathbf{W}.$$

  The remaining degrees of freedom form a five-dimensional irrep, the symmetric traceless part of T_{ij}. This is in accordance with the Clebsch–Gordan decomposition $1 \otimes 1 = 0 \oplus 1 \oplus 2$. The same decomposition holds for arbitrary T_{ij} by linearity.

- Irreps in the standard basis transform by the same D matrices that we introduced earlier. For example, an irreducible tensor operator of order k is a set of $2k + 1$ operators T^k_q satisfying

$$UT^k_qU^\dagger = T^k_{q'}D^k_{q'q}(U).$$

  An irreducible tensor operator of order k transforms like a spin j particle. In our new language, writing $\mathbf{x}$ in terms of the x_q is just writing it as an irreducible tensor operator of order 1.

- Rotations act on kets by multiplication by $U(R)$, while rotation act on operators by conjugation, which turns into commutation for infinitesimal rotations. Therefore the angular momentum operators affect the irreducible tensor operator T^k_q exactly as they affect the kets $|kq\rangle$, but with commutators,

$$[J_z, T^k_q] = \hbar k T^k_q, \quad [J_i, [J_i, T^k_q]] = \hbar^2 k(k + 1)T^k_q.$$

  We don't even have to prove this independently; it just carries over from our previous work.

- In the case of operators, there's no simple 'angular momentum operator' as in the other cases, because it would have to be a superoperator, i.e. a linear map of operators.

Note. The ideas above can be used to understand higher spherical harmonics as well. The functions x, y, and z form an irrep under rotations, and hence the set of homogeneous second-order polynomials forms a representation as well. Using the decomposition $1 \otimes 1 = 0 \oplus 1 \oplus 2$ yields a five-dimensional irrep, and dividing these functions by r^2 yields the $\ell = 2$ spherical harmonics.

This explains the naming of chemical orbitals. The p orbitals are p_x, p_y, and p_z, corresponding to angular parts x/r, y/r, and z/r. Note that this is not the standard angular momentum basis; the functions are instead chosen to be real and somewhat symmetrical. The names of the d orbitals are similar, though d_{z^2} should actually be called $d_{3z^2 - r^2}$. Illustrations of these orbitals, and higher ones, can be found here.

We now state the Wigner–Eckart theorem, which simplifies matrix elements of irreducible tensor operators. We won't bother to prove it, because it gets notationally complex, but it can be relatively easily shown in special cases, which give the intuition for why it must be true.

- Consider a setup with rotational symmetry, and work in the basis $|\gamma j m\rangle$. A scalar operator K commutes with both J_z and J^2, and hence preserves j and m. Moreover, since it commutes with $J_\pm$, its matrix elements do not depend on m,

$$\langle \gamma' j' m' | K | \gamma j m \rangle = \delta_{j'j} \delta_{m'm} C^j_{\gamma'\gamma}.$$

  This implies, for instance, that the eigenvalues come in multiplets of degeneracy $2j + 1$. We've already seen this reasoning before, for the special case $K = H$, but the result applies for any scalar operator in any rotationally symmetric system.

- The Wigner–Eckart theorem generalizes this to tensor operators, stating that

$$\langle \gamma' j' m' | T^k_q | \gamma j m \rangle = \langle \gamma' j' || T^k || \gamma j \rangle \langle j' m' | j k m q \rangle$$

  where the first factor is called a reduced matrix element, and the second is a Clebsch–Gordan coefficient. The reduced matrix element is not a literal matrix element, but just stands in for a quantity that only depends on T^k and the γ's and j's.

- The Wigner–Eckart theorem factors the matrix element into a part that depends only on the irreps (and hence depends on the detailed dynamics of the system), and a part that depends on the m's that label states inside the irreps (and hence is determined completely by rotational symmetry). This simplifies the computation of transition rates, as we saw earlier. Fixing the γ's and j's, there are generally $(2j + 1)(2j' + 1)(2k + 1)$ matrix elements to compute, but we can just compute one, to get the reduced matrix element.

- The intuition for the Clebsch–Gordan coefficient is that $T^k_q |jm\rangle$ transforms under rotations just like the ket $|kq\rangle|jm\rangle$. The Clebsch–Gordan factor also provides several selection rules,

$$m' = m + q, \quad j' \in \{|j - k|, \ldots, j + k\}$$

  just as we saw for dipole transitions with the spherical basis.

- If there is only one irrep, then all irreducible tensor operators of order k must be proportional to each other. To show this directly, note that all such operators must be built out of linear combinations of $|m\rangle\langle m'|$. This set of operators transforms as

$$j \otimes j = 0 \oplus 1 \oplus \ldots \oplus 2j.$$

Hence there is a unique irreducible tensor operator for all spins up to $2j$, and none above that. This shows, for example, that we must have $\boldsymbol{\mu} \propto \mathbf{S}$ for spins.

- For example, an alpha particle is a nucleus whose ground state has spin zero. Restricting our Hilbert space to this irrep, the selection rules show that every irreducible tensor operator with $k > 0$ must be zero. Thus alpha particles cannot have a magnetic dipole moment.

- To compute the reduced matrix elements of $\mathbf{J}$ itself, note that

$$\langle \gamma' j' m' | J_z | \gamma j m \rangle = \langle \gamma' j' || J || \gamma j \rangle \langle j' m' | j1m0 \rangle.$$

The left-hand side is easy to evaluate, giving

$$\langle \gamma' j' || J || \gamma j \rangle = \frac{\delta_{\gamma'\gamma} \delta_{j'j} \hbar m}{\langle jm | j1m0 \rangle} = \delta_{\gamma'\gamma} \delta_{j'j} \hbar \sqrt{\ell(\ell+1)}$$

where the last step uses explicit Clebsch–Gordan coefficients for the $j \otimes 1$ case.

One useful corollary of the Wigner–Eckart theorem is the projection theorem.

- First, we prove the theorem by brute force. One can show the identity

$$[J^2, [J^2, \mathbf{V}]] = \hbar^2 \left(2(J^2 \mathbf{V} + \mathbf{V} J^2) - 4(\mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{J})\mathbf{J} \right)$$

for any vector operator $\mathbf{V}$, directly using the definitions.

- We now sandwich this identity between $\langle \gamma' j m' |$ and $|\gamma j m \rangle$. Since the same j value is on both sides, the left-hand side vanishes, giving

$$2\langle \gamma' j m' | J^2 \mathbf{V} + \mathbf{V} J^2 | \gamma j m \rangle = 4\langle \gamma' j m' | (\mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{J})\mathbf{J} | \gamma j m \rangle.$$

Rearranging slightly, this implies that

$$\langle \gamma' j m' | \mathbf{V} | \gamma j m \rangle = \frac{1}{j(j+1)\hbar^2} \langle \gamma' j m' | (\mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{J})\mathbf{J} | \gamma j m \rangle$$

which is known as the projection theorem. Intuitively, the right-hand side is the projection of $\mathbf{V}$ "in the $\mathbf{J}$ direction", and the result says that the result is the same as $\mathbf{V}$ when we restrict to a subspace of constant j. This is a generalization of the idea above that, for constant γ and j, there is only one vector operator.

- The projection theorem can also be derived by explicitly evaluating the reduced matrix element in the Wigner–Eckart theorem. Since the right-hand side involves the product of a scalar and vector operator, we first seek to simplify such products.

- Let $\mathbf{A}$ be a vector operator and let f be a scalar operator. The Wigner–Eckart theorem says

$$\langle \gamma' j' m' | A_q | \gamma j m \rangle = \langle \gamma' j' || A || \gamma j \rangle \langle j' m' | j 1 m q \rangle$$

and

$$\langle \gamma' j' m' | f A_q | \gamma j m \rangle = \langle \gamma' j' || f A || \gamma j \rangle \langle j' m' | j 1 m q \rangle.$$

Furthermore, since f is a scalar, we have

$$\langle \gamma' j' m' | f | \gamma j m \rangle = \delta_{m'm} \delta_{j'j} \langle \gamma' j || f || \gamma j \rangle.$$

Combining these results gives a decomposition for the reduced matrix elements of fA,

$$\langle \gamma' j' || f A || \gamma j \rangle = \sum_{\Gamma} \langle \gamma' j' || f || \Gamma j' \rangle \langle \Gamma j' || A || \gamma j \rangle$$

which makes sense: both A and f can move between irreps, though only A can change j.

- By similar reasoning, for the dot products of vector operators, we have

$$\langle \gamma' j' || \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} || \gamma j \rangle = \sum_{\Gamma j'} \langle \gamma' j || A || \Gamma j' \rangle \langle \Gamma j' || B || \gamma j \rangle$$

where we used $\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} = \sum_q A_q B_q^\dagger$ and the Wigner–Eckart theorem twice.

- Now we can simply show the projection theorem directly. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle \gamma' j' m' | (\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{J}) J_q | \gamma j m \rangle &= \delta_{j'j} \hbar \sqrt{j(j+1)} \langle jm' | j1mq \rangle \langle \gamma' j || \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{J} || \gamma j \rangle \\
&= \delta_{j'j} \hbar \sqrt{j(j+1)} \langle jm' | j1mq \rangle \langle \gamma' j || A || \gamma j \rangle \langle \gamma j || J || \gamma j \rangle \\
&= \delta_{j'j} \hbar^2 j(j+1) \langle jm' | j1mq \rangle \langle \gamma' j || A || \gamma j \rangle \\
&= \delta_{j'j} \hbar^2 j(j+1) \langle \gamma' jm' | A_q | \gamma j m \rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

where we used the decompositions above and the reduced matrix elements of $\mathbf{J}$.

8   Discrete Symmetries

8.1   Parity

In the previous section, we studied proper rotations. We now add in parity, an improper rotation, and consider its representations. Discrete symmetries are also covered in the context of relativistic quantum mechanics in the notes on the Standard Model.

- In classical mechanics, the parity operator P inverts all spatial components. It has matrix representation $-I$, satisfies $P^2 = I$, and commutes with all proper rotations, $PRP^{-1} = R$.

- In quantum mechanics, we look for a parity operator $\pi = U(P)$ which satisfies

$$\pi^\dagger \pi = 1, \quad \pi^2 = 1, \quad \pi U(R)\pi^\dagger = U(R).$$

Mathematically, these conditions mean that we are looking for unitary representations of $O(3)$. Combining the first postulates show that π is Hermitian, so the parity is observable. The third postulate is equivalent to $[\pi, \mathbf{J}] = 0$, i.e. that π is a scalar operator.

- The above postulates rule out projective representations. These are allowed in principle, but won't be necessary for any of our applications.

- For a spinless particle, we have previously defined $U(R)|\mathbf{x}\rangle = |R\mathbf{x}\rangle$. Similarly, we may define $\pi|\mathbf{x}\rangle = -|\mathbf{x}\rangle$, which obeys all of the postulates above. We may also explicitly compute

$$\pi\mathbf{x}\pi^\dagger = -\mathbf{x}, \quad \pi\mathbf{p}\pi^\dagger = -\mathbf{p}, \quad \pi\mathbf{L}\pi^\dagger = \mathbf{L}$$

where $\mathbf{L}$ is the orbital angular momentum $\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p}$. the parity of the state $|lm\rangle$ is $(-1)^l$.

- Another example is a spin-s particle with no spatial wavefunction. The states are $|sm\rangle$ for $m = -s, \ldots, s$. Since π is a scalar operator, we must have

$$\pi|sm\rangle = \eta|sm\rangle$$

for some constant $\eta = \pm 1$. In nonrelativistic quantum mechanics, the sign has no physical consequences, so we choose $\eta = 1$ so that parity does nothing to the spin state. Adding back the spatial degrees of freedom gives $\pi|\mathbf{x}, m\rangle = |-\mathbf{x}, m\rangle$.

- In relativistic quantum mechanics, the sign of η makes a physical difference because particle number can change, but the overall parity must be conserved; this provides some selection rules. For example, the fact that the photon has negative parity is related to the fact that the parity of an atom flips during an electric dipole transition, which involves one photon.

- Given a vector operator $\mathbf{V}$, if

$$\pi\mathbf{V}\pi^\dagger = \pm\mathbf{V}$$

then we say $\mathbf{V}$ is a true/polar vector if the sign is -1, and a pseudovector/axial vector if the sign is $+1$. For example, $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{p}$ are polar vectors but $\mathbf{L}$ is an axial vector.

- Similarly, for a scalar operator K, if

$$\pi K\pi^\dagger = \pm K$$

then K is a true scalar if the sign is $+1$ and a pseudoscalar if the sign is -1. For example, $\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{S}$ is a pseudoscalar.

- Note that $\mathbf{E}$ is a polar vector while $\mathbf{B}$ is an axial vector. In particular, adding an external magnetic field does not break parity symmetry.

Next, we consider the consequences of parity symmetry of the Hamiltonian.

- Parity is conserved if $[\pi, H] = 0$. This is satisfied by the central force Hamiltonian, and more generally to any system of particles interacting by pairwise forces of the form $V(|\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{r}_j|)$.

- Parity remains conserved when we account for relativistic effects. For example, such effects lead to a spin-orbit coupling $\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{S}$, but this term is a true scalar. Parity can appear to be violated when photons are emitted (or generally when a system is placed in an external field), but remains conserved as long as we account for the parity of the electromagnetic field.

- Parity is also conserved by the strong interaction, but not by the weak interaction. The weak interaction is extremely weak at atomic energy scales, so parity symmetry is extremely accurate in atomic physics.

- Unlike rotational symmetry, parity symmetry by itself doesn't imply any degeneracy, because its irreps are all one-dimensional; for instance, the harmonic oscillator is symmetric under parity but has no degeneracy. In order to have higher-dimensional irreps, one needs a nonabelian symmetry group. For example, consider the free particle in one dimension. It has both translational and parity symmetry, which yield irreps of dimension 2, corresponding to the combinations $\sin(kx)$ and $\cos(kx)$.

- A more nontrivial example is the degeneracy of states with opposite crystal momentum in a parity-symmetric crystal lattice, as described in the notes on Solids. This is due to the combination of parity symmetry and discrete translational symmetry.

- Just as for rotational symmetry, parity symmetry can be useful by lowering the dimensionality of the Hilbert space we have to consider. We can split the Hilbert space into representations with $+1$ and -1 parity and diagonalize H within them separately, which is more efficient.

- In the case of rotational symmetry, every rotational irrep has definite parity since π is a scalar operator. In particular, if there is no degeneracy of irreps, then every energy eigenstate is automatically a parity eigenstate. (But in hydrogen, the $2s$ and $2p$ irreps are degenerate, and so a linear combination of these states gives an energy eigenstate without definite parity.)

Example. Selection rules for electric dipole transitions. Such a transition is determined by the matrix element $\langle n'\ell'm'|\mathbf{x}|n\ell m\rangle$. It must be parity invariant, but under parity it picks up a factor of $(-1)^{\ell+\ell'+1}$, giving the selection rule $\Delta\ell = \text{odd}$, called Laporte's rule. The Wigner–Eckart theorem rules out $|\Delta\ell| > 1$, so we must have $\Delta\ell = \pm 1$. The Wigner–Eckart theorem also gives $|\Delta m| \leq 1$.

Example. A spin-orbit coupling. Consider a particle with spatial state $|n\ell m_\ell\rangle$, which separates into a radial and angular part $|n\ell\rangle|\ell m_\ell\rangle$, and a spin state $|sm_s\rangle$. Ignoring the radial part, which separates out, we consider the total spin states

$$|\ell j m_j\rangle = \sum_{m_\ell, m_s} |\ell m_\ell\rangle|sm_s\rangle\langle \ell s m_\ell m_s|jm_j\rangle.$$

The wavefunction of such a state takes in an angular coordinate and outputs a spinor. A spin-orbit coupling is of the form $\boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdot \mathbf{x}$. Since this term is rotationally invariant, it conserves j and m_j. From the standpoint of the spatial part, it's like an electric dipole transition, so $\Delta\ell = \pm 1$. Thus the interaction can transfer angular momentum between the spin and orbit, one unit at a time.

8.2   Time Reversal

Next, we consider time reversal, which is more subtle because it is realized by an antilinear operator. We begin with the classical case.

- In Newtonian mechanics, if $\mathbf{x}(t)$ is a valid trajectory for a particle in a potential (such as an external electric field), $\mathbf{x}(-t)$ is a valid trajectory as well. Since the velocity is flipped, the momentum is also flipped, $\mathbf{p}(t) \to -\mathbf{p}(-t)$.

- This reasoning fails in the case of an external magnetic field. However, if we consider the field to be internally generated by charges in the system, then time reversal takes

$$\rho \to \rho, \ \mathbf{J} \to -\mathbf{J}, \quad \mathbf{E} \to \mathbf{E}, \ \mathbf{B} \to -\mathbf{B},$$

  where we suppress time coordinates. This gives an extra sign flip that restores the symmetry.

- Note that this is the opposite of the situation with parity. In this case, $\mathbf{J}$ is flipped as well, but $\mathbf{E}$ is flipped while $\mathbf{B}$ isn't.

- In the case of quantum mechanics, we have the Schrodinger equation

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial t} = \left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\nabla^2 + V(\mathbf{x})\right)\psi(\mathbf{x}, t).$$

  It is tempting to implement time reversal by taking $\psi(\mathbf{x}, t) \to \psi(\mathbf{x}, -t)$, but this doesn't work because only the left-hand changes sign. However, if we take

$$\psi_r(\mathbf{x}, t) = \psi^*(\mathbf{x}, -t)$$

  then we do get a solution, as we can conjugate both sides. Since position information is in the magnitude of ψ and momentum information is in the phase, this is simply performing the flip $\mathbf{p} \to -\mathbf{p}$ we already did in the classical case.

- In the case of an external magnetic field, we have

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{2m}\left[-i\hbar\nabla - \frac{q}{c}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x})\right]^2\psi(\mathbf{x}, t)$$

  and we again have a problem, as the terms linear in $\mathbf{A}$ are imaginary. As in the classical case, the fix is to reverse the magnetic field, $\mathbf{A} \to -\mathbf{A}$.

We now define and investigate the time reversal operator.

- We define the time reversal operator Θ as

$$|\psi_r(t)\rangle = \Theta|\psi(-t)\rangle.$$

  Setting $t = 0$, the time reversal operator takes the initial condition $|\psi(0)\rangle$ to the initial condition for the reversed motion $|\psi_r(0)\rangle$.

- Since probabilities should be conserved under time reversal, we postulate

$$\Theta^\dagger \Theta = 1.$$

By analogy with classical mechanics, we require

$$\Theta \mathbf{x} \Theta^\dagger = \mathbf{x}, \quad \Theta \mathbf{p} \Theta^\dagger = -\mathbf{p}.$$

Then the orbital angular momentum also flips, $\Theta \mathbf{L} \Theta^\dagger = -\mathbf{L}$.

- We postulate that spin angular momentum flips as well. This can be understood classically by thinking of spin as just internal rotation. Since $\boldsymbol{\mu} \propto \mathbf{S}$, the magnetic moment also flips.

- The above postulates cannot be satisfied by any unitary operator, because

$$\Theta [x, p] \Theta^\dagger = i\hbar \Theta \Theta^\dagger = i\hbar = [x, p]$$

but we must get $[x, -p]$. Alternatively, we know that Θ flips the sign of $\mathbf{L}$, but this seems impossible to reconcile with $[\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{L}] = i\mathbf{L}$.

- However, we can construct Θ if we let it be an *antilinear* operator, i.e. an operator that complex conjugates everything to its right. This conjugation causes an extra sign flip due to the i's in the commutators, and leads to conjugated wavefunction, as already seen above.

- Another way to see that Θ must be antiunitary is to note that we must have $\Theta H \Theta^\dagger = H$ by the definition of a symmetry, but we also need $\Theta e^{-iHt} \Theta^\dagger = e^{iHt}$ for the time evolution to indeed be reserved. This is only possible if the i carries an extra sign flip.

- Generally, Wigner's theorem states that any map that preserves probabilities,

$$|\langle \psi' | \phi' \rangle| = |\langle \psi | \phi \rangle|$$

must be either unitary or antiunitary. Continuous symmetries must be unitary, since they are connected to the identity, which is unitary; of the common discrete symmetries, time reversal symmetry is the only antiunitary one.

Working with antilinear operators is delicate, because Dirac notation is made for linear operators.

- Let A be antilinear and let L be linear. Then for any scalar c,

$$Lc = cL, \quad Ac = c^* A.$$

Note that the product of antilinear operators is linear.

- We defined the action of L on bras by the rule

$$(\langle \phi | L) | \psi \rangle \equiv (\langle \phi |)(L | \psi \rangle).$$

However, if we naively extend this to antilinear operators, then $\langle \phi | A$ would be an antilinear functional, while bras must be linear functionals. Thus we add a complex conjugation,

$$(\langle \phi | A) | \psi \rangle \equiv [(\langle \phi |)(A | \psi \rangle)]^* .$$

It matters which way an antilinear operator acts, and switching it gives a complex conjugate.

- Next, we define the Hermitian conjugate. For linear operators, we let

$$\langle \phi | L^\dagger | \psi \rangle = [\langle \psi | L | \phi \rangle]^* .$$

To extend this to antilinear operators, we need to find which way A and $A^\dagger$ act. The correct rule is to flip the direction of action,

$$\left(\langle \phi | A^\dagger \right) | \psi \rangle = [\langle \psi | \left(A | \phi \rangle \right)]^* .$$

One can check that this behaves correctly when $|\psi\rangle$ and $|\phi\rangle$ are multiplied by scalars. The rule can be remembered by simply flipping everything when taking the Hermitian conjugate. Equivalently, we simply maintain the rule

$$(A^\dagger | \psi \rangle) = (\langle \psi | A)^\dagger$$

as for linear operators.

- An antiunitary operator is an antilinear operator satisfying

$$A^\dagger A = A A^\dagger = 1.$$

Antiunitary operators preserve probabilities, because

$$\langle \psi' | \phi' \rangle = (\langle \psi | A^\dagger)(A | \phi \rangle) = \left[\langle \psi | (A^\dagger A | \phi \rangle) \right]^* = \langle \psi | \phi \rangle^*.$$

- It is useful to factor an antilinear operator as $A = LK$ where L is linear and K is a standard antilinear operator. For example, given an eigenbasis $|n\rangle$ of a complete set Q of commuting operators, we could define $K_Q |n\rangle = |n\rangle$. Then $K_\mathbf{x}$ maps the wavefunction $\psi(\mathbf{x})$ to $\psi(\mathbf{x})^*$.

Next, we apply time reversal symmetry to specific situations.

- In the case of a spinless system, it can be verified that $K_\mathbf{x}$ acts on $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{p}$ in the appropriate manner, so this is the time reversal operator; as we've seen, it conjugates wavefunctions.

- Now consider a particle of spin s, ignoring spatial degrees of freedom. Since $\Theta \mathbf{S} \Theta^\dagger = -\mathbf{S}$, we have $\Theta S_z \Theta^\dagger = -S_z$, so Θ flips m, $\Theta |sm\rangle = c_m |s, -m\rangle$. On the other hand, we have

$$\Theta S_+ \Theta^\dagger = \Theta (S_x + i S_y) \Theta^\dagger = -S_x + i S_y = -S_-$$

which yields $c_{m_1} = -c_m$, so that $c_m = \eta(-1)^{s-m}$. We can absorb an arbitrary phase into η. The common choice is

$$\Theta |sm\rangle = i^{2m} |s, -m\rangle.$$

- An alternate way to derive this result is to set $K = K_{S_z}$, so that K is conjugation in the standard angular momentum basis, then choose L to fix up the commutation relations,

$$\Theta = e^{-i\pi S_y/\hbar} K = K e^{-i\pi S_y/\hbar}$$

where the exponential commutes with K because its matrix elements are real.

- Restoring the spatial degrees of freedom,

$$\Theta = K_{\mathbf{x},S_z} e^{-i\pi S_y/\hbar}.$$

  One might wonder why S_y appears, rather then S_x. This goes back to our choice of Cordon–Shortley phase conventions, which have a nontrivial effect here because Θ is antilinear.

- In the case of many particles with spin, we may either multiply the individual Θ's or replace S_y and S_z above with the total angular momenta. These give the same result because the Clebsch–Gordan coefficients are real.

- Time reversal invariance holds for any Hamiltonian of the form $H = p^2/2m + V(\mathbf{x})$. It is broken by an external magnetic field, but not by internal fields. For example, the spin-orbit coupling $\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{S}$ is time-reversal invariant because both the angular momenta flip.

Finally, we apply time reversal to dynamics.

- First, we verify the time-reversed state obeys the Schrodinger equation. Setting $\hbar = 1$,

$$i\partial_t|\psi_r(t)\rangle = i\partial_t\Theta|\psi(-t)\rangle = \Theta\left[-i\partial_t|\psi(-t)\rangle\right].$$

  Writing $\tau = -t$, we have

$$i\partial_t|\psi_r(t)\rangle = \Theta\left[i\partial_\tau|\psi(\tau)\rangle\right] = \Theta H|\psi(\tau)\rangle = (\Theta H\Theta^\dagger)|\psi_r(t)\rangle.$$

  Hence the time-reversed state satisfies the Schrodinger equation under the time-reversed Hamiltonian. The Hamiltonian itself is invariant under time reversal if $[\Theta, H] = 0$.

- If the Hamiltonian is invariant under time reversal and $|\psi\rangle$ is a nondegenerate energy eigenstate, we must have $\Theta|\psi\rangle = e^{i\theta}|\psi\rangle$, where the eigenvalue is a phase because Θ preserves norms. Then the state $e^{i\theta/2}|\psi\rangle$ has Θ eigenvalue 1. For the case of spatial degrees of freedom, this implies that the wavefunctions of nondegenerate states can be chosen real.

- More generally, Θ can link pairs of degenerate energy eigenstates. One can show that we can always change basis in this subspace so that both have Θ eigenvalue 1. For example, for the free particle, $e^{\pm ikx}$ can be combined into $\sin(kx)$ and $\cos(kx)$. As another example, atomic orbitals in chemistry are conventionally taken to be linear combinations of the $Y_{\ell,\pm m}$, with real wavefunctions.

- In general, we have

$$\Theta^2 = Ke^{-i\pi S_y/\hbar}Ke^{-i\pi S_y/\hbar} = e^{-i(2\pi)S_y/\hbar} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{bosons} \\ -1 & \text{fermions} \end{cases}.$$

  This does not depend on phase conventions, as any phase adjustment cancels itself out.

- When there are an odd number of fermions, $\Theta^2 = -1$. Then energy levels must be twofold degenerate, because if they were not, we would have $\Theta^2|\psi\rangle = \Theta e^{i\theta}|\psi\rangle = |\psi\rangle$, which contradicts $\Theta^2 = -1$. This result is called Kramer's degeneracy.

- For example, given rotational symmetry, Kramer's degeneracy trivially holds because $|l, m\rangle$ pairs with $|l, -m\rangle$, where $m \neq 0$ for half-integer l. The nontrivial point is that this remains true even when, e.g. an external electric field is turned on, breaking rotational symmetry. One might protest that no degeneracy then remains, in the case of a particle with an electric dipole moment – but as we'll now see, time reversal forbids such dipole moments!

In general, quantum objects such as atoms and nuclei can have multipole moments, which presents a useful application of parity, time reversal, and the Wigner–Eckart theorem.

- We recall that the multipole expansion of a classical charge distribution starts as

$$\phi(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{q}{r} + \frac{\mathbf{d} \cdot \mathbf{r}}{r^3} + \frac{1}{6} \sum_{ij} \frac{Q_{ij} T_{ij}}{r^5} + \dots, \quad T_{ij} = 3x_i x_j - r^2 \delta_{ij}$$

  where the charge, electric dipole moment, and electric quadrupole moment are

$$q = \int d\mathbf{r}\, \rho(\mathbf{r}), \quad \mathbf{d} = \int d\mathbf{r}\, \rho(\mathbf{r})\mathbf{r}, \quad Q_{ij} = \int d\mathbf{r}\, \rho(\mathbf{r}) T_{ij}.$$

- There is a similar expansion for the vector potential, but the monopole term vanishes, and we won't consider any situations where the quadrupole term matters, leaving the dipole term,

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\boldsymbol{\mu} \times \mathbf{r}}{r^3}, \quad \boldsymbol{\mu} = \frac{1}{2} \int d\mathbf{r}\, \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{J}(\mathbf{r}).$$

- We call the terms in the multipole expansion "2^k-poles" for convenience. Formally, the multipole expansion is just representation theory: a 2^k-pole transforms in the spin k irrep, and hence is described by $2k+1$ numbers. Accordingly, at the quantum level, the 2^k-poles become irreducible tensor operators.

- Now restrict to systems described by a single irrep, such as nuclei. In this case, many of the multipoles are forbidden by symmetry. For example, consider an electric dipole moment $\mathbf{d}$. Classically, we expect $\mathbf{d}$ to flip under P and stay the same under T. But by the Wigner–Eckart theorem, $\mathbf{d} \propto \mathbf{S}$, which stays the same under P but flips under T. So a permanent electric dipole moment for a nucleus would violate P and T.

- This argument is actually too quick, because there's no reason the electric dipole moment of a quantum system has to behave like our classical intuition suggests. A better argument is to show that there is no way to extend the definitions of P and T we are familiar with, for classical objects, to these quantum objects, in such a way that it is a symmetry of the theory.

- To do this, note that our quick argument shows $\mathbf{d}$ must transform like $\mathbf{S}$. However, we measure the effects of $\mathbf{d}$ by interaction terms like $\mathbf{d} \cdot \mathbf{E}$, and we know that $\mathbf{E}$ must flip under P and stay the same under T. Hence the term $\mathbf{d} \cdot \mathbf{E}$ is odd under both P and T, so the Hamiltonian is not symmetric.

- Of course, one could just modify how $\mathbf{E}$ transforms to get a symmetry of the Hamiltonian, but that symmetry, even if useful, could not reasonably be called "parity" or "time reversal". The $\mathbf{E}$ here is a *classical* electric field whose transformation we should already know.

- Usually people talk about electric dipole moments as violating T, not violating P, even though they violate both. The reason is that the former is more interesting. By the CPT theorem, T violation is equivalent to CP violation. While the Standard Model has a lot of known P violation, it has very little CP violation, so the latter is a more sensitive probe for new physics.

- Note that this argument only applies to particles described by a single irrep. That is, it applies to neutrons because we are assuming the irreps of nuclei are spaced far apart; there's no symmetry that would make the lowest irrep degenerate. But a typical molecule in laboratory conditions has enough energy to enter many irreps, since the rotational energy levels are closely spaced, which is why we say, e.g. that water molecules have a permanent electric dipole moment.

- Similar arguments show that electric multipoles of odd k and magnetic multipoles of even k are forbidden, by both P and T. (However, magnetic monopoles are forbidden for a different reason.) Hence the leading allowed multipoles are electric monopoles and magnetic dipoles.

- Another rule is that for a spin j irrep, a multipole can only exist if $k \leq 2j$. This follows from the fact that there aren't irreducible tensor operators for $k > 2j$ on a spin j irrep. For example, a proton has $j = 1/2$ and hence cannot have quadrupole moments or higher. We also saw earlier that an alpha particle has $j = 0$ and hence cannot have anything but an electric monopole.

Note. As explained in great detail in the notes on the Standard Model, one can also define parity and time reversal in relativistic quantum field theory, and in the low energy limit these reduce to the definitions above. Often, one can additionally define an operation called "charge conjugation", which maps matter to antimatter, but it doesn't yield anything reasonable in the nonrelativistic limit. For example, charge conjugation would have to map single electron states to single positron states, but we usually don't include the latter in the Hilbert space at all; it is only the structure of relativistic QFT which forces these states to appear.

This is why we didn't define charge conjugation anywhere above, and didn't talk about how it acted. In the nonrelativistic theory, we can only talk about whether an interaction violates C by checking if it violates PT, and invoking the CPT theorem of relativistic QFT – but we cannot invoke the CPT theorem directly, because we cannot even define C!

9 Time Independent Perturbation Theory

9.1 Formalism

In this section, we cover bound-state perturbation theory.

- Bound-state perturbation theory is a method for finding the discrete part of the spectrum of a perturbed Hamiltonian, as well as the corresponding eigenstates. It is also known as time-independent perturbation theory. While the Hamiltonian can have a continuous spectrum as well, analyzing states in the continuum requires different techniques, such as time-dependent perturbation theory.

- The most common formulation of bound-state perturbation theory is Rayleigh–Schrodinger perturbation theory. In this section we will use Brillouin–Wigner perturbation theory, which is cleaner, but gives the results only implicitly.

- We consider an unperturbed Hamiltonian H_0 with eigenvalues ϵ_k and eigenstates

$$H_0|k\alpha\rangle = \epsilon_k|k\alpha\rangle$$

  where α is an index to resolve degeneracies. The Hilbert space splits into eigenspaces $\mathcal{H}_k$.

- We focus on one of the energy levels ϵ_n for closer study. Let the full Hamiltonian be $H = H_0 + \lambda H_1$, where $\lambda \in [0, 1]$. Introducing this parameter gives us a way to continuously turn on the perturbation, and also a small parameter to expand in.

- Let $|\psi\rangle$ be an exact eigenstate with energy E, which "grows out" of the eigenspace $\mathcal{H}_n$ as λ increases,

$$H|\psi\rangle = E|\psi\rangle.$$

  Both E and $|\psi\rangle$ implicitly depend on λ.

- It is useful to define the projectors onto $\mathcal{H}_n$ and its orthogonal subspace,

$$P = \sum_\alpha |n\alpha\rangle\langle n\alpha|, \quad Q = 1 - P.$$

  Both of these commute with H_0.

- If the perturbation is small, then we expect $|\psi\rangle$ mostly lies in $\mathcal{H}_n$. Computing $P|\psi\rangle$ is "easy", while computing the part $Q|\psi\rangle$ in all the other $\mathcal{H}_k$ is "hard".

- We will write an expression for $Q|\psi\rangle$ using a power series. First, note that

$$(E - H_0)|\psi\rangle = \lambda H_1|\psi\rangle.$$

  We could get a formal solution for $|\psi\rangle$ by multiplying by $(E - H_0)^{-1}$, which satisfies

$$\frac{1}{E - H_0} = \sum_{k\alpha} \frac{|k\alpha\rangle\langle k\alpha|}{E - \epsilon_k}.$$

  However, the denominator blows up for $k = n$ as the perturbation is removed.

- Instead, we define a restricted version

$$R = \sum_{k \neq n, \alpha} \frac{|k\alpha\rangle\langle k\alpha|}{E - \epsilon_k}.$$

  The denominator could also blow up if E coincides with some ϵ_k for $k \neq n$. We will consider this case in more detail later.

- The operator R is restricted to the orthogonal complement of $\mathcal{H}_n$, so it is annihilated by P and unaffected by Q, and

$$R(E - H_0) = (E - H_0)R = Q.$$

- Now, if we instead multiply both sides by R, we find

$$Q|\psi\rangle = \lambda R H_1 |\psi\rangle.$$

  Now if we add $P|\psi\rangle$ to both sides, we have

$$|\psi\rangle = P|\psi\rangle + \lambda R H_1 |\psi\rangle.$$

  This equation can be iterated, by plugging it into itself, to give a series,

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{s \geq 0} \lambda^s (R H_1)^s P|\psi\rangle.$$

As an example, we consider nondegenerate perturbation theory.

- In this case, there is only a single state $|n\rangle$ in $\mathcal{H}_n$. We normalize $|\psi\rangle$ so that $P|\psi\rangle = |n\rangle$, which implies $\langle n|\psi\rangle = 1$. The series reduces to

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{s \geq 0} \lambda^s (R H_1)^s |n\rangle.$$

- Plugging in the definitions, to second order we have

$$|\psi\rangle = |n\rangle + \lambda \sum_{k \neq n, \alpha} |k\alpha\rangle \frac{\langle k\alpha|H_1|n\rangle}{E - \epsilon_k} + \lambda^2 \sum_{k \neq n, \alpha} \sum_{k' \neq n, \alpha'} |k\alpha\rangle \frac{\langle k\alpha|H_1|k'\alpha'\rangle\langle k'\alpha'|H_1|n\rangle}{(E - \epsilon_k)(E - \epsilon_{k'})} + \ldots$$

  We see the expected suppression by energy differences of the contribution of other states.

- To get the energy E, we note that

$$0 = \langle n|E - H_0 - \lambda H_1|\psi\rangle = E - \epsilon_n - \lambda \langle n|H_1|\psi\rangle.$$

  The last term can be computed using the series above, giving

$$E = \epsilon_n + \lambda \langle n|H_1|n\rangle + \lambda^2 \langle n|H_1 R H_1|n\rangle + \lambda^3 \langle n|H_1 R H_1 R H_1|n\rangle + \ldots$$

  which can be written explicitly as

$$E = \epsilon_n + \lambda \langle n|H_1|n\rangle + \lambda^2 \sum_{k \neq n, \alpha} \frac{\langle n|H_1|k\alpha\rangle\langle k\alpha|H_1|n\rangle}{E - \epsilon_k}$$

$$+ \lambda^3 \sum_{k \neq n, \alpha} \sum_{k' \neq n, \alpha'} \frac{\langle n|H_1|k\alpha\rangle\langle k\alpha|H_1|k'\alpha'\rangle\langle k'\alpha'|H_1|n\rangle}{(E - \epsilon_k)(E - \epsilon_{k'})} + \ldots$$

- This is still an implicit expression, because E appears on both sides. However, we can use it to extract an explicit series for E. For example, at first order we have

$$E = \epsilon_n + \lambda \langle n|H_1|n \rangle + O(\lambda^2).$$

  To go to second order, it suffices to take the first three terms in the series for E, plugging in the zeroth-order expression for E into the $O(\lambda^2)$ term, giving

$$E = \epsilon_n + \lambda \langle n|H_1|n \rangle + \lambda^2 \sum_{k \neq n, \alpha} \frac{\langle n|H_1|k\alpha \rangle \langle k\alpha|H_1|n \rangle}{\epsilon_n - \epsilon_k} + O(\lambda^3)$$

  which is what appears in most textbooks. However, at higher orders, this explicit Rayleigh–Schrodinger expansion begins to look more complicated.

- We can then plug this back into the expansion for $|\psi\rangle$. For example, at first order,

$$|\psi\rangle = |n\rangle + \lambda \sum_{k \neq n, \alpha} |k\alpha\rangle \frac{\langle k\alpha|H_1|n \rangle}{\epsilon_n - \epsilon_k} + O(\lambda^2)$$

  which is again a standard textbook result.

Now we consider the degenerate case.

- In this case, we must expand $P|\psi\rangle$ as

$$P|\psi\rangle = \sum_{\alpha} |n\alpha\rangle c_\alpha$$

  where the coefficients c_α are unknown.

- The equation we used above for the energy becomes

$$0 = \langle n\alpha|E - H_0 - \lambda H_1|\psi\rangle = (E - \epsilon_n)c_\alpha - \lambda \langle n\alpha|H_1|\psi\rangle.$$

  Plugging in the series solution for $|\psi\rangle$ gives

$$(E - \epsilon_n)c_\alpha = \sum_{\beta} \left(\lambda \langle n\alpha|H_1|n\beta \rangle + \lambda^2 \sum_{k \neq n, \gamma} \frac{\langle n\alpha|H_1|k\gamma \rangle \langle k\gamma|H_1|n\beta \rangle}{E - \epsilon_k} + \ldots \right) c_\beta.$$

  Regarding the quantity in brackets as a $g \times g$ matrix, where $g = \dim \mathcal{H}_n$ is the degeneracy, we see that the energies E are determined by the eigenvalues of this matrix, and the states (each specified by a set of coefficients c_α) corresponds to the eigenvectors. The extra complication is that E also appears in the matrix elements.

- Often, we will only want the first order effect. In this case, the eigenvectors are just those of H_1 restricted to $\mathcal{H}_n$, and the energy shifts are just the corresponding eigenvalues of H_1.

- Sometimes, some or all of the states will remain degenerate. This degeneracy might be broken at some higher order. If it's never broken at any order, than in almost every case we can identify a symmetry of the full Hamiltonian which is responsible for this.

- To work at second order, we can substitute E with ϵ_n in the denominator of the quadratic term, giving a standard eigenvalue equation. Alternatively, we can treat $\lambda \langle n\alpha | H_1 | n\beta \rangle$ as part of the unperturbed Hamiltonian, as we have presumably already diagonalized it to get the first order result, and treat the quadratic term as the perturbation in a new, lower-dimensional problem.

- Once we have E and the c_α to some order, we know $P|\psi\rangle$, and we can simply plug this into our series for $|\psi\rangle$ to get the full state to the same order.

- Sometimes, one is concerned with "nearly degenerate" perturbation theory, where some energy levels are very close in the unperturbed Hamiltonian. Then even a weak perturbation can cause the perturbed energy E to cross another unperturbed energy level, causing R to diverge.

- To fix this, we can transfer a small term from H_0 and H_1 so that these problematic unperturbed energy levels are exactly degenerate, then use ordinary degenerate perturbation theory. (This is, of course, what we are implicitly doing whenever we use degenerate perturbation theory at all, since practically there are always further effects that break the degeneracies.)

- A completely equivalent solution is to define R excluding both $\mathcal{H}_n$ and all nearly degenerate eigenspaces; the resulting series is the same.

Note. Why does a state within a continuum have to be treated with time-dependent perturbation theory? The point is that the state generally gets "lost" into the continuum, i.e. the true energy eigenstates have zero overlap with the original unperturbed state. For example, if we prepare an atom in an excited state but allow it to radiate into vacuum (thus introducing a continuum of states of the electromagnetic field), then no matter how we prepare the atom, the long-term probability of occupancy of the state is zero. This is true no matter how weak the perturbation is, making time-independent perturbation theory useless.

9.2   The Stark Effect

As a first example, we consider the Stark effect for both hydrogen and the valence electron in alkali atoms, using the approximation described previously. We ignore all other effects that could cause energy level splitting, which we will consider in detail later.

- In hydrogen, the potential is $V_0(r) = -e^2/r$ and the energy levels are

$$E_n = -\frac{1}{2n^2}\frac{e^2}{a_0}$$

  while for alkali atoms, the energy levels are $E_{n,\ell}$ with energy increasing with ℓ.

- We take the electric field to be $\mathbf{F} = F\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ (to avoid confusion with energy), so the perturbation is

$$V_1 = q\Phi = eFz$$

  where the electron charge is $q = -e$.

- It's reasonable to treat this as a small perturbation near the nucleus, since electric fields made in the laboratory are typically much weaker than those in atoms. However, V_1 grows for large r while V_0 falls, so the perturbation analysis doesn't work for states with sufficiently large n.

- Technically, there don't exist any bound states at all, no matter how small the field F is, because the potential will become very negative for $z \to -\infty$. Hence all states can tunnel over a barrier and escape to infinity. We'll ignore this, since for small n, the barrier width grows as $1/F$, and hence the tunneling rate falls very quickly as F is decreased. More precisely, it can be calculated using the WKB approximation.

Now we consider some basic examples.

- The ground state of hydrogen is $|100\rangle$, while the ground state of an alkali atom is $|n00\rangle$. There is no linear (i.e. first order) Stark effect in this case, because

$$\Delta E_g^{(1)} = \langle n00|eFz|n00\rangle = 0$$

by parity, since the states have definite parity and z is odd under parity. We saw a similar conclusion when discussing electric dipole transitions above.

- The linear Stark effect can only occur if the corresponding eigenstate has a permanent dipole moment $\mathbf{d}$. Classically, we expect that $\Delta E = -\mathbf{d} \cdot \mathbf{F}$. Quantum mechanically, the dipole moment operator and linear energy shift are

$$\mathbf{d} = q\mathbf{x} = -e\mathbf{x}, \quad \Delta E^{(1)} = -\langle \mathbf{d} \rangle \cdot \mathbf{F}.$$

However, $\langle \mathbf{d} \rangle$ must vanish for any nondegenerate energy eigenstate, simply because parity leaves the energy invariant but flips $\mathbf{d}$. Hence to see a linear Stark effect, we require degenerate states.

- In a generic alkali atom, only states of the same n and ℓ are degenerate. But as we argued earlier, the operator z has to change ℓ by ± 1, so again there is no linear Stark effect. More generally, we need systems with degenerate $SU(2)$ multiplets with opposite parities.

- Now consider the excited states of hydrogen. We focus on the states with principal quantum number n, which are n^2-fold degenerate. The linear Stark effect depends on the matrix elements

$$\langle n\ell m|eFz|n\ell'm'\rangle.$$

As shown earlier, we must have $\Delta\ell = \pm 1$, and since z is invariant under rotations about the z-axis, $m = m'$. For example, for $n = 2$, the only states that can be connected by the perturbation are $|200\rangle$ and $|210\rangle$.

- By using the explicit hydrogen wavefunctions, we have

$$\langle 200|eFz|210\rangle = -W, \quad W = 3eFa_0.$$

The energy W is of the order of the energy needed to shift the electron from one side of the atom to the other. This is because $|210\rangle$ has two symmetric lobes, of positive and negative z. Adding on $|200\rangle$ will make one lobe grow and the other shrink, depending on the phase.

- Restricting to these two states, the perturbation matrix is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -W \\ -W & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

so the first-order energy shifts are $\Delta E_2^{(1)} = \pm W$. The $n = 2$ energy level splits into three, with the new eigenstates

$$|\pm W\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|200\rangle \mp |210\rangle)$$

and the states $|211\rangle$ and $|21, -1\rangle$ remaining degenerate at this order.

- This degeneracy remains at all orders, and can be explained using symmetries. In fact, it turns out that this degeneracy can be explained by the surviving subset of the $SO(4)$ symmetry of the hydrogen atom. However, the degeneracy can also be explained more simply by noting that L_z and time reversal Θ commute with H.

- From L_z, we know the energy eigenstates can be labeled as $|\gamma m\rangle$ where γ is an additional index. We also know that Θ flips the sign of m. Hence all states with $m \neq 0$ are at least doubly degenerate.

- This result should not be confused with Kramer's degeneracy, which applies to systems without rotational symmetry but an odd number of fermions. Since we have neglected the electron's spin, its fermionic nature never came into play above.

Example. In the H_2^+ molecule, the protons can be treated as roughly fixed. Then there is rotational symmetry along the axis connecting them, causing two-fold degeneracy for $m \neq 0$ states as above. However, in reality the protons are free to move, causing a small splitting known as "Λ-doubling", where Λ is the standard name for the magnetic quantum number of the electrons about the axis of a diatomic molecule.

We now continue discussing the Stark effect in hydrogen.

- In the absence of an external field, the $2p$ level of hydrogen decays quickly to $1s$, with a lifetime on the order of 10^{-9} seconds. But the $2s$ state has a much longer lifetime of 10^{-1} seconds, because it decays to $1s$ by emitting two photons. This makes it easy to prepare a population of $2s$ and $1s$ states.

- However, by turning on an electric field, the $2s$ and $2p$ states rapidly evolve into each other. When such a field is applied to a population of $2s$ hydrogen atoms, the result is a rapid burst of photons.

- Now we return to the ground state and consider the first order wavefunction shift. The result is

$$|\psi\rangle = |100\rangle + \sum_{n\ell m \neq 100} |n\ell m\rangle \frac{\langle n\ell m|eFz|100\rangle}{E_1 - E_n}.$$

This state has an induced dipole moment.

- If we define the polarizability α by the first-order response to the field,

$$\langle \mathbf{d}\rangle = \alpha \mathbf{F} + O(F^2)$$

then we have

$$\alpha = -2e^2 \sum_{n\ell m \neq 100} \frac{\langle 100|z|n\ell m\rangle\langle n\ell m|z|100\rangle}{E_1 - E_n}.$$

More generally, the polarizability could be a tensor, $\langle d_i\rangle = \alpha_{ij}F_j + O(F^2)$. We can convert the polarizability of an atom to a dielectric constant of a gas using the Clausius-Mossotti formula.

- Next, we can compute the energy shift of the ground state to second order, i.e. the quadratic Stark effect. The result is

$$\Delta E_g^{(2)} = \sum_{n\ell m \neq 100} \frac{\langle 100|eFz|n\ell m\rangle\langle n\ell m|eFz|100\rangle}{E_1 - E_n} = -\frac{1}{2}\alpha F^2 = -\frac{1}{2}\langle \mathbf{d}\rangle \cdot \mathbf{F}.$$

  This factor of $1/2$ is exactly as expected, because the dipole moment is induced, rather than permanent; it grows linearly with $\mathbf{F}$ as $\mathbf{F}$ is turned on.

- Calculating α is a little tricky, because we must sum over an infinite number of intermediate states, including the ionized continuum states. However, a crude estimate can be done using

$$E_n - E_1 > E_2 - E_1 = \frac{3}{8}\frac{e^2}{a_0}$$

  which implies

$$\alpha < \frac{2e^2}{E_2 - E_1}\sum_{n\ell m}\langle 100|z|n\ell m\rangle\langle n\ell m|z|100\rangle$$

  where we have removed the restriction on the sum since the additional term doesn't contribute anyway. Recognizing a resolution of the identity,

$$\alpha < \frac{2e^2}{E_2 - E_1}\langle 100|z^2|100\rangle = \frac{2e^2}{E_2 - E_1}a_0^2 = \frac{16}{3}a_0^3.$$

  Of course, we could have guessed that $\alpha \sim a_0^3$ from a classical model, thinking of the electron as a mass on a spring. The exact answer turns out to be $\alpha = (9/2)a_0^3$.

- Above, we have discussed a stark difference between a system with degeneracy and a system without: a lack of degeneracy guarantees no linear Stark effect. But in real life, degeneracy is never perfect. More precisely, if the degeneracy is weakly broken by some other physics, then the Stark effect will be quadratic in the regime where that other physics dominates, and linear when the Stark effect dominates. This is just the case for hydrogen, where the $2s$ and $2p$ degeneracy is already broken by the Lamb shift.

- A more formal way to say this is that the full Hamiltonian can be written as H_0 plus a possibly large number of small perturbations. To get the right answer, we should account for the most important perturbation first, then treat the next-most important perturbation as a perturbation on the result, and so on. Of course the physical answer doesn't depend on how we do the ordering, but if we choose it wrong, then our resulting series won't be good.

- In chemistry, one often speaks of molecules with permanent electric dipole moments. This doesn't violate parity; it simply means that two energy levels of opposite parity are close enough that even a small electric field takes the Stark effect into the linear regime; however, as long as the energy levels are not exactly degenerate (which will always be the case) there is also a quadratic regime at low fields.

9.3   Fine Structure

Next we consider fine structure, which concerns the effects of relativity and spin. These appear at the same order, namely $(v/c)^2$, so they must be treated together. They may also be derived in a unified way from the Dirac equation, though we do not do this here.

- There are three new terms: the relativistic kinetic energy correction, the Darwin term, and the spin-order term,

$$H_{\mathrm{FS}} = H_{\mathrm{RKE}} + H_{\mathrm{D}} + H_{\mathrm{SO}}.$$

- The first correction comes from the relativistic kinetic energy,

$$E = \sqrt{m^2 c^4 + p^2 c^2} = mc^2 + \frac{p^2}{2m} - \frac{p^4}{8m^3 c^2} + \dots.$$

- The spin-orbit coupling term is

$$H_{\mathrm{SO}} = -\frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B}'$$

where $\mathbf{B}'$ is the magnetic field as seen in the electron's momentary rest frame. The factor of $1/2$ is because the electron's frame is not inertial, and half of the effect is cancelled out by Thomas precession. This is a tricky calculation; in any case the result can also be extracted straightforwardly from the Dirac equation.

- In the lab frame, we have

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{1}{e}\nabla V = \frac{1}{e}\frac{1}{r}\frac{dV}{dr}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{B} = 0.$$

The leading order field transformations when the electric field dominates are

$$\mathbf{E}' = \mathbf{E}, \quad \mathbf{B}' = -\frac{\mathbf{v}}{c} \times \mathbf{E}.$$

- Since we are interested in the leading effect, we plug in $\mathbf{p} = m\mathbf{v}$ to find

$$\mathbf{B}' = \frac{1}{emc}\frac{1}{r}\frac{dV}{dr}\mathbf{L}$$

where $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{p}$ is the orbital angular momentum of the electron. Finally, using $\boldsymbol{\mu} = -(e/mc)\mathbf{S}$ with the leading order result $g = 2$, we have

$$H_{\mathrm{SO}} = \frac{1}{2m^2 c^2}\frac{1}{r}\frac{dV}{dr}\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{S}.$$

- Finally, the Darwin term arises because the electron's location is smeared on the order of the Compton wavelength $\lambda = \hbar/mc$. This means the electron really feels the average of the electrostatic potential over a region of radius λ. By the harmonic property of the Laplacian, this gives a correction proportional to $\lambda^2 \nabla^2 V$.

- A genuine derivation using the Dirac equation gives the coefficient,

$$H_{\mathrm{D}} = \frac{1}{8}\frac{\hbar^2}{m^2 c^2}\nabla^2 V.$$

At the level of the Dirac equation, the Darwin term comes from interference between positive and negative frequency components. These cause rapid oscillations at the Compton frequency, known as Zitterbewegung, that smooth out the location of the electron.

- We now specialize to atomic units $\hbar = m = e = 1$, where $\alpha = 1/c \approx 1/137$. In this case,

$$H_{\mathrm{RKE}} = -\frac{\alpha^2}{8}p^4, \quad H_{\mathrm{D}} = \frac{\alpha^2}{8}\nabla^2 V, \quad H_{\mathrm{SO}} = \frac{\alpha^2}{2}\frac{1}{r}\frac{dV}{dr}\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{S}$$

and it is clear the terms are all of the same order.

- We can specialize further to one-electron atoms, where

$$V(r) = -\frac{Z}{r}, \quad \frac{1}{r}\frac{dV}{dr} = \frac{Z}{r^3}, \quad \nabla^2 V = 4\pi Z \delta(\mathbf{x})$$

  and the last two terms become

$$H_{\mathrm{D}} = Z\alpha^2 \frac{\pi}{2}\delta(\mathbf{x}), \quad H_{\mathrm{SO}} = \frac{Z\alpha^2}{2}\frac{1}{r^3}\mathbf{L}\cdot\mathbf{S}.$$

  Note that a factor of Z has appeared in H_{D} because $Z\delta(\mathbf{x})$ is the charge density of the nucleus.

- As we will see below, the energy shifts will all be proportional to $(Z\alpha)^2$. In fact, the full expansion from the Dirac equation is a series in $(Z\alpha)^2$, and hence is good when $Z\alpha \ll 1$. For heavy atoms such as uranium, it is better to use a fully relativistic treatment.

Next, we discuss the choice of basis.

- Since we are now dealing with spin, we include the spin magnetic quantum number, giving the unperturbed basis $|n\ell m_\ell m_s\rangle$ which simultaneously diagonalizes $\mathbf{L}$, L^2, $\mathbf{S}$, and S^2. The energy levels are $E_n = -Z^2/2n^2$.

- In general, it is useful to choose a basis which diagonalizes observables that commute with the full Hamiltonian. If we choose the basis naively, we will have to diagonalize a $2n^2 \times 2n^2$ matrix, while if we choose it well, we get selection rules which break the matrix into smaller pieces.

- As such, it may be useful to consider the total angular momentum $\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{L} + \mathbf{S}$. Since H_{RKE} is a scalar, it commutes with $\mathbf{L}$. Since it only depends on the orbital motion, it commutes with $\mathbf{S}$, and hence with $\mathbf{J}$. Similarly, H_{D} commutes with all of these operators. But we have

$$[\mathbf{L}, H_{\mathrm{SO}}] \neq 0, \quad [\mathbf{S}, H_{\mathrm{SO}}] \neq 0$$

  but $[\mathbf{J}, H_{\mathrm{SO}}] = 0$, since $\mathbf{J}$ rotates the entire system. Furthermore, H_{SO} commutes with L^2 and S^2 because, for example, $[L^2, \mathbf{L}\cdot\mathbf{S}] = [L^2, \mathbf{L}]\cdot\mathbf{S} = 0$.

- Hence we are motivated to work in the "coupled basis" $|n\ell j m_j\rangle$ which simultaneously diagonalizes L^2, S^2, J^2, and J_z. This is related to the original basis by Clebsch-Gordan coefficients,

$$|n\ell j m_j\rangle = \sum_{m_\ell, m_s} |n\ell m_\ell m_s\rangle\langle \ell s m_\ell m_s | j m_j\rangle$$

  and we will suppress s below. Since all three fine structure terms are diagonal in the coupled basis, there is no need to do degenerate perturbation theory; we just have to compute their diagonal matrix elements. (There is no point in going to second order perturbation theory, since there are other effects that are more important at first order.)

Now we proceed to computing the energy shifts.

- It's easier to think about H_{RKE} in the uncoupled basis, then transform to the coupled basis. This term is purely orbital and commutes with L^2, so

$$\langle n\ell m_\ell m_s | H_{\mathrm{RKE}} | n\ell' m_\ell' m_s'\rangle = \delta_{\ell\ell'}\delta_{m_s m_s'}\langle n\ell m_\ell | H_{\mathrm{RKE}} | n\ell m_\ell'\rangle.$$

  Since H_{RKE} is a scalar operator, by the Wigner–Eckart theorem we have

$$\langle n\ell m_\ell | H_{\mathrm{RKE}} | n\ell m_\ell'\rangle = \delta_{m_\ell m_\ell'}\langle n\ell 0 | H_{\mathrm{RKE}} | n\ell 0\rangle.$$

- Now, applying Clebsch-Gordan coefficients, and the above results,

$$\langle n\ell j m_j | H_{\text{RKE}} | n\ell j m_j \rangle = \sum_{m_\ell, m_s} \sum_{m'_\ell, m'_s} \langle j m_j | \ell m_\ell m_s \rangle \langle n\ell m_\ell m_s | H_{\text{RKE}} | n\ell m'_\ell m'_s \rangle \langle \ell m'_\ell m'_s | j m_j \rangle$$

$$= \langle n\ell 0 | H_{\text{RKE}} | n\ell 0 \rangle \sum_{m_\ell, m_s} \langle j m_j | \ell m_\ell m_s \rangle \langle \ell m_\ell m_s | j m_j \rangle$$

$$= \langle n\ell 0 | H_{\text{RKE}} | n\ell 0 \rangle$$

so the coefficients have dropped out completely.

- It remains to calculate the expectation value. This is easiest if we note that

$$H_{\text{RKE}} = -\frac{\alpha^2}{2} T^2 = -\frac{\alpha^2}{2} (H_0 - V)^2$$

since we know how to calculate the expectation values of H_0 and V,

$$\langle H_0 \rangle = E_n, \quad \langle V \rangle = -Z \left\langle \frac{1}{r} \right\rangle = -\frac{Z^2}{n^2}$$

where the latter result follows from the virial theorem.

- The difficult part is calculating $\langle V^2 \rangle$, which requires special function techniques, giving

$$\left\langle \frac{1}{r^2} \right\rangle = \frac{Z^2}{n^3(\ell + 1/2)}$$

which gives a total energy shift of

$$\langle n\ell j m_j | H_{\text{RKE}} | n\ell j m_j \rangle = (Z\alpha)^2 (-E_n) \frac{1}{n^2} \left(\frac{3}{4} - \frac{n}{\ell + 1/2} \right).$$

- By the same reasoning, the Darwin term reduces to

$$\langle n\ell j m_j | H_{\text{D}} | n\ell j m_j \rangle = \langle n\ell 0 | H_{\text{D}} | n\ell 0 \rangle = Z\alpha^2 \frac{\pi}{2} |\psi_{n\ell 0}(0)|^2.$$

The shift is only nonzero for $\ell = 0$, where we get a factor of $Y_{00} = 1/\sqrt{4\pi}$. Using the result $R_{n0}(0) = 2(Z/n)^{3/2}$, we have

$$\langle n\ell j m_j | H_{\text{D}} | n\ell j m_j \rangle = (Z\alpha)^2 (-E_n) \frac{1}{n} \delta_{\ell 0}.$$

- The spin-orbit term is best handled by writing

$$\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{2}(J^2 - L^2 - S^2).$$

As promised above, this is easy to evaluate in the coupled basis,

$$\langle n\ell j m_j | H_{\text{SO}} | n\ell j m_j \rangle = \frac{Z\alpha^2}{4} (j(j+1) - \ell(\ell+1) - s(s+1)) \langle n\ell j m_j | \frac{1}{r^3} | n\ell j m_j \rangle$$

where $j = \ell \pm 1/2$.

- By the same reasoning as above, the final factor can be written as

$$\langle n\ell j m_j | \frac{1}{r^3} | n\ell j m_j \rangle = \langle n\ell 0 | \frac{1}{r^3} | n\ell 0 \rangle$$

and special function techniques give

$$\left\langle \frac{1}{r^3} \right\rangle = \frac{Z^3}{n^3 \ell (\ell + 1/2)(\ell + 1)}.$$

- In the case $\ell = 0$, the prefactor is zero, but $\langle 1/r^3 \rangle$ diverges, so the result is indeterminate. The proper way to handle this is to regulate the Coulomb singularity, which causes $\langle 1/r^3 \rangle$ not to diverge, giving a result of zero.

- The spin-orbit and Darwin terms both have special cases for $\ell = 0$, contributing or not contributing respectively, but combine into something simple. The total result is

$$\Delta E_{\text{FS}} = (Z\alpha)^2 (-E_n) \frac{1}{n^2} \left(\frac{3}{4} - \frac{n}{j + 1/2} \right).$$

Remarkably, the answer only depends directly on n and j, so the energy levels are

$$E_{nj} = -\frac{Z^2}{2n^2} \left(1 - \frac{(Z\alpha)^2}{n^2} \left(\frac{3}{4} - \frac{n}{j + 1/2} \right) \right).$$

The energy levels are shifted downward, and the total energy increases with j. Some degeneracy remains, indicating a residual symmetry of the system.

We now make some comments about this result.

- As shown here, the Dirac equation gives an exact result for the hydrogen energy levels,

$$E_{nj} = \frac{mc^2}{\left(1 + \left(\dfrac{Z\alpha}{n - j - 1/2 + \sqrt{(j + 1/2)^2 - (Z\alpha)^2}} \right)^2 \right)^{1/2}}$$

which recovers mc^2, the ordinary energy levels, and the fine structure when expanded. However, at the next order additional effects appear which are not captured by the Dirac equation, such as hyperfine structure and the Lamb shift.

- Some energy levels are shown below, with the fine structure exaggerated for clarity. This diagram uses spectroscopic notation $n\ell_j$, where $\ell = s, p, d, f, \ldots$.

- The arrows above also show the allowed electric dipole transitions. These are determined by the matrix elements $\langle n\ell j m_j | \mathbf{x} | n'\ell'j'm_j'\rangle$. Note that the operator $\mathbf{x}$ is a tensor operator of spin 1 with respect to both purely spatial rotations, generated by $\mathbf{L}$, and rotations of the whole system, generated by $\mathbf{J}$. Applying the Wigner–Eckart theorem gives the constraints

$$|\Delta\ell| \leq 1, \quad |\Delta j| \leq 1, \quad |\Delta m_j| \leq 1.$$

Parity gives the additional constraint $\Delta\ell \neq 0$, since the parity of the coupled states is $(-1)^\ell$, but it places no constraint on Δj.

- The Lamb shift is due to the interaction of the electron with the quantized electromagnetic field. Its most historically important effect is splitting the degeneracy between $2s_{1/2}$ and $2p_{1/2}$, so that $2s_{1/2}$ is about $1\,\mathrm{GHz}$ higher than $2p_{1/2}$. For comparison, fine structure places $2p_{3/2}$ about $10\,\mathrm{GHz}$ higher. Parametrically, the Lamb shift scales as $E_n\alpha^3\log(1/\alpha)$.

- Since $2s_{1/2}$ cannot participate in electric dipole transitions, the Lamb shift means that its dominant decay mode is to $2p_{1/2}$, upon which the atom quickly decays to $1s_{1/2}$.

- In alkali atoms, much of the above reasoning also goes through, except that here the degeneracy in ℓ is already strongly split by the non-Coulomb nature of the potential. In this case, the most important effect is the spin-orbit coupling, because this is the only term that breaks degeneracy in j. By a similar analysis,

$$\Delta E_{\mathrm{SO}} = \frac{\alpha^2}{4}(j(j+1) - \ell(\ell+1) - 3/4)\left\langle\frac{1}{r}\frac{dV}{dr}\right\rangle.$$

For example, this term splits the $3p$ level of sodium to $3p_{1/2}$ and $3p_{3/2}$. When these levels decay to $3s$, one observes the sodium doublet.

Note. The Lamb shift is just an additional smearing like the Darwin term, which is due to interaction with vacuum fluctuations. Consider an atom in a large cubical box of side length L. The modes of

the quantum electromagnetic field perpetually have vacuum energy $\hbar\omega_k$, where ω_k is their frequency. These quantum fluctuations can be heuristically treated as a randomly varying classical electric field $\mathbf{E}_k$, where

$$|\mathbf{E}_k|^2 L^3 \sim \hbar\omega_k$$

since both sides measure the total field energy in that mode. The random fluctuations change over a characteristic time $\tau \sim 1/\omega_k$, over which the displacement of the particle is

$$\delta r \sim e|\mathbf{E}_k|\tau^2 \sim \frac{e|\mathbf{E}_k|}{\omega_k^2}.$$

Since the fluctuations of these modes are independent, the mean square fluctuation is

$$\langle \delta r^2 \rangle \sim \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{e^2|\mathbf{E}_k|^2}{\omega_k^4} \sim e^2\hbar \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{1}{(L\omega_k)^3} \sim e^2\hbar \int d\mathbf{k} \left(\frac{L}{\hbar}\right)^3 \frac{1}{(L\omega_k)^3} \sim \frac{e^2}{\hbar^2 c^3} \int \frac{d\mathbf{k}}{k^3}$$

where we used the fact that states are spaced in momentum space by $\Delta k \sim \hbar/L$. This integral is logarithmically divergent, but we should put in cutoffs. Modes with wavelengths larger than the atom don't affect the electron much, just pushing on it adiabatically, while modes with wavelengths smaller than the electron's Compton wavelength will instead cause new particles to spontaneously pop out of the vacuum. The ratio between these two scales is α, so

$$\langle \delta r^2 \rangle \sim \frac{e^2}{\hbar^2 c^3} \log \frac{1}{\alpha}.$$

Following the same reasoning for the Darwin term, this gives an energy shift of

$$\frac{\Delta E}{E_n} \sim \alpha^3 \log \frac{1}{\alpha}$$

for $\ell = 0$ states. One can use a similar story to justify the Darwin term within quantum field theory. Instead of interacting with virtual photons, an electron-positron pair suddenly, spontaneously appears out of the vacuum. The positron annihilates the old electron and the new electron continues on in its place, effectively allowing the electron's position to teleport.

   This is a neat derivation, but one should keep in mind that "quantum fluctuations" don't generally behave like classical stochastic ones. Injecting stochastic fluctuations is sufficient to recover *some* of the predictions of quantum field theory, just like how adding fluctuations to a classical point particle can recover part of the flavor of ordinary quantum mechanics, but it doesn't work in general. (It if actually did, there would be no point in using quantum mechanics at all!)

Note. A quick and dirty derivation of Thomas precession. Consider an electron moving at speed $v \ll c$, which is following a straight track, which suddenly turns by an angle $\theta \ll 1$. In the electron's frame, the track is length contracted in the longitudinal direction, so it has a larger turn angle,

$$\theta' = \tan^{-1}(\gamma \tan \theta) \approx \gamma\theta.$$

That is, the electron thinks it turns by a larger amount than it does in the lab frame, by

$$\frac{\theta' - \theta}{\theta} \approx \gamma - 1 \approx \frac{v^2}{2c^2}.$$

If the electron moves uniformly in the lab frame, then the "extra" precession is

$$\omega_T = \frac{\omega v^2}{2c^2} = \frac{av}{2c^2}$$

and thinking a bit about the directions gives

$$\boldsymbol{\omega}_T = \frac{\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{a}}{2c^2}.$$

This is the result for Thomas precession in the nonrelativistic limit. Plugging in $\mathbf{a} = \hat{\mathbf{r}}(dV/dr)$ shows that half of the naive spin-orbit contribution is cancelled, as claimed above. The exact result, which can be derived by integrating infinitesimal Lorentz transformations, is

$$\boldsymbol{\omega}_T = \frac{\gamma^2}{\gamma + 1} \frac{\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{a}}{2c^2}.$$

9.4   The Zeeman Effect

Next, we consider the Zeeman effect, involving atoms in magnetic fields.

- We continue to use atomic units, where $c = 1/\alpha \approx 137$. This means the Bohr magneton is

$$\mu_B = \frac{e\hbar}{2mc} = \frac{1}{2c} = \frac{\alpha}{2}.$$

  Taking the electron g factor to be 2, we hence have

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = g\mu_B \frac{\mathbf{S}}{\hbar} = -\alpha \mathbf{S}$$

  so the energy of interaction of an electron spin in a magnetic field is

$$-\boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \mathbf{B} = \alpha \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{S}.$$

- Typical magnetic fields in an atom are, by dimensional analysis in Gaussian units,

$$B_0 = \frac{e}{a_0^2} = \frac{m^2 e^5}{\hbar^4} = 1.72 \times 10^3 \text{ T}$$

  This is equal to the electric field at the Bohr radius, which in Gaussian units has the same units as the magnetic field.

- However, the most important quantity for perturbation theory is the magnitude of the force; magnetic forces are suppressed by a factor of $v/c = \alpha$ relative to electric ones. Hence a magnetic field perturbation to be comparable in effect to the electrostatic field, we need field strength $B_0/\alpha = 2.35 \times 10^5 \text{ T}$, which is much higher than anything that can be made in the lab. As such, we will always treat the magnetic fields as weak.

- Accounting for fine structure, the Hamiltonian is

$$H = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{p} + \alpha \mathbf{A})^2 + V(r) + H_{\text{FS}} + \alpha \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{S}.$$

  This differs from our earlier expression because we are using Gaussian and atomic units, where $q = -1$. In Gaussian units, since magnetic fields have the same units as electric ones, one can get them from the SI result by "dividing by c", accounting for the factor of α in the orbital piece. This also makes it clear that the spin and orbital pieces both contribute at $O(\alpha)$.

- We take the magnetic field and vector potential to be

$$\mathbf{B} = B\hat{\mathbf{z}}, \quad \mathbf{A} = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{r}.$$

  Since this vector potential is in Coulomb gauge, $\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{p}$, so

$$T = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{p} + \alpha\mathbf{A})^2 = \frac{p^2}{2} + \alpha\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \frac{\alpha^2}{2}A^2 = T_1 + T_2 + T_3.$$

- We can simplify T_2 by noting that

$$T_2 = \frac{\alpha}{2}\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{r}) = \frac{\alpha}{2}\mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{L}, \quad \mathbf{L} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p}$$

  where we used the scalar triple product rule, and there are no ordering issues since $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$.

- The term T_3 can be expanded as

$$T_3 = \frac{\alpha^2}{8}B^2(x^2 + y^2)$$

  and hence behaves like a potential. However, it is suppressed by another power of α, and hence can be dropped.

- The last term is the spin term $\alpha\mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{S}$. Combining this with T_2 gives the total perturbation

$$H_Z = \frac{\alpha}{2}\mathbf{B} \cdot (\mathbf{L} + 2\mathbf{S}) = \frac{\alpha}{2}B(L_z + 2S_z).$$

  The reason we can't drop the fine structure contributions is that they scale as α^2, while the Zeeman perturbation scales as αB. As a crude estimate, the two are equally important for field strengths $\alpha B_0 \sim 10\,\text{T}$, which is quite high, though the threshold is actually about a factor of 10 smaller due to suppression by dimensionless quantum numbers.

- On the scale of materials, the spin and T_2 terms are responsible for Pauli paramagnetism, while the T_3 term is responsible for Landau diamagnetism; we've seen both when covering statistical mechanics. The Zeeman effect is also used to measure magnetic fields via spectral lines.

First, we consider the strong field case, where H_Z dominates. This strong-field Zeeman effect is also called the Paschen–Back effect. Note that we can't take the field strength to be too high, or else the term T_3 will become important.

- The first task is to choose a good basis. Since the magnetic field is in the $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$ direction, H_Z commutes with L_z, S_z, and J_z. Furthermore, it commutes with L^2 and S^2. However, we have

$$[J^2, H_Z] \neq 0$$

  because J^2 contains $\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{S}$, which in turn contains $L_x S_x + L_y S_y$. Thus, the Zeeman effect prefers the uncoupled basis.

- In the uncoupled basis, the perturbation is already diagonal, so we just read off

$$\Delta E = \frac{\alpha}{2}B\langle n\ell m_\ell m_s|L_z + 2S_z|n\ell m_\ell m_s\rangle = \frac{\alpha}{2}B(m_\ell + 2m_s) = \mu_B B(m_\ell + 2m_s).$$

Note that if one didn't know about spin, one would expect that a spectral line always splits into an odd number of lines, since $\Delta E = \mu_B B m_\ell$. Violations of this rule were called the anomalous Zeeman effect, and were one of the original pieces of evidence for spin. (In fact, a classical model of the atom can account for three lines, one of the most common cases. The lines correspond to the electron oscillating along the field, and rotating clockwise and anticlockwise about it.)

- As an example, the $n = 2$ states of hydrogen behave as shown.
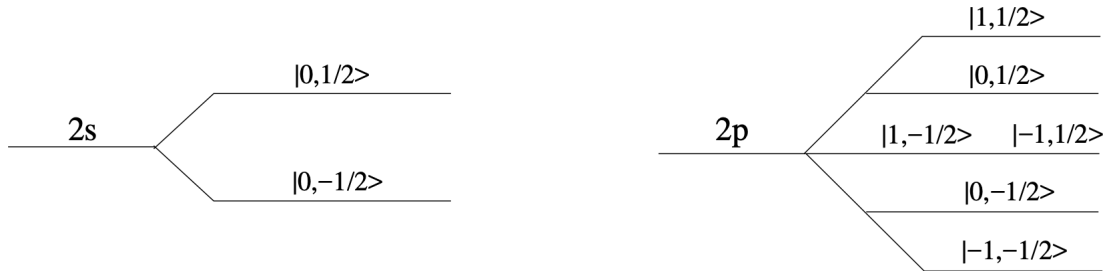
The $2p$ states $|m_\ell m_s\rangle = |-1, \frac{1}{2}\rangle$ and $|1, -\frac{1}{2}\rangle$ are degenerate. This degeneracy is broken by QED corrections to the electron g factor, though this is suppressed by another factor of α. This result holds identically for alkali atoms.

- For one-electron atoms, some of the $2s$ states are also degenerate with the $2p$ states, as $|\ell m_\ell m_s\rangle = |00\frac{1}{2}\rangle$ is degenerate with $|10\frac{1}{2}\rangle$, and $|00, -\frac{1}{2}\rangle$ with $|10, -\frac{1}{2}\rangle$. In total, the eight $n = 2$ states are split into five energy levels, three of which have two-fold degeneracy.

- We now consider the impact of fine structure, treating H_Z as part of the unperturbed Hamiltonian. For simplicity, we only consider the spin-orbit contribution,

$$H_{SO} = f(r)\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{S}, \quad f(r) = \frac{\alpha^2}{2}\frac{1}{r}\frac{dV}{dr}.$$

This is the conceptually trickiest one, since it prefers the coupled basis, while we must work in the uncoupled basis $|n\ell m_\ell m_s\rangle$, where there are two-fold degeneracies.

- Using this basis is tricky because H_{SO} can modify m_ℓ and m_s values (though not ℓ values, since $[L^2, H_{SO}] = 0$). However, it can only modify m_ℓ and m_s by at most one unit at a time, since

$$\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{2}(L_+ S_- + L_- S_+) + L_z S_z$$

or by applying the Wigner–Eckart theorem. The $2p$ degenerate states differ in m_s by multiples of 2, so H_{SO} can't mix the degenerate states. Hence to calculate the first order shift, it suffices to look at its diagonal matrix elements.

- Thus, the energy shifts are

$$\Delta E = \langle n\ell m_\ell m_s|f(r)\mathbf{L} \cdot \mathbf{S}|n\ell m_\ell m_s\rangle = m_\ell m_s\langle n\ell m_\ell|f(r)|n\ell m_\ell\rangle$$

and for hydrogen we have

$$\Delta E = m_\ell m_s \frac{\alpha^2}{2} \langle n\ell 0| \frac{1}{r^3}|n\ell 0\rangle = \frac{\alpha^2}{2n^3} \frac{m_\ell m_s}{\ell(\ell+1/2)(\ell+1)}.$$

In the case $\ell = 0$, the form above is indeterminate, but the energy shift is zero by similar reasoning to before.

Now we consider the weak field case, where H_{FS} dominates.

- For hydrogen, we should properly consider the Lamb shift, which is only 10 times smaller than the fine structure shifts on the $n = 2$ energy levels. However, we will ignore it for simplicity.

- In this case, we need to use the coupled basis $|n\ell jm_j\rangle$. The difficulty is that $[J^2, H_Z] \neq 0$. Luckily, the fine-structure energy levels depend directly on j, in the sense that energy levels with different j are not degenerate. Hence to calculate the first-order shift, we again do not have to diagonalize any matrices, and can focus on the diagonal elements,

$$\Delta E = \langle n\ell jm_j|\mu_B B(L_z + 2S_z)|n\ell jm_j\rangle.$$

Writing $L_z + 2S_z = J_z + S_z$, this becomes

$$\Delta E = \mu_B B \left(m_j + \langle n\ell jm_j|S_z|n\ell jm_j\rangle \right).$$

- The remaining factor can be calculated with the projection theorem,

$$\langle n\ell jm_j|S_z|n\ell jm_j\rangle = \frac{1}{j(j+1)} \langle n\ell jm_j|(\mathbf{S}\cdot\mathbf{J})J_z|n\ell jm_j\rangle$$

and using

$$\mathbf{S}\cdot\mathbf{J} = \frac{1}{2}\left(J^2 + S^2 - L^2\right).$$

This gives the result

$$\Delta E = g_L(\mu_B B)m_j, \quad g_L = 1 + \frac{j(j+1) + s(s+1) - \ell(\ell+1)}{2j(j+1)}$$

where g_L is called the Lande g-factor.

- The fundamental reason we can write the shift as linear in m_j, even when it depends on m_ℓ and m_s separately, is again the Wigner–Eckart theorem: there is only one possible vector operator on the relevant subspace.

- The naive classical result would be $g_L = 1 + 1/2 = 3/2$, and the result here is different because $\mathbf{J}$, $\mathbf{L}$ and $\mathbf{S}$ are not classical vectors, but rather noncommuting quantum operators. (A naive intuition here is that, due to the spin-orbit coupling, $\mathbf{L}$ and $\mathbf{S}$ are rapidly changing; we need to use the projection theorem to calculate their component along $\mathbf{J}$, which changes more slowly because the magnetic field is weak.) Note that g_L satisfies the expected limits: when $\ell = 0$ we have $g_L = 2$, while for $\ell \to \infty$ we have $g_L \to 1$.

- For stronger magnetic fields, we would have to calculate the second-order effect, which does involve mixing between subspaces of different ℓ. For the $n = 2$ energy levels this isn't too difficult, as only pairs of states are mixed, so one can easily calculate the exact answer.

9.5   Hyperfine Structure

Hyperfine structure comes from the multipole moments of the atomic nucleus, in particular the magnetic dipole and electric quadrupole fields.

- Hyperfine effects couple the nucleus and electrons together, thereby enlarging the Hilbert space. They have many useful applications. For example, the hyperfine splitting of the ground state of hydrogen produces the 21 cm line, which is useful in radio astronomy. Most atomic clocks use the frequency of a hyperfine transition in a heavy alkali atom, such as rubidium or cesium, the latter of which defines the second.

- We will denote the spin of the nucleus by $\mathbf{I}$, and as usual assume the nucleus is described by a single irrep, of I^2 eigenvalue $i(i + 1)\hbar^2$. The nucleus Hilbert space is spanned by $|im_i\rangle$.

- For stable nuclei, i ranges from 0 to 15/2. For example, the proton has $i = 1/2$, the deuteron has $i = 1$, and ^{133}Cs, used in atomic clocks, has $i = 7/2$.

- We restrict to nuclei with $i = 1/2$, in which case the only possible multipole moment, besides the electric monopole, is the magnetic dipole.

Next, we expand the Hamiltonian.

- We take the field and vector potential to be those of a physical dipole,

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}) = (\boldsymbol{\mu} \times \mathbf{r})\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}\delta(\mathbf{r}) + \frac{1}{r^3}\right), \quad \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}) = \boldsymbol{\mu} \cdot \left(\frac{8\pi}{3}\delta(\mathbf{r})I + \frac{T}{r^5}\right).$$

  Here we're mixing vector and tensor notation; I is the identity tensor, T is the quadrupole tensor, and dotting with $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ on the left indicates contraction with the first index. The delta function terms, present for all physical dipoles, will be important for the final result.

- The Hamiltonian is similar to that of the Zeeman effect,

$$H = \frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{p} + \frac{\mathbf{A}}{c}\right)^2 + V(r) + H_{\text{FS}} + H_{\text{Lamb}} + \frac{1}{c}\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{B}.$$

  The magnetic moment of the nucleus is

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = g_N \mu_N \mathbf{I}$$

  where μ_N is the nuclear magneton. The states in the Hilbert space can be written as $|n\ell j m_j m_i\rangle$, which we refer to as the "uncoupled" basis since $\mathbf{J}$ and $\mathbf{I}$ are uncoupled.

- As in our analysis of the Zeeman effect, the vector potential is in Coulomb gauge and the A^2 term is negligible, so by the same logic we have

$$H_1 = \frac{1}{c}(\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{B}).$$

  However, it will be more difficult to evaluate these orbital and spin terms.

- The orbital term is proportional to

$$\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{I} \times \mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{I} \cdot (\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p}) = \mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{L}$$

where one can check there are no ordering issues. Similarly, there are no ordering issues in the spin term, since $\mathbf{S}$ and $\mathbf{I}$ act on separate spaces. Hence we arrive at

$$H_{1,\mathrm{orb}} = k(\mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{L}) \left(\frac{4\pi}{3} \delta(\mathbf{r}) + \frac{1}{r^3} \right), \quad H_{1,\mathrm{spin}} = k \left(\frac{8\pi}{3} \delta(\mathbf{r})(\mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{S}) + \frac{\mathbf{I} \cdot T \cdot \mathbf{S}}{r^5} \right).$$

The delta function terms are called Fermi contact terms, and we have defined

$$k = 2 g_N \mu_B \mu_N = g_e g_N \mu_B \mu_N.$$

The term $H_{1,\mathrm{spin}}$ is a spin-spin interaction, while $H_{1,\mathrm{orb}}$ can be thought of as the interaction of the moving electron with the proton's magnetic field.

- It's tempting to add in additional terms, representing the interaction of the proton's magnetic moment with the magnetic field produced by the electron, due to its spin and orbital motion. These give additional copies of $H_{1,\mathrm{spin}}$ and $H_{1,\mathrm{orb}}$ respectively, but they shouldn't be added since they would double count the interaction.

- The terms $\mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{L}$ and $\mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{S}$ don't commute with $\mathbf{L}$, $\mathbf{S}$, or $\mathbf{I}$. So just as for fine structure, we are motivated to go to the coupled basis. We define $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{J} + \mathbf{I}$ and diagonalize L^2, J^2, F^2, and F_z. The coupled basis is related to the uncoupled one as

$$|n\ell j f m_f\rangle = \sum_{m_j, m_i} |n\ell j m_j m_i\rangle \langle j i m_j m_i | f m_f \rangle.$$

To relate this coupled basis to the *original* uncoupled basis $|n\ell m_\ell m_s m_f\rangle$, we need to apply Clebsch-Gordan coefficients twice. Alternatively, we can use tools such as the Wigner 6j symbols or the Racah coefficients to do the addition in one step.

Now we calculate the energy shifts.

- In the coupled basis, the perturbation is diagonal, so we again can avoid diagonalizing matrices. It suffices to compute diagonal matrix elements,

$$\Delta E = \langle n\ell j f m_f | H_1 | n\ell j f m_f \rangle.$$

- First we consider the case $\ell \neq 0$, where the contact terms do not contribute. We can write the energy shift as

$$\Delta E = k \langle n\ell j f m_f | \mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{G} | n\ell j f m_f \rangle, \quad \mathbf{G} = \frac{\mathbf{L}}{r^3} + \frac{T \cdot \mathbf{S}}{r^5} = \frac{\mathbf{L}}{r^3} + \frac{3\mathbf{r}(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{S}) - r^2 \mathbf{S}}{r^5}.$$

- The quantity $\mathbf{G}$ is a purely electronic vector operator, and we are taking matrix elements within a single irrep of electronic rotations (generated by $\mathbf{J}$), so we may apply the projection theorem,

$$\Delta E = \frac{k}{j(j+1)} \langle n\ell j f m_f | (\mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{J})(\mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{G}) | n\ell j f m_f \rangle.$$

- The first term may be simplified by noting that

$$\mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{J} = \frac{1}{2}(F^2 - J^2 - I^2).$$

This gives a factor similar to the Lande g-factor.

- For the second term, direct substitution gives

$$\mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{G} = \frac{L^2 - S^2}{r^3} + \frac{3(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{S})^2}{r^5}$$

where we used $\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{L} = 0$. Now, we have

$$(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{S})^2 = \frac{1}{4}r_i r_j \sigma_i \sigma_j = \frac{1}{4}r_i r_j (\delta_{ij} + i\epsilon_{ijk}\sigma_k) = \frac{r^2}{4}.$$

Plugging this in cancels the $-S^2/r^3$ term, leaving

$$\mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{G} = \frac{L^2}{r^3}.$$

- Therefore, the energy shift becomes

$$\Delta E = k\frac{f(f+1) - j(j+1) - i(i+1)}{2j(j+1)}\ell(\ell+1)\left\langle \frac{1}{r^3} \right\rangle.$$

Specializing to hydrogen and evaluating $\langle 1/r^3 \rangle$ as earlier, we get the final result

$$\Delta E = \frac{g_e g_N \mu_B \mu_N}{a_0^3}\frac{1}{n^3}\frac{f(f+1) - j(j+1) - i(i+1)}{j(j+1)(2\ell+1)}$$

where we restored the Bohr radius.

- Now consider the case $\ell = 0$. As we just saw, the non-contact terms get a factor of $\mathbf{J} \cdot \mathbf{G} = L^2/r^3$, so they vanish in this case. Only the contact term in $H_{1,\text{spin}}$ contributes, giving

$$\Delta E = \frac{8\pi}{3}k\langle \delta(\mathbf{r})(\mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{S})\rangle.$$

Since $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{S}$ when $\mathbf{L} = 0$, we have

$$\mathbf{I} \cdot \mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{2}(F^2 - I^2 - S^2) = \frac{1}{2}\left(f(f+1) - \frac{3}{2}\right).$$

The delta function is evaluated as for the Darwin term. The end result is that the energy shift we found above for $\ell \neq 0$ also holds for $\ell = 0$.

- When the hyperfine splitting is included, the energy levels become $E_{n\ell jf}$. The states $|n\ell jfm_f\rangle$ are $(2f+1)$-fold degenerate.

- For example, the ground state $1s_{1/2}$ of hydrogen splits into two levels, where $f = 0$ is the true ground state and $f = 1$ is three-fold degenerate; these correspond to antiparallel and parallel nuclear and electronic spins. The frequency difference is about $1.42\,\text{GHz}$, which corresponds to a $21\,\text{cm}$ wavelength.

- The $2s_{1/2}$ and $2p_{1/2}$ states each split similarly; the hyperfine splitting within these levels is smaller than, but comparable to, the Lamb shift between them. The fine structure level $2p_{3/2}$ also splits, into $f = 1$ and $f = 2$.

- Electric dipole transitions are governed by the matrix element

$$\langle n\ell j f m_f | x_q | n'\ell'j'f'm'_f \rangle.$$

  The Wigner–Eckart theorem can be applied to rotations in $\mathbf{J}$, $\mathbf{F}$, and $\mathbf{I}$ separately, under each of which x_q is a $k = 1$ irreducible tensor operator, giving the constraints

$$m_f = m'_f + q, \quad |\Delta f| \leq 1, \quad |\Delta j| \leq 1, \quad |\Delta \ell| \leq 1.$$

  As usual, parity gives the additional constraint $\Delta \ell \neq 0$.

- Finally, there is a special case for $f' = 0$, because this is the only representation that, upon multiplication by the spin 1 representation, does not contain itself: $0 \notin 0 \otimes 1$. This means we cannot have a transition from $f' = 0$ to $f = 0$. The same goes for ℓ, but this case is already excluded by parity.

- Note that the $21\,\mathrm{cm}$ line of hydrogen is forbidden by the rules above; it actually proceeds as a magnetic dipole transition. The splitting is small enough for it to be excited by even the cosmic microwave background radiation. The $21\,\mathrm{cm}$ line is especially useful because its wavelength is too large to be scattered effectively by dust. Measuring its intensity gives a map of the atomic hydrogen gas distribution, measuring its Doppler shift gives information about the gas velocity, and measuring its line width determines the temperature. Doppler shift measurements were used to map out the arms of the Milky Way. (These statements hold for atomic hydrogen; molecular hydrogen (H_2) has a rather different hyperfine structure.)

- It is occasionally useful to consider both the weak-field Zeeman effect and hyperfine structure. Consider a fine structure energy level with $j = 1/2$. For each value of m_f there are two states, with $f = i \pm 1/2$. The two perturbations don't change m_f, so they only mix pairs of states. Thus the energy level splits into pairs of levels, which are relatively easy to calculate; the result is the Breit–Rabi formula. The situation is just like how the Zeeman effect interacts with fine structure, but with (ℓ, s) replaced with (j, i). At lower fields the coupled basis is preferred, while at higher fields the uncoupled basis is preferred.

Note. The perturbations we've considered, relative to the hydrogen energy levels, are of order:

$$\text{fine structure: } \alpha^2, \quad \text{Lamb: } \alpha^3 \log \frac{1}{\alpha}, \quad \text{Zeeman: } \alpha B, \quad \text{hyperfine: } \alpha^2 \frac{m_e}{m_p}$$

where $\alpha \sim 10^{-2}$, $m_e/m_p \sim 10^{-3}$, and the fine structure is suppressed by $O(10)$ numeric factors. The hydrogen energy levels themselves are of order $\alpha^2 mc^2$.

It's interesting to see how these scalings are modified in positronium. The fine structure is still α^2, but the Lamb shift enters at the same order, since there is a tree-level diagram where the electron and positron annihilate and reappear; the Lamb shift for hydrogen is loop-level. The hyperfine splitting also enters at order α^2, so one must account for all of these effects at once.

9.6   The Variational Method

We now introduce the variational method.

- The variational method is a rather different kind of approximation method, which does not require perturbing about a solvable Hamiltonian. It is best used for approximating the energies of ground states.

- Let H be a Hamiltonian with at least some bound states, and energy eigenvalues $E_0 < E_1 < E_2 < \ldots$. Then for any normalizable state $|\psi\rangle$, we have

$$\frac{\langle \psi | H | \psi \rangle}{\langle \psi | \psi \rangle} \geq E_0.$$

  The reason is simple: $|\psi\rangle$ has some component along the true ground state and some component orthogonal to it. The first component has expected energy E_0, while the second has expected energy at least E_0.

- If we can guess $|\psi\rangle$ so that its overlap with the ground state is $1 - \epsilon$ when normalized, then its expected energy will match the ground state energy up to $O(\epsilon^2)$ corrections.

- In practice, we use a family of trial wavefunctions $|\psi(\lambda)\rangle$ and minimize the "Rayleigh–Ritz quotient",

$$F(\lambda) = \frac{\langle \psi(\lambda) | H | \psi(\lambda) \rangle}{\langle \psi(\lambda) | \psi(\lambda) \rangle}$$

  to approximate the ground state energy. This family could either be linear (i.e. a subset of the Hilbert space) or nonlinear (e.g. the set of Gaussian wavefunctions).

- It is convenient to enforce normalization with Lagrange multipliers, by minimizing

$$F(\lambda, \beta) = \langle \psi(\lambda) | H | \psi(\lambda) \rangle - \beta(\langle \psi(\lambda) | \psi(\lambda) \rangle - 1).$$

  This is especially useful in the linear case. If we guess

$$|\psi\rangle = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} c_n |n\rangle$$

  then the function to be minimized is

$$F(\{c_n\}, \beta) = \sum_{m,n} c_n^* \langle n | H | m \rangle c_m - \beta \left(\sum_n |c_n|^2 - 1 \right).$$

- The minimization conditions are then

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial c_n^*} = \sum_m \langle n | H | m \rangle c_m - \beta c_n = 0, \quad \frac{\partial F}{\partial \beta} = \sum_n |c_n|^2 - 1 = 0.$$

  However, this just tells us that $|\psi\rangle$ is an eigenvector of the Hamiltonian restricted to our variational subspace, with eigenvalue β. Our upper bound on the ground state energy is just the lowest eigenvalue of this restricted Hamiltonian, which is intuitive.

- This sort of procedure is extremely common when computing ground state energies numerically, since a computer can't work with an infinite-dimensional Hilbert space. The variational principle tells us that we always overestimate the ground state energy by truncating the Hilbert space, and that the estimates always go down as we add more states.

- In fact, we can say more. Let $\beta_m^{(M)}$ be the mth lowest energy eigenvalue for the Hamiltonian truncated to a subspace of dimension M. The Hylleraas–Undheim theorem states that if we expand to a subspace of dimension $N > M$,

$$\beta_m^{(N)} \leq \beta_m^{(M)} \leq \beta_{N-M+m}^{(N)}.$$

In particular, if the Hilbert space has finite dimension N, then the variational estimate can become exact, giving

$$E_m \leq \beta_m^{(M)} \leq E_{N-M+m}.$$

This means that we can extract both upper bounds and lower bounds on excited state energies, though still only an upper bound for the ground state energy.

- Another way to derive information about excited states is to use symmetry properties. For example, for an even one-dimensional potential, the ground state is even, so we get a variational upper bound on the first excited state's energy by using odd trial wavefunctions. More generally, we can upper bound the energy of the lowest excited state with any given symmetry.

Example. A quartic potential. In certain convenient units, we let

$$H = -\frac{d^2}{dx^2} + x^4.$$

The ground state energy can be shown numerically to be $E_0 \approx 1.06$. To get a variational estimate, we can try normalized Gaussians, since these roughly have the right behavior and symmetry,

$$\psi(x, \alpha) = \left(\frac{\alpha}{\pi}\right)^{1/4} e^{-\alpha x^2/2}.$$

The expected energy is

$$E(\alpha) = \sqrt{\frac{\alpha}{\pi}} \int dx \, (\alpha - \alpha^2 x^2 + x^4) e^{-\alpha x^2} = \frac{\alpha}{2} + \frac{3}{4\alpha^2}.$$

The minimum occurs at $\alpha_* = \sqrt[3]{3}$, giving

$$E(\alpha_*) = 1.08$$

which is a fairly good estimate. Now, the first excited state has $E_1 \approx 3.80$. We can estimate this with an odd trial wavefunction, such as

$$\psi(x, \alpha) = \left(\frac{4\alpha^3}{\pi}\right)^{1/4} x e^{-\alpha x^2/2}$$

which gives an estimate $E(\alpha_*) = 3.85$.

Note. Bound states in various dimensions. To prove that bound states exist, it suffices by the variational principle to exhibit any state for which $\langle H \rangle < 0$.

In one dimension, any overall attractive potential (i.e. one whose average potential is negative) which falls off at infinity has a bound state. To see this, consider a Gaussian centered at the origin with width λ. Then for large λ, the kinetic energy falls as $1/\lambda^2$ while the potential energy falls as $1/\lambda$, since this is the fraction of the probability over the region of significant potential. Then for sufficiently large λ, the energy is negative.

This argument does not work in more than one dimension. In fact, the statement remains true in $d = 2$, as can be proven using a more sophisticated ansatz, as shown here. In $d = 3$ the statement is not true; for instance, a sufficiently weak delta function well doesn't have any bound states. Incidentally, for central potentials in $d = 3$, if there exist bound states, then the ground state must be an s-wave. This is because, given any bound state that is not an s-wave, one can get a variational wavefunction with lower $\langle H \rangle$ by converting it to an s-wave.

Note. In second order nondegenerate perturbation theory, we saw that energy levels generally "repel" each other, which means that the ground state is pushed downward at second order. This might lead us to guess that the first order result is always an overestimate of the ground state energy. That can't be justified rigorously with perturbation theory alone, but it follows rigorously from the variational principle, because the first order result is just the energy expectation of the unperturbed ground state $|0\rangle$.

10   Atomic Physics

10.1   Identical Particles

In this section, we will finally consider quantum mechanical systems with multiple, interacting particles. To begin, we discuss some bookkeeping rules for identical particles.

- We start by considering a system of two identical particles in an attractive central potential,

$$H = \frac{p_1^2}{2m} + \frac{p_2^2}{2m} + V(|\mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_1|).$$

  Examples of such system include homonuclear diatomic molecules such as H_2 and N_2 or Cl_2. The statements we will make below only apply to these molecules, and not to heteronuclear diatomic such as HCl.

- One might protest that diatomic molecules contain more than two particles; for instance, H_2 contains two electrons and two protons. Here we're really using the Born–Oppenheimer approximation. We are keeping track of the locations of the nuclei, assuming they move slowly relative to the electrons. The electrons only affect the potential, causing an attraction.

- If the electronic state is $^1\Sigma$, using standard notation for diatomic molecules, then the spin and orbital angular momentum of the electrons can be ignored. In fact, the ground electronic state of most diatomic molecules is $^1\Sigma$, though O_2 is an exception, with ground state $^3\Sigma$.

- The exchange operator switches the identities of the two particles. For instance, if each particle can be described with basis $|\alpha\rangle$, then

$$E_{12}|\alpha\beta\rangle = |\beta\alpha\rangle.$$

  For instance, for particles with position and spin,

$$E_{12}|\mathbf{x}_1\mathbf{x}_2 m_1 m_2\rangle = |\mathbf{x}_2\mathbf{x}_1 m_2 m_1\rangle.$$

- The exchange operator is unitary and squares to one, which means it is Hermitian. Furthermore,

$$E_{12}^\dagger H E_{12} = H, \quad [E_{12}, H] = 0$$

  which indicates the Hamiltonian is symmetric under exchange.

- There is no reasonable way to define an exchange operator for non-identical particles; everything we will say here makes sense only for identical particles.

- Just like parity, the Hilbert space splits into subspaces that are even or odd under exchange, which are not mixed by time evolution. However, unlike parity, it turns out that only one of these subspaces actually exists for physical systems. If the particles have half-integer spin, only the odd subspace is ever observed; if the particles have integer spin, only the even subspace is observed. This stays true no matter how the system is perturbed or prepared.

- This is the symmetrization postulate. In the context of nonrelativistic quantum mechanics, it is simply an experimental result, as we'll see below. In the context of relativistic quantum field theory, it follows from simple physical assumptions by the spin-statistics theorem.

- In the second quantized formalism of field theory, there is no need to (anti)symmetrize at all; the Fock space already contains only the physical states. The symmetrization postulate is a consequence of working with first quantized notation, where we give the particles unphysical labels and must subsequently take them away.

- This also means that we must be careful to avoid using "unphysical" operators, which are not invariant under exchange. For example, the operator $\mathbf{x}_1$ has no physical meaning, not does the spin $\mathbf{S}_1$, though $\mathbf{S}_1 + \mathbf{S}_2$ does.

We now illustrate this with some molecular examples.

- We first consider $^{12}\mathrm{C}_2$, a homonuclear diatomic molecule where both nuclei have spin 0. It does not form a gas because it is chemically reactive, but it avoids the complication of spin.

- As usual, we can transform to center of mass and relative coordinates,

$$\mathbf{R} = \frac{\mathbf{x}_1 + \mathbf{x}_2}{2}, \quad \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_1$$

  which reduces the Hamiltonian to

$$H = \frac{P^2}{2M} + \frac{p^2}{2\mu} + V(r)$$

  where $M = 2m$ and $\mu = m/2$ is the reduced mass.

- The two coordinates are completely decoupled, so energy eigenstates can be chosen to have the form $\Psi(\mathbf{R}, \mathbf{r}) = \Phi(\mathbf{R})\psi(\mathbf{r})$. The center of mass degree of freedom has no potential, so $\Phi(\mathbf{R})$ can be taken to be a plane wave,
$$\Phi(\mathbf{R}) = \exp(i\mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{R}).$$
  The relative term $\psi(\mathbf{r})$ is the solution to a central force problem, and hence has the form

$$\psi_{n\ell m}(\mathbf{r}) = f_{n\ell}(r)Y_{\ell m}(\Omega).$$

  The energy is
$$E = \frac{P^2}{2M} + E_{n\ell}.$$

- For many molecules, the low-lying energy levels have the approximate form

$$E_{n\ell} = \frac{\ell(\ell+1)\hbar^2}{2I} + \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)\hbar\omega$$

  where the first term comes from approximating the rotational levels using a rigid rotor, and the second term comes from approximating the vibrational levels with a harmonic oscillator, and I and ω depend on the molecule.

- The exchange operator flips the sign of $\mathbf{r}$, which multiplies the state by $(-1)^\ell$. This is like parity, but with the crucial difference that this selection rule is never observed to be broken. Spectroscopy tells us that all of the states of odd ℓ in $^{12}\mathrm{C}_2$ are missing, a conclusion which is confirmed by thermodynamic measurements.

- Furthermore, levels are *not* missing if the nuclei are different isotopes, even though, without the notion of identical particles, the difference in the masses of the nuclei should be too small to affect anything. Results like this are the experimental basis of the symmetrization postulate.

- Next we consider the hydrogen molecule H_2, where the nuclei (protons) have spin $1/2$. Naively, the interaction of the nuclear spins has a negligible effect on the energy levels. But the spins actually have a dramatic effect due to the symmetrization postulate.

- We can separate the wavefunction as above, now introducing spin degrees of freedom $|m_1 m_2\rangle$. The total spin is in the representation $0 \oplus 1$, where the singlet 0 is odd under exchanging the spins, and the triplet 1 is even.

- The protons are fermions, so the total wavefunction must be odd under exchange. Therefore, when the nuclear spins are in the singlet state, ℓ must be even, and we call this system parahydrogen. When the nuclear spins are in the triplet state, ℓ must be odd, and we call this system orthohydrogen. In general, "para" refers to a symmetric spatial wavefunction.

- These differences have a dramatic effect on the thermodynamic properties of H_2 gas. Since every orthohydrogen state is three-fold degenerate, at high temperature (where many ℓ values can be occupied), H_2 gas is 25% parahydrogen and 75% orthohydrogen. At low temperatures, H_2 gas is 100% parahydrogen.

- Experimental measurements of the rotational spectrum of H_2 at low temperatures played a crucial role in the discovery of spin, in the late 1920s. However, since it can take days for the nuclear spins to come to equilibrium, there was initially experimental confusion since experimentalists used samples of cooled H_2 that were actually 75% orthohydrogen.

- Note that we have taken the wavefunction to be the product of a spin and spatial part. Of course, this is only valid because we ignored spin interactions; more formally, it is because the Hamiltonian commutes with both exchanges of spin state and exchanges of orbital state alone.

Note. The singlet being antisymmetric and the triplet being symmetric under exchange is a special case of a general rule. Suppose we add two identical spins $j \oplus j$. The spin $2j$ irrep is symmetric, because its top component is $|m_1 m_2\rangle = |jj\rangle$, and applying L_- preserves symmetry.

Now consider the subspace with total $S_z = 2j - 1$, spanned by $|j-1, j\rangle$ and $|j, j-1\rangle$. This has one symmetric and one antisymmetric state; the symmetric one is part of the spin $2j$ irrep, so the antisymmetric one must be part of the spin $2j - 1$ irrep, which is hence completely antisymmetric. Then the next subspace has two symmetric and one antisymmetric state, so the spin $2j - 2$ irrep is symmetric. Continuing this logic shows that the irreps alternate in symmetry.

Note. A quick estimate of the equilibration time, in SI units. The scattering cross section for hydrogen molecules is $\sigma \sim a_0^2$, so the collision frequency at standard temperature and pressure is

$$f \sim v a_0^2 n \sim 10^8 \, \text{Hz}.$$

During the collision, the nuclei don't get closer than about distance a_0. The magnetic field experienced by a proton is hence

$$B \sim \frac{\mu_0 q v}{a_0^2} \sim 0.1 \, \text{T}.$$

The collision takes time $\tau \sim a_0/v$. The resulting classical spin precession is

$$\Delta\theta \sim \frac{\mu_N B}{\hbar}\frac{a_0}{v} \sim 10^{-7}$$

and what this means at the quantum level is that the opposite spin component picks up an amplitude of order $\Delta\theta$. The spin performs a random walk with frequency f and step sizes $\Delta\theta$, so it flips over in a characteristic time

$$T \sim \frac{1}{f}\frac{1}{(\Delta\theta)^2} \sim 10^6 \,\mathrm{s}$$

which is on the order of days.

10.2   Helium

We now investigate helium and helium-like atoms.

- We consider systems with a single nucleus of atomic number Z, and two electrons. This includes helium when $Z = 2$, but also ions such as Li^+ and H^-. One nontrivial fact we will show below is that H^- has a bound state, the H^- ion.

- We work in atomic units and place the nucleus at the origin. The basic Hamiltonian is

$$H = \frac{p_1^2}{2} + \frac{p_2^2}{2} - \frac{Z}{r_1} - \frac{Z}{r_2} + \frac{1}{r_{12}}$$

  where $r_{12} = |\mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_1|$. This ignores fine structure, the Lamb shift, or hyperfine structure (though there is no hyperfine structure for ordinary helium, since alpha particles have zero spin). Also note that the fine structure now has additional terms, corresponding to the interaction of each electron's spin with the spin or orbital angular momentum of the other. Interactions between the electrons also must account for retardation effects.

- There is another effect we are ignoring, known as "mass polarization", which arises because the nucleus recoils when the electrons move. To see this, suppose we instead put the center of mass at the origin and let the nucleus move. Its kinetic energy contributes a term $P^2/2M$ where $\mathbf{P} = -\mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{p}_2$.

- The terms proportional to p_1^2 and p_2^2 simply cause the electron mass to be replaced with the electron-proton reduced mass, as in hydrogen. But there is also a cross-term $(\mathbf{p}_1 \cdot \mathbf{p}_2)/2M$, which is a new effective interaction between the electrons. We ignore this here because it is suppressed by a power of m/M.

- Under the approximations above, the Hamiltonian does not depend on the spin of the electrons at all; hence the energy eigenstates can be taken to have definite exchange symmetry under both orbital and spin exchanges alone, as we saw for H_2.

- Thus, by the same reasoning as for H_2, there is parahelium (spin singlet, even under orbital exchange) and orthohelium (spin triplet, odd under orbital exchange). Parahelium and orthohelium behave so differently and interconvert so slowly that they were once thought to be separate species.

- The main difference versus H_2 is that it will be much harder to find the spatial wavefunction, since this is not a central force problem: the electrons interact both with the nucleus and with each other. In particular, since the nucleus can absorb momentum, we can't separate the electron wavefunction into a relative and center-of-mass part. We must treat it directly as a function of all 6 variables, $\psi(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2)$.

- We define the total orbital and spin angular momentum

$$\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{L}_1 + \mathbf{L}_2, \quad \mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}_1 + \mathbf{S}_2.$$

  We may then label the energy eigenstates by simultaneously diagonalizing L^2, $\mathbf{L}_z$, S^2, and $\mathbf{S}_z$,
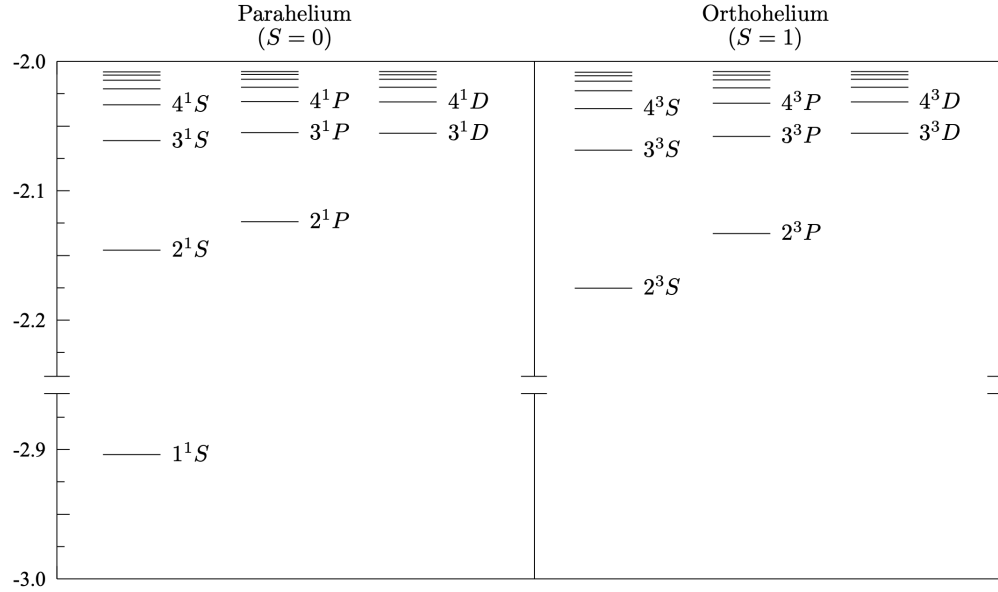
$$H|NLM_LSM_S\rangle = E_{NLS}|NLM_LSM_S\rangle.$$

  The standard spectroscopic notation for E_{NLS} is $N^{2S+1}L$, where $L = S, P, D, F, \ldots$ as usual. Here, $S = 0$ for parahelium and $S = 1$ for orthohelium, and this determines the exchange symmetry of the orbital state, and hence affects the energy.

- In fact, we will see that S has a very large impact on the energy, on the order of the Coulomb energy itself. This is because the exchange symmetry of the orbital wavefunction has a strong influence on how the electrons are distributed in space. Reasoning in reverse, this means there is a large effective "exchange interaction" between spins, favoring either the singlet or the triplet spin state, which is responsible in other contexts for ferromagnetism.

Next, we look at some experimental data.

- The ionization potential of an atom is the energy needed to remove one electron from the atom, assumed to be in its ground state, to infinity. One can define a second ionization potential by the energy required to remove the second electron, and so on. These quantities are useful since they are close to directly measurable.

- For helium, the ionization potentials are 0.904 and 2 in atomic units. (For comparison, for hydrogen-like atoms it is $Z^2/2$, so 1/2 for hydrogen.) In fact, helium has the highest first ionization potential of any neutral atom.

- The first ionization potential tells us that continuum states exist at energies 0.904 above the ground state, so bound states can only exist in between; any purported bound states above the first ionization potential would mix with continuum states and become delocalized.

- For H^-, the ionization potentials are 0.028 and 0.5. The small relative size of the first gives rise to the intuition that H^- is just an electron weakly bound to a hydrogen atom. There is only a single bound state, the 1^1S.

- The bound states for parahelium and orthohelium are shown below.

Parahelium
(S = 0)

Orthohelium
(S = 1)

-2.0

4^1S 4^1P 4^1D 4^3S 4^3P 4^3D
3^1S 3^1P 3^1D 3^3S 3^3P 3^3D

-2.1

2^1P 2^3P

2^1S 2^3S

-2.2

-2.9 1^1S

-3.0

These values are obtained by numerically solving our simplified Hamiltonian, and do not include fine structure or other effects. In principle, the values of L range from zero to infinity, while for each L, the values of N range up to infinity. The starting value of each N is fixed by convention, so that energy levels with similar N line up; this is why there is no 1^3S state. Looking more closely, one can see that energy increases with L for fixed N (the "staircase effect"), and the energy levels are lower for orthohelium.

We now investigate the spectrum perturbatively.

- We focus on the orbital part, and take the perturbation to be $1/r_{12}$. This means the perturbation parameter is $1/Z$, which is not very good for helium, and especially bad for H$^-$. However, the results will be roughly correct, and an improved analysis is significantly harder.

- The two electrons will each occupy hydrogen-like states labeled by $n\ell m$, which we refer to as orbitals. Thus the two-particle eigenfunctions of the unperturbed Hamiltonian are

$$H_0|n_1\ell_1m_1n_2\ell_2m_2\rangle = E^{(0)}_{n_1n_2}|n_1\ell_1m_1n_2\ell_2m_2\rangle, \quad E^{(0)}_{n_1n_2} = -\frac{Z^2}{2}\left(\frac{1}{n_1^2} + \frac{1}{n_2^2}\right)$$

if we neglect identical particle effects. Note that we use lowercase to refer to individual electrons, and uppercase to refer to the atom as a whole.

- In order to account for identical particle effects, we just symmetrize or antisymmetrize the orbitals, giving

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(|n_1\ell_1m_1n_2\ell_2m_2\rangle \pm |n_2\ell_2m_2n_1\ell_1m_1\rangle\right).$$

This has no consequence on the energy levels, except that states of the form $|n\ell mn\ell m\rangle$ antisymmetrize to zero, and hence don't appear for orthohelium.

- The energy levels are lower than the true ones, because the electrons repel each other. We also note that the "double excited" states with $n_1, n_2 \neq 1$ lie in the continuum. Upon including the perturbation, they mix with the continuum states, and are hence no longer bound states.

- However, the doubly excited states can be interpreted as resonances. A resonance is a state that is approximately an energy eigenstate, but whose amplitude "leaks away" over time into continuum states. For example, when He in the ground state is bombarded with photons, there is a peak in absorption at energies corresponding to resonances.

- We can get some intuition by semiclassical thinking. We imagine that a photon excites both electrons to higher orbits. It is then energetically possible for one electron to hit the other, causing it to be ejected and falling into the $n = 1$ state in the process. Depending on the quantum numbers involved, this could take a long time. There is hence an absorption peak at the resonance, because at short timescales it behaves just like a bound state.

- A similar classical situation occurs in the solar system. It is energetically possible for Jupiter to eject all of the other planets, at the cost of moving slightly closer to the Sun. In fact, considerations from chaos theory suggest that over a long enough timescale, this will almost certainly occur. This timescale, however, is long enough that we can ignore this process and think of the solar system as a bound object.

- As another example, in Auger spectroscopy, one removes an inner electron by an atom by collision with a high-speed electron. When an outer shell electron falls into the now empty state, a photon could be emitted. An alternative possibility is that a different outer electron is simultaneously ejected; this is the Auger process.

- Now we focus on the true bound states, which are at most singly excited. These are characterized by a single number n,

$$E_{1n}^{(0)} = -\frac{Z^2}{2}\left(1 + \frac{1}{n^2}\right)$$

and can be written as

$$|NLM\pm\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(|100n\ell m\rangle \pm |n\ell m100\rangle\right)$$

where $N = n$, $L = \ell$, and $M = m$. We see there is no $N = 1$ state for orthohelium.

- The unperturbed energy levels are rather far off. For helium, the unperturbed ground state has energy -4, while the real answer is about -2.9. For H$^-$, we get -1, while the real answer is about -0.53.

We now compute the effect of the perturbation.

- The energy shift of the ground state is

$$\Delta E = \langle 100100|H_1|100100\rangle = \int d\mathbf{x}_1 d\mathbf{x}_2 \frac{|\psi_{100}(\mathbf{x}_1)|^2|\psi_{100}(\mathbf{x}_2)|^2}{r_{12}}$$

and is equal to the expected energy due to electrostatic repulsion between two $1s$ electrons.

- The hydrogen-like orbital for the ground state is

$$\psi_{100}(\mathbf{x}) = \left(\frac{Z^3}{\pi}\right)^{1/2} e^{-Zr}.$$

The $1/r_{12}$ factor can be expanded as

$$\frac{1}{r_{12}} = \frac{1}{|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2|} = \sum_{\ell=0}^{\infty} \frac{r_<^\ell}{r_>^{\ell+1}} P_\ell(\cos\gamma)$$

where $r_<$ and $r_>$ are the lesser and greater of r_1 and r_2, and γ is the angle between $\mathbf{x}_1$ and $\mathbf{x}_2$. We expand the Legendre polynomial in terms of spherical harmonics with the addition theorem,

$$P_\ell(\cos\gamma) = \frac{4\pi}{2\ell+1} \sum_m Y_{\ell m}(\Omega_1) Y_{\ell m}^*(\Omega_2).$$

- Plugging everything in and working in spherical coordinates, we have

$$\Delta E = \frac{Z^6}{\pi^2} \int r_1^2\, dr_1 \int d\Omega_1 \int r_2^2\, dr_2 \int d\Omega_2\, e^{-2Z(r_1+r_2)} \sum_{\ell=0}^{\infty} \frac{r_<^\ell}{r_>^{\ell+1}} \frac{4\pi}{2\ell+1} \sum_m Y_{\ell m}(\Omega_1) Y_{\ell m}^*(\Omega_2).$$

This has the benefit that the angular integrals can be done with the orthonormality of spherical harmonics. We have

$$\int d\Omega\, Y_{\ell m}(\Omega) = \sqrt{4\pi} \int d\Omega\, Y_{\ell m}(\Omega) Y_{00}^*(\Omega) = \sqrt{4\pi}\, \delta_{\ell 0}\delta_{m0}.$$

This leaves nothing but the radial integrals,

$$\Delta E = 16Z^6 \int_0^\infty r_1^2\, dr_1 \int_0^\infty r_2^2\, dr_2\, \frac{e^{-2Z(r_1+r_2)}}{r_>} = \frac{5}{8} Z$$

after some tedious algebra. This is one factor of Z down from the unperturbed result $-Z^2$, so as expected the series is in Z.

- The negatives of the ground state energies for H^- and He are hence

zeroth order: $1, 4$,   first order: $0.375, 2.75$,   exact: $0.528, 2.904$

which are a significant improvement, though the first order correction overshoots. Indeed, as mentioned earlier, the first order result always overestimates the ground state energy by the variational principle, and hence sets an upper bound. It is trickier to set a lower bound, though at the very least the zeroth order result serves as one, since it omits a repulsive interaction.

- To show H^- has a bound state, we must show that the ground state energy is below the continuum threshold of -0.5. Unfortunately, our result of -0.375 is not quite strong enough.

We now compute the first-order energy shift for the excited states.

- As stated earlier, we only need to consider singly excited states, namely the states $|NLM\pm\rangle$ defined above for $N > 1$. The energy shift is

$$\Delta E_{NL\pm} = \langle NLM\pm|H_1|NLM\pm\rangle$$

where there is no dependence on M because H_1 is a scalar operator.

- Expanding the definition of $|NLM\pm\rangle$, we have four terms,

$$\Delta E_{NL\pm} = \frac{1}{2}\big(\langle 100\,n\ell m|H_1|100\,n\ell m\rangle + \langle n\ell m\,100|H_1|n\ell m\,100\rangle$$
$$\pm\,(\langle 100\,n\ell m|H_1|n\ell m\,100\rangle + |n\ell m\,100\rangle H_1|100\,n\ell m\rangle)\big).$$

The first two terms are equal, as are the last two, so

$$\Delta E_{NL\pm} = J_{n\ell} \pm K_{n\ell}, \quad J_{n\ell} = \langle 100\,n\ell m|\frac{1}{r_{12}}|100\,n\ell m\rangle, \quad K_{n\ell} = \langle 100\,n\ell m|\frac{1}{r_{12}}|n\ell m\,100\rangle.$$

The corresponding two integrals are called the direct and exchange integrals, respectively.

- The direct integral has the simple interpretation of the mutual electrostatic energy of the two electron clouds,

$$J_{n\ell} = \int d\mathbf{x}_1 d\mathbf{x}_2\,\frac{|\psi_{100}(\mathbf{x}_1)|^2|\psi_{n\ell m}(\mathbf{x}_2)|^2}{|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2|}.$$

It is clearly real and positive.

- The exchange integral is

$$K_{n\ell} = \int d\mathbf{x}_1 d\mathbf{x}_2\,\frac{\psi_{100}^*(\mathbf{x}_1)\psi_{n\ell m}^*(\mathbf{x}_2)\psi_{n\ell m}(\mathbf{x}_1)\psi_{100}(\mathbf{x}_2)}{|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2|}.$$

This is real, as swapping the variables of integration conjugates it, but also keeps it the same. It can be shown, with some effort, that the exchange integrals are positive; this is intuitive, since the denominator goes to zero when $\mathbf{x}_1 \approx \mathbf{x}_2$, and in such regions the numerator is positive (i.e. has a small phase).

- The fact that $K_{n\ell}$ is positive means that the ortho states are lower in energy than the para states. Intuitively this is because the ortho wavefunctions vanish when $\mathbf{x}_1 = \mathbf{x}_2$, while the para wavefunctions have maxima/nodes at $\mathbf{x}_1 = \mathbf{x}_2$. Hence the ortho states have less electrostatic repulsion.

- Another important qualitative features is that the direct integrals $J_{n\ell}$ increase with ℓ, leading to the "staircase effect" mentioned earlier. As for the alkali atoms, this is intuitively because as the angular momentum of one electron is increased, it can move further away from the nucleus, and the nuclear charge is more effectively screened by the other electron(s).

We have hence explained all the qualitative features of the spectrum, though perturbation theory doesn't do very well quantitatively. We can do a bit better using the variational principle.

- We recall that the unperturbed ground state just consists of two $1s$ electrons, which we refer to as $1s^2$, with wavefunction

$$\Psi_{1s^2}(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) = \frac{Z^3}{\pi}e^{-Z(r_1+r_2)}.$$

However, we also know that each electron partially screens the nucleus from the other, so each electron sees an effective nuclear charge Z_e between $Z - 1$ and Z. This motivates the trial wavefunction

$$\Psi(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) = \frac{Z_e^3}{\pi}e^{-Z_e(r_1+r_2)}$$

where Z_e is a variational parameter.

- To evaluate the expectation value of H, we write it as

$$H = \left(\frac{p_1^2}{2} - \frac{Z_e}{r_1} \right) + \left(\frac{p_2^2}{2} - \frac{Z_e}{r_2} \right) + (Z_e - Z) \left(\frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} \right) + \frac{1}{r_{12}}.$$

This has the advantage that the first two terms are both clearly equal to $-Z_e^2/2$.

- The third term gives

$$2(Z_e - Z) \int d\mathbf{x} \, \frac{Z_e^3}{\pi} \frac{e^{-Z_e r}}{r} = 2(Z_e - Z)Z_e.$$

Finally, the last term is just one we computed above but with Z replaced with Z_e, and is hence equal to $(5/8)Z_e$.

- Adding up the pieces, the variational energy is

$$E(Z_e) = Z_e^2 - 2ZZ_e + \frac{5}{8}Z_e$$

which is minimized for

$$Z_e = Z - \frac{5}{16}.$$

That is, each electron screens $5/16$ of a nuclear charge from the other electron.

- The variational estimate for the ground state energy is hence

$$E^{\text{var}} = -Z^2 + \frac{5}{8}Z - \frac{25}{256} = \begin{cases} -0.473 & \text{H}^- \\ -2.848 & \text{He}. \end{cases}$$

This is closer than our result from first-order perturbation theory. However, since the estimate for H$^-$ is still not below -0.5, it isn't enough to prove existence of the bound state. This can be done by using a more sophisticated ansatz; our was very crude, not even accounting for the fact that the electrons should preferentially be on opposite sides of the nucleus.

10.3   The Thomas–Fermi Model

In this section we introduce the Thomas–Fermi model, a crude model for multi-electron atoms.

- The idea of the model is to represent the electron cloud surrounding the nucleus as a zero temperature, charged, degenerate Fermi–Dirac fluid, in hydrostatic equilibrium between degeneracy pressure and electrostatic forces.

- The results we need from statistical mechanics are that for zero-temperature electrons in a rectangular box of volume V with number density n, the Fermi wavenumber is

$$k_F = (3\pi^2 n)^{1/3}$$

and the total energy is

$$E = \frac{\hbar^2 V k_F^5}{10m\pi^2} = \frac{\hbar^2 (3\pi^2 N)^{5/3}}{10m\pi^2} V^{-2/3}.$$

Deriving these results is straightforward, remembering to add a factor of 2 for electron spin.

- As usual, the pressure is a derivative of energy,

$$P = -\frac{dE}{dV} = \frac{\hbar^2}{15m\pi^2}(3\pi^2 n)^{5/3}.$$

  We note that P is written solely in terms of constants and n. The key to the Thomas–Fermi is to allow n to vary in space, and treat the electrons as a fluid with pressure $P(n(\mathbf{x}))$. Of course, this is precisely valid only in the thermodynamic limit.

- If Φ is the electrostatic potential, then in hydrostatic equilibrium,

$$\nabla P = en\nabla\Phi$$

  where $e > 0$. Furthermore, Φ obeys Poisson's equation,

$$\nabla^2\Phi = -4\pi\rho = 4\pi ne - 4\pi Ze\delta(\mathbf{x})$$

  in Gaussian units, where we included the charge density for the nucleus explicitly. We will drop this term below and incorporate it in the boundary conditions at $r = 0$.

- We take P, n, and Φ to depend only on r. Now, we have

$$\nabla P = \frac{\hbar^2}{3m}(3\pi^2)^{2/3}n^{2/3}\nabla n$$

  and plugging this into the hydrostatic equilibrium equation gives

$$\frac{\hbar^2}{3m}(3\pi^2)^{2/3}n^{-1/3}\nabla n = e\nabla\Phi.$$

  We may integrate both sides to obtain

$$\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}(3\pi^2 n)^{2/3} = e(\Phi - \Phi_0) \equiv e\Psi.$$

- To get intuition for this equation, we note that it can be rewritten as

$$\frac{p_F^2}{2m} - e\Phi = -e\Phi_0.$$

  The left-hand side is the energy of an electron at the top of the local Fermi sea, so evidently this result tells us it is a constant, the chemical potential of the gas. This makes sense, as in equilibrium these electrons shouldn't have an energetic preference for being in any one location over any other.

- We know the potential must look like

$$\Phi(r) \sim \begin{cases} Ze/r & r \to 0, \\ 0 & r \to \infty. \end{cases}$$

  It is intuitively clear that as we move outward, the potential energy goes up monotonically and the kinetic energy goes down.

- The behavior of the potential is different depending on the number of electrons N.

– If $N > Z$, we have a negative ion. Such atoms can't be described by the Thomas–Fermi model, because ∇P always points outward, while at some radius the electrostatic force will start pointing outward as well, making the hydrostatic equilibrium equation impossible to satisfy. In this model, the extra negative charge just falls off.

– If $N = Z$, we have a neutral atom. Then $\Phi(r)$ falls off faster than $1/r$. Such a case is described by $\Phi_0 = 0$.

– If $N < Z$, we have a positive ion, so $\Phi(r)$ falls off as $(Z - N)e/r$. Such a case is described by $\Phi_0 > 0$. At some radius r_0, the kinetic energy and hence n falls to zero. Negative values are not meaningful, so for all $r > r_0$ the density is simply zero.

– The case $\Phi_0 < 0$ also has physical meaning, and corresponds to a neutral atom under applied pressure.

We now solve the model more explicitly.

- In terms of the variable Ψ, we have

$$\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}(3\pi^2 n)^{2/3} = e\Psi, \quad \nabla^2 \Psi = 4\pi ne.$$

  We eliminate n to solve for Ψ. However, since we also know that $\Psi \sim Ze/r$ for small r, it is useful to define the dimensionless variable

$$f(r) = \frac{r\Psi(r)}{Ze}, \quad f(0) = 1.$$

- Doing a little algebra, we find the Thomas–Fermi equation

$$\frac{d^2 f}{dx^2} = \frac{f^{3/2}}{x^{1/2}}, \quad r = bx, \quad b = \frac{(3\pi)^{2/3}}{2^{7/3}} \frac{a_0}{Z^{1/3}}$$

  where x is a dimensionless radial variable.

- Since $f(0)$ is already set, the solutions to the equation are parametrized by $f'(0)$. Some numeric solutions are shown below.

The case $f'(0) = -1.588$ corresponds to a neutral atom. The density only approaches zero asymptotically. It is a universal function that is the same, up to scaling, for all neutral atoms in this model.

- As the initial slope becomes more negative, the density reaches zero at finite radius, corresponding to a positive ion with a definite radius.

- When the initial slope is less negative, the density never falls to zero. Instead, we can manually cut it off at some radius and just declare the density is zero outside this radius, which physically translates to imposing an external pressure. This is only useful for modeling neutral atoms (with neutrality determining where the cutoff radius is) since one cannot collect a bulk sample of charged ions.

- The Thomas–Fermi model has obvious limitations. For example, by treating the electrons as a continuous fluid, we lose all shell structure. In general, the model is only reasonable for describing the electron density at intermediate radii, breaking down both near the nucleus and far from it.

- It can be used to calculate average properties, such as the average binding energy of charge radius, which make it useful in experimental physics, e.g. for calculations of the slowing down of particles passing through matter.

10.4   The Hartree–Fock Method

The Hartree–Fock method is a variational method for approximating the solution of many-body problems in atoms, molecules, solids, and even nuclei. We begin with the simpler Hartree method.

- We consider an atom with N electrons and nuclear charge Z, and use the basic Hamiltonian

$$H = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \left(\frac{p_i^2}{2} - \frac{Z}{r_i} \right) + \sum_{i<j} \frac{1}{r_{ij}} \equiv H_1 + H_2.$$

  This neglects effects from the finite nuclear mass, fine and hyperfine structure, retardation, radiative corrections, and so on. In particular, fine structure becomes more important for heavier atoms, since it scales as $(Z\alpha)^2$, and in these cases it is better to start from the Dirac equation. Also note that the electron spin plays no role in the Hamiltonian.

- The Hamiltonian commutes with the total orbital angular momentum $\mathbf{L}$, as well as each of the individual spin operators $\mathbf{S}_i$. It also commutes with parity π, as well as all the exchange operators E_{ij}.

- This is our first situation with more than 2 identical particles, so we note that exchanges generate all permutations. For each permutation $P \in S_N$, there is a unitary permutation operator $U(P)$ which commutes with the Hamiltonian, and which we hereafter just denote by P. We denote the sign of P by $(-1)^P$.

- In general, the symmetrization postulate states that allowed states satisfy

$$P|\Psi\rangle = \begin{cases} |\Psi\rangle & \text{bosons,} \\ (-1)^P|\Psi\rangle & \text{fermions.} \end{cases}$$

  All physically meaningful operators must commute with the $U(P)$. If one begins with a formal Hilbert space that doesn't account for the symmetrization postulate, then one can project onto the fermionic subspace with

$$A = \frac{1}{N!} \sum_{P} (-1)^P P.$$

  We will investigate such projectors in more detail in the notes on Group Theory.

We now describe Hartree's trial wavefunction.

- In Hartree's basic ansatz, we simply ignore the symmetrization postulate. We take a trial wavefunction of the form

$$|\Phi_H\rangle = |1\rangle^{(1)} \dots |N\rangle^{(N)}$$

where the individual terms are single particle orbitals, describing the state of one electron. The notation is a bit ambiguous: here Latin indices in parentheses label the electrons while Greek indices in the kets label the orbitals.

- The orbitals are assumed to be normalized, and the product of a spatial and spin part,

$$|\lambda\rangle = |u_\lambda\rangle|m_{s\lambda}\rangle$$

where $|m_{s\lambda}\rangle$ is assumed to be an eigenstate of S_z with eigenvalue $m_{s\lambda} = \pm 1/2$. This causes no loss of generality, because the Hamiltonian has no spin dependence.

- The variational parameters are, in principle, the entire spatial wavefunctions of the orbitals $u_\lambda(\mathbf{r})$. It is straightforward to compute the expectation of H_1,

$$\langle \Phi_H|H_1|\Phi_H\rangle = \sum_{\lambda=i=1}^{N} \langle\lambda|^{(i)} h_i |\lambda\rangle^{(i)}, \quad h_i = \frac{p_i^2}{2} - \frac{Z}{r_i}$$

where the other bras and kets collapse by normalization. Explicitly, the expectation is

$$\langle \Phi_H|H_1|\Phi_H\rangle = \sum_\lambda I_\lambda, \quad I_\lambda = \int d\mathbf{r}\, u_\lambda^*(\mathbf{r}) \left(\frac{p^2}{2} - \frac{Z}{r}\right) u_\lambda(\mathbf{r}).$$

- The expectation of H_2 gives a sum over pairs,

$$\langle \Phi_H|H_2|\Phi_H\rangle = \sum_{\lambda=i<\mu=j} \langle\lambda|^{(i)}\langle\mu|^{(j)} \frac{1}{r_{ij}} |\lambda\rangle^{(i)}|\mu\rangle^{(j)}.$$

Explicitly, this is a sum of direct integrals,

$$\langle \Phi_H|H_2|\Phi_H\rangle = \sum_{\lambda<\mu} J_{\lambda\mu}, \quad J_{\lambda\mu} = \int d\mathbf{r}_i d\mathbf{r}_j\, u_\lambda^*(\mathbf{r}_i)u_\mu^*(\mathbf{r}_j)\frac{1}{r_{ij}}u_\lambda(\mathbf{r}_i)u_\mu(\mathbf{r}_j).$$

No exchange integrals have appeared, since we haven't antisymmetrized. We are dropping the self-interaction term $\lambda = \mu$ since we dropped the $i = j$ term in the original Hamiltonian. This term was dropped classically to avoid infinite self-energy for point charges, though note that in this quantum context, $J_{\lambda\lambda}$ actually need not be divergent.

- Using the symmetry of the direct integrals, the energy functional is

$$E[\Phi_H] = \langle \Phi_H|H|\Phi_H\rangle = \sum_\lambda I_\lambda + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{\lambda\neq\mu} J_{\lambda\mu}.$$

However, we can't just minimize this directly; as usual we need a Lagrange multiplier to enforce normalization, so we instead minimize

$$F[\Phi_H] = E[\Phi_H] - \sum_\lambda \epsilon_\lambda(\langle\lambda|\lambda\rangle - 1).$$

- The vanishing of the functional derivative $\delta F/\delta u_\lambda(\mathbf{r})$ gives the Hartree equations

$$\left(\frac{p^2}{2} - \frac{Z}{r}\right) u_\lambda(\mathbf{r}) + V_\lambda(\mathbf{r}) u_\lambda(\mathbf{r}) = \epsilon_\lambda u_\lambda(\mathbf{r}), \quad V_\lambda(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mu \neq \lambda} \int d\mathbf{r}' \, \frac{|u_\mu(\mathbf{r})|^2}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}.$$

  These equations have a simple interpretation. We see that each electron obeys a Schrodinger equation with energy ϵ_λ, and feels a potential sourced by the average field of the other charges, which makes the equations an example of a mean field theory.

- This is a set of N coupled, nonlinear, integro-differential equations. Sometimes one speaks of the self-consistent field, since the field determines the orbitals and vice versa.

- In practice, one solves the Hartree equations by iteration. For example, one can begin by computing the Thomas–Fermi potential, then setting the initial guess for the orbitals to be the eigenfunctions of this potential. Then the new potentials are computed, and the resulting Schrodinger equation is solved, and so on until convergence.

- The computationally expensive part is solving the three-dimensional Schrodinger equations. Hartree suggested further replacing the potential with a central potential

$$\hat{V}_\lambda(r) = \frac{1}{4\pi} \int d\Omega \, V_\lambda(\mathbf{r}).$$

  Then the Schrodinger equation reduces to a radial equation, which is much easier to solve. This is a reasonable step if we expect the atom to be nearly spherically symmetric overall.

- Since the Hartree orbitals are eigenfunctions of different Schrodinger equations, there is no need for them to be orthogonal.

- It is tempting to think of ϵ_λ as the "energy of each electron", but this is misleading because each electron's Hartree equation counts the interaction with every other electron. That is, if we just summed up all the ϵ_λ, we would not get the total energy because the interaction would be double counted.

- More explicitly, if we multiply the Hartree equation by $u_\lambda^*(\mathbf{r})$ and integrate,

$$I_\lambda + \sum_{\mu \neq \lambda} J_{\lambda\mu} = \epsilon_\lambda$$

  and summing gives

$$E[\Phi_H] = \sum_\lambda \epsilon_\lambda - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\lambda \neq \mu} J_{\lambda\mu}.$$

Next, we consider Fock's refinement to Hartree's wavefunction.

- Fock's trial wavefunction is just a fully antisymmetrized version of Hartree's,

$$|\Phi\rangle = \sqrt{N!}\, A|\Phi_H\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N!}} \begin{vmatrix} |1\rangle^{(1)} & |2\rangle^{(1)} & \cdots & |N\rangle^{(1)} \\ |1\rangle^{(2)} & |2\rangle^{(2)} & \cdots & |N\rangle^{(2)} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ |1\rangle^{(N)} & |2\rangle^{(N)} & \cdots & |N\rangle^{(N)} \end{vmatrix}.$$

This second way of writing the wavefunction is known as a Slater determinant, and is expanded like a regular determinant with scalar multiplication replaced with tensor product. The rest of the idea is the same: we simply variationally minimize the energy.

- Note that the Slater determinant vanishes if the N orbitals are not linearly independent. Meanwhile, if they are linearly independent, then they span an N-dimensional subspace of the single-particle Hilbert space, and up to scaling the Slater determinant only depends on what this subspace is. Hence, unlike in Hartree's wavefunction, we can always choose the orbitals to be orthonormal without loss of generality, in which case $|\Phi\rangle$ is automatically normalized.

- We have to make a point about language. We often speak of a particle being "in" a single-particle state $|\lambda\rangle$ (such as the Pauli exclusion principle's "two particles can't be in the same state"). But because of the antisymmetrization, what we actually mean is that the joint state is a Slater determinant over a subspace containing $|\lambda\rangle$.

- However, even though Slater determinants are very useful, they are not the most general valid states! For instance, the superposition of two such states is generally not a Slater determinant. Accordingly, the Hartree–Fock trial wavefunction doesn't generally get the exact answer. In such cases it really is not valid to speak of any individual particle as being "in" a state. Even saying "the electrons fill the $1s$ and $2s$ orbitals" implicitly assumes a Slater determinant and is not generally valid, but we use such language anyway because of the great difficulty of going beyond Hartree–Fock theory.

- To evaluate the energy functional, we note that A commutes with H, since the latter is a physical operator, so

$$\langle\Phi|H|\Phi\rangle = N!\langle\Phi_H|A^\dagger HA|\Phi_H\rangle = N!\langle\Phi_H|HA^2|\Phi_H\rangle = N!\langle\Phi_H|HA|\Phi_H\rangle = \sum_P (-1)^P \langle\Phi_H|HP|\Phi_H\rangle.$$

Of course, the same reasoning holds for H_1 and H_2 individually.

- Now consider the expectation of $H_1 = \sum_i h_i$. The expectation of each h_i vanishes by orthogonality unless P fixes all $j \neq i$. But this means only the identity permutation contributes. Hence the sum over permutations does nothing, and the result is the same as in Hartree theory.

- Next, consider the expectation of $H_2 = \sum_{i<j} 1/r_{ij}$. By the same reasoning, the contribution of the term $1/r_{ij}$ vanishes except for permutations that fix everything besides i and j, of which there are only the identity permutation and the exchange E_{ij}.

- The latter gives an exchange integral, so

$$\langle\Phi|H_2|\Phi\rangle = \sum_{\lambda<\mu} J_{\lambda\mu} - K_{\lambda\mu}, \quad K_{\lambda\mu} = \delta(m_{s\lambda}, m_{s\mu}) \int d\mathbf{r}d\mathbf{r}' \frac{u_\lambda^*(\mathbf{r})u_\mu^*(\mathbf{r}')u_\lambda(\mathbf{r}')u_\mu(\mathbf{r})}{|\mathbf{r}-\mathbf{r}'|}$$

as we saw for helium. Note that the exchange integrals, unlike the direct integrals, depend on the spin. As for helium, one can show the exchange integrals are positive. Since they contribute with a minus sign, they lower the energy functional, confirming the expectation that Hartree–Fock theory gives a better estimate of the ground state energy than Hartree theory.

- Again as we saw for helium, the lowering is only in effect for aligned spins, as this corresponds to antisymmetry in the spatial wavefunction. This leads to Hund's first rule, which is that electrons try to align their spins. Half-filled electron shells are especially stable, since all the electrons are aligned, leading to, e.g. the high ionization energy of nitrogen. It also explains why chromium has configuration $3d^5 4s$ instead of $3d^4 4s^2$ as predicted by the aufbau principle.

- Another way in which Hartree–Fock theory makes more sense is that the self-energy, if included, ultimately cancels out because $J_{\lambda\lambda} = K_{\lambda\lambda}$. Hence we can include it, giving

$$\langle \Phi | H_2 | \Phi \rangle = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\lambda\mu} J_{\lambda\mu} - K_{\lambda\mu}.$$

  As we'll see, including the self-energy makes the final equations nicer as well.

Finally, we minimize the Hartree–Fock energy.

- The functional to be minimized is

$$F[\Phi] = \sum_{\lambda} I_{\lambda} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\lambda\mu} (J_{\lambda\mu} - K_{\lambda\mu}) - \sum_{\lambda} \epsilon_{\lambda}(\langle \lambda | \lambda \rangle - 1).$$

  Note that we are only enforcing normalization with Lagrange multipliers; we will see below that we automatically get orthogonality.

- Carrying out the functional derivative, we find the Hartree–Fock equations

$$\left(\frac{p^2}{2} - \frac{Z}{r} \right) u_{\lambda}(\mathbf{r}) + V_d(\mathbf{r}) u_{\lambda}(\mathbf{r}) - \int d\mathbf{r}' \, V_{\text{ex}}(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') u_{\lambda}(\mathbf{r}') = \epsilon_{\lambda} u_{\lambda}(\mathbf{r})$$

  where the direct and exchange potentials are

$$V_d(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{\mu} \int d\mathbf{r}' \, \frac{|u_{\mu}(\mathbf{r}')|^2}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}, \quad V_{\text{ex}}(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') = \sum_{\mu} \delta(m_{s\lambda}, m_{s\mu}) \frac{u_{\mu}(\mathbf{r}) u_{\mu}^*(\mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}.$$

  Since we included the self-energy contributions, all electrons feel the same direct potential.

- The exchange potential is a bit harder to interpret, as it is a nonlocal operator. However, we note that there are only two distinct exchange potentials because m_s can only have two values,

$$V_{\text{ex}}^{\pm}(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}') = \sum_{\mu} \delta(m_{s\mu}, \pm 1/2) \frac{u_{\mu}(\mathbf{r}) u_{\mu}^*(\mathbf{r}')}{|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}'|}.$$

  Hence all spin up and spin down orbitals experience V_{ex}^+ and V_{ex}^- respectively.

- As such, the Hartree–Fock equations can be thought of as just two coupled Schrodinger-like equations, one for each spin. The solutions are automatically orthogonal, because orbitals of different spins are orthogonal, while orbitals of the same spin are eigenfunctions of the same Hamiltonian. This illustrates how Hartree–Fock theory is more elegant than Hartree theory.

- The main disadvantage of Hartree–Fock theory is numerically handling the nonlocal potential, and there are many clever schemes to simplify dealing with it.

- Integrating the Hartree–Fock equation against $u_\lambda(\mathbf{r})^*$ gives

$$I_\lambda + \sum_\mu (J_{\lambda\mu} - K_{\lambda\mu}) = \epsilon_\lambda.$$

As before, the energies ϵ_λ double count the interaction,

$$\sum_\lambda \epsilon_\lambda = E + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\lambda\mu} (J_{\lambda\mu} - K_{\lambda\mu}).$$

- On the other hand, note that if we remove the electron with the highest associated ϵ_λ, chosen to be ϵ_N, we can write the energy of the remaining electrons as

$$E' = \sum_{\lambda=1}^{N-1} I'_\lambda + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\lambda,\mu=1}^{N-1} (J'_{\lambda\mu} - K'_{\lambda\mu}).$$

If we assume the self-consistent fields have not been significantly changed, so that $I' = I$, $J' = J$ and $K' = K$, then we have an expression for the ionization potential,

$$E - E' = \epsilon_N.$$

This is Koopman's theorem.

- To simplify calculations, we can average the potentials over angles just as in Hartree theory. This is a little trickier to write down explicitly for the nonlocal potential, but corresponds to replacing $V_{\text{ex}}^\pm(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}')$ with an appropriately weighted average of $U(R)V_{\text{ex}}^\pm U(R)^\dagger$ for $R \in SO(3)$, where the $U(R)$ rotates space but not spin. The resulting averaged potential can only depend on the rotational invariants of two vectors, namely $|\mathbf{r}|^2$, $|\mathbf{r}'|^2$, and $\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{r}'$.

- A further approximation is to average over spins, replacing the two exchange potentials $V_{\text{ex}}^\pm$ with their average. In this case, we have reduced the problem to an ordinary central force problem, albeit with a self-consistent potential, and we can label its orbitals as $|n\ell m_\ell m_s\rangle$. This is what people mean, for example, when they say that the ground state of sodium is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s$. However, this level of approximation also erases, e.g. the tendency of valence electrons to align their spins, which must be put in manually.

10.5   Atomic Structure

We now apply Hartree–Fock theory to atomic structure, assuming rotational averaging throughout.

- The Hartree–Fock method gives a variational ansatz for the ground state of the basic Hamiltonian

$$H = \sum_i \left(\frac{p_i^2}{2} - \frac{Z}{r_i} \right) + \sum_{i<j} \frac{1}{r_{ij}}.$$

The resulting states in the Slater determinant are solutions of the Schrodinger-like equation

$$h u_\lambda(\mathbf{r}) = \epsilon_\lambda u_\lambda(\mathbf{r}), \quad h(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) = \frac{p^2}{2} - \frac{Z}{r} + \overline{V}_d - \overline{V}_{\text{ex}}.$$

Note that numerically, everything about a Hartree–Fock solution can be specified by the $R_{n\ell}(r)$ and $\epsilon_{n\ell}$, since these can be used to infer the potentials.

- Hartree–Fock theory gives us the exact ground state to the so-called central field approximation to the Hamiltonian,

$$H_0 = \sum_i h(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i).$$

Thus, we can treat this as the unperturbed Hamiltonian and the error as a perturbation,

$$H = H_0 + H_1, \quad H_1 = \sum_{i<j} \frac{1}{r_{ij}} - \sum_i \left(\overline{V}_{d,i} - \overline{V}_{\text{ex,i}} \right).$$

The term H_1 is called the residual Coulomb potential, and the benefit of using Hartree–Fock theory is that H_1 may be much smaller than just $\sum_{i<j} 1/r_{ij}$ alone.

- The unperturbed Hamiltonian H_0 is highly symmetrical; for example, it commutes with the individual $\mathbf{L}_i$ and $\mathbf{S}_i$ of the electrons. (Here and below, the potentials in H_0 are regarded as fixed; they are always equal to whatever they were in the Hartree–Fock ground state.) Therefore, the useful quantum numbers depend on the most important perturbations.

- If H_1 is the dominant perturbation, then we recover the basic Hamiltonian H_0, for which L and S are good quantum numbers; as usual capital letters denote properties of the atom as a whole. This is known as LS or Russell–Saunders coupling.

- Fine structure gives the additional perturbation

$$H_2 \sim \sum_i \mathbf{L}_i \cdot \mathbf{S}_i$$

which instead favors the so-called jj-coupling. Fine structure is more important for heavier atoms, so for simplicity we will only consider lighter atoms, and hence only LS coupling.

- Now we consider the degeneracies in H_0. The energy only depends on the $n\ell$ values of the occupied states. In general, a state can be specified by a set of completely filled orbitals, plus a list of partly filled orbitals, along with the (m_ℓ, m_s) values of the states filled in these orbitals. We call this data an m-set, or electron configuration.

- For the ground states of the lightest atoms, only at most one orbital will be partly filled. If it contains n electrons, then the degeneracy is

$$\binom{2(2\ell + 1)}{n}.$$

In the case of multiple partly filled orbitals, we would get a product of such factors.

- Now, the relevant operators that commute with H are L^2, L_z, S^2, S_z, and π. Hence in LS coupling we can write the states as $|\gamma L S M_L M_S\rangle$, where γ is an index for degenerate multiplets; these start appearing at $Z = 23$. The energy depends only on the L and S values.

- The Slater determinants are eigenstates of some of these operators,

$$L_z|m\text{-set}\rangle = M_L|m\text{-set}\rangle, \quad S_z|m\text{-set}\rangle = M_S|m\text{-set}\rangle, \quad \pi|m\text{-set}\rangle = \prod_i (-1)^{\ell_i}|m\text{-set}\rangle$$

where

$$M_L = \sum_i m_{\ell i}, \quad M_S = \sum_i m_{si}.$$

The sums range over all of the electrons, but can be taken to range over only unfilled orbitals since filled ones contribute nothing.
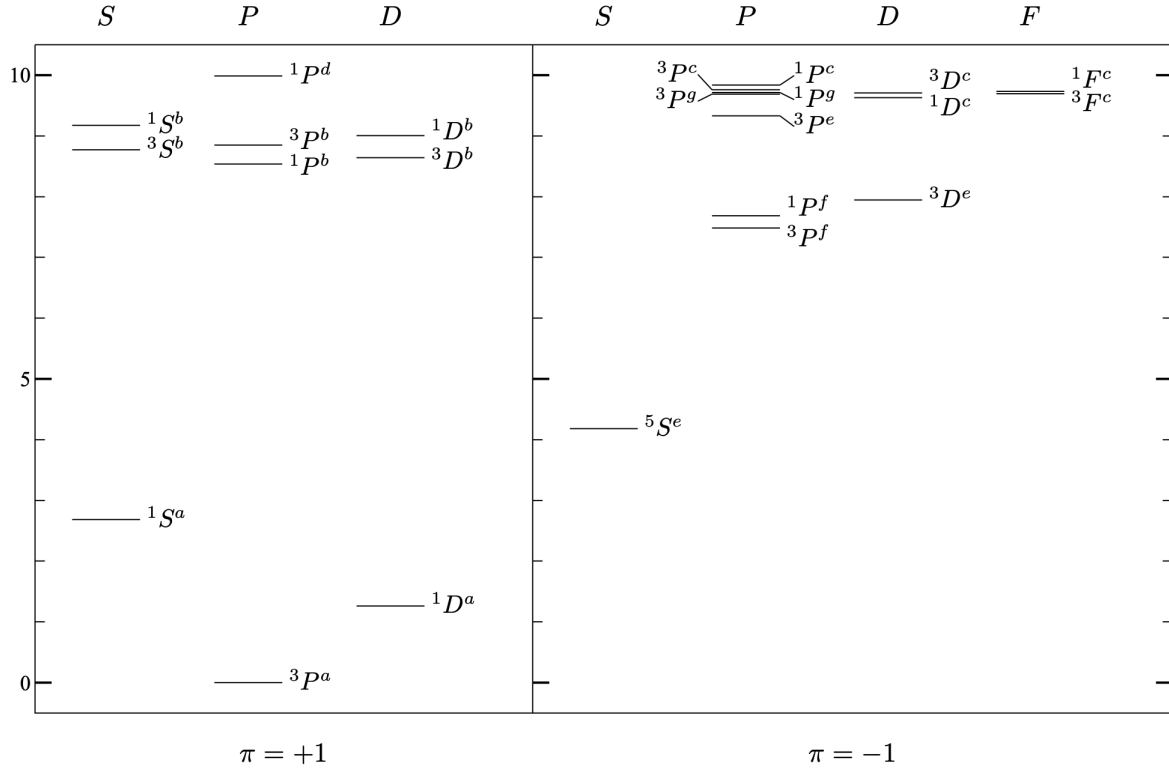
- However, the Slater determinants are not eigenstates of L^2 and S^2. Computing the coefficients that link the $|m\text{-set}\rangle$ and $|LSM_LM_S\rangle$ bases is somewhat complicated, so we won't do it in detail. (It is more than using Clebsch–Gordan coefficients, because there can be more than two electrons in the m-set, and we need to keep track of both orbital and spin angular momentum as well as the antisymmetrization.) Instead, we will simply determine which values of L and S appear, for a given electron configuration. Note that the parity does not come into play here, since all states for a given electron configuration have the same parity.

- As for helium, we label these multiplets as ^{2S+1}L. The spin-orbit coupling splits the multiplets apart based on their J eigenvalue, so when we account for it, we write $^{2S+1}L_J$. Also, for clarity we can also write which electron configuration a given multiplet comes from, $^{2S+1}L^{\cdots}$.

- Finally, once we account for the spin-orbit coupling, we can also account for the Zeeman effect, provided that it is weaker than even the spin-orbit coupling. In this case, the procedure runs exactly as for a hydrogen atom with fine structure, and Lande g-factors appear after applying the projection theorem.

We now give a few examples, focusing on the ground states of H_0 for simplicity.

Example. Boron. The ground states of H_0 have an electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p$, with a degeneracy of 6. Since there is only one relevant electron, there is clearly one multiplet ^2P, where $L = \ell = 1$ and $S = s = 1/2$.

Example. Carbon. We start with the electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$, which has degeneracy $\binom{6}{2} = 15$. Now, since there are only two relevant electrons, we can have $L = 0, 1, 2$ and $S = 0, 1$, with each L value represented once. Overall antisymmetry determines the S values, giving ^1S, ^3P, and ^1D. These have dimensions 1, 9, and 5, which add up to 15 as expected.

Some of the low-lying atomic energy levels for carbon are shown below, where the energy is measured in eV.

$$
\begin{array}{llll}
S & P & D & \qquad\qquad S \qquad P \qquad D \qquad F
\end{array}
$$

$^1P^d$

$^1S^b$, $^3S^b$ $^3P^b$, $^1P^b$ $^1D^b$, $^3D^b$

$^3P^c$, $^3P^g$ $^1P^c$, $^1P^g$, $^3P^e$ $^3D^c$, $^1D^c$ $^1F^c$, $^3F^c$

$^1P^f$, $^3P^f$ $^3D^e$

$^5S^e$

$^1S^a$

$^1D^a$

$^3P^a$

$\pi = +1$ $\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \pi = -1$

The electron configurations shown here are

$$a = 2p^2, \quad b = 2p3p, \quad c = 2p3d, \quad d = 2p4p, \quad e = 2s2p^3, \quad f = 2p3s, \quad g = 2p4s$$

where $1s^2 2s^2$ is implicit except in e.

The lowest energy multiplet can be determined heuristically using the aufbau principle and Hund's rules, which are covered in the notes on Solid State Physics. For example, consistent with the aufbau principle, the $a = 2s^2 2p^2$ configurations are all below the $e = 2s2p^3$ configuration; evidently the $2s$ state is lower in energy because it can penetrate the shielding. Within the $a = 2s^2 2p^2$ configuration, we have three multiplets, and Hund's rules account for their energy ordering.

The first two of Hund's rules account for the details of the exchange force, neglected in H_0. For carbon, Hund's first rule shows that $^3P^a$ has the lowest energy. Hund's third rule accounts for the spin-orbit interaction, which is subdominant in this case; it can be used to determine the lowest energy state within the $^3P^a$ multiplet. Concretely this would be done by switching to the coupled basis, just as for hydrogen, at which point one finds the ground state is $^3P_0^a$.

For atoms of higher Z, the splittings associated with Hund's rules become larger; when they are comparable to the splittings in H_0 itself, exceptions to the aufbau principle occur.

Example. Nitrogen. We start with the electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$, which has degeneracy $\binom{6}{3} = 20$. This requires a more systematic approach. The general approach is like that of Clebsch–Gordan decomposition. We sort the states by the (M_L, M_S) values. A highest pair (i.e. a state annihilated by L_+ and S_+) must be the doubly stretched/highest weight state of a ^{2S+1}L multiplet. We then cross out the other (M_L, M_S) values in this multiplet and repeat the process. Furthermore, since we're focusing on highest weight states, we need only consider states with $M_L, M_S \geq 0$.

In this case, the relevant (M_L, M_S) values are

$$1 \times (2, 1/2), \quad 2 \times (1, 1/2), \quad 1 \times (0, 3/2), \quad 3 \times (0, 1/2)$$

where the prefactor indicates the multiplicity. The first state is hence the highest weight state of a ^2D multiplet. Crossing this multiplet out leaves

$$1 \times (1, 1/2), \quad 1 \times (0, 3/2), \quad 2 \times (0, 1/2).$$

The first state left over is the highest weight state of a ^2P multiplet. Finally we are left with a ^4S multiplet. The dimensions are $10 + 6 + 4$, which add up to 20 as expected.

Example. Oxygen. The electron configuration is $1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$. This is actually easier than nitrogen because we can treat the two missing electrons as "holes", with the same ℓ and s but opposite m_ℓ and m_s from an electron. The LS multiplets are hence exactly the same as in carbon.

Note. The first case in which the ground state of H_0 yields degenerate LS multiplets is the case of three d electrons, which first occurs for Vanadium, $Z = 23$. For anything more complicated than this, the answer is rather tedious to work out, and one consults standard tables.

10.6   Chemistry

11   Time Dependent Perturbation Theory

11.1   Formalism

We begin by introduction "pictures" (or "frames") in quantum mechanics.

- In time-dependent perturbation theory, we consider the Hamiltonian

$$H(t) = H_0 + H_1(t)$$

where H_0 is solvable and H_1 is treated as a perturbation.

- We are interested in calculating the transition amplitudes $\langle f|U(t)|i\rangle$ where typically $|i\rangle$ and $|f\rangle$ are eigenstates of the unperturbed Hamiltonian, and $U(t)$ is the time evolution operator. It's useful to do this in the interaction picture, to be introduced below.

- In Heisenberg picture, we transfer all time-dependence to the operators, so

$$A_H(t) = U^\dagger(t) A_S(t) U(t)$$

where $U(t)$ is the time evolution operator for $H(t)$ from 0 to t. The states are frozen at their values at time $t = 0$. Of course, by construction, all matrix elements come out the same as in Schrodinger picture. In addition, if $C_S = A_S B_S$, then $C_H = A_H B_H$, which means all operator identities (such as commutation relations) remain true in Heisenberg picture.

- In particular, the expression for the Hamiltonian remains valid, so

$$H_H(t) = H_S(p_H(t), x_H(t), t).$$

In the special case $[H_S(t), H_S(t')] = 0$ for all times (e.g. when it is time-independent) we find

$$H_H(t) = H_S(t).$$

- Differentiating the Heisenberg operator definition and using

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial U(t)}{\partial t} = H_S(t) U(t)$$

we find the Heisenberg equation of motion,

$$i\hbar \frac{dA_H(t)}{dt} = [A_H(t), H_H(t)] + i\hbar \left(\frac{\partial A_S(t)}{\partial t} \right)_H.$$

Time-independent Schrodinger operators that always commute with the Hamiltonian are said to be conserved in Schrodinger picture; in Heisenberg picture, they have no time evolution.

Example. The harmonic oscillator. Setting all constants to one,

$$H_S = \frac{p_S^2 + x_S^2}{2}.$$

Since the Hamiltonian is time-independent, $H_S = H_H$. To check this, note that

$$H_H = \frac{p_H^2 + x_H^2}{2} = \frac{(p_S^2 + x_S^2)(\cos^2 t + \sin^2 t)}{2} = H_S$$

where we plugged in the known time dependence of p_H and x_H.

Now we turn to the interaction picture. We leave S subscripts implicit.

- Let $U_0(t)$ be the time evolution due to just H_0, so

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial U_0(t)}{\partial t} = H_0 U_0(t)$$

In the interaction picture, we "cancel out" the state evolution due to H_0, defining

$$|\psi_I(t)\rangle = U_0^\dagger(t)|\psi_S(t)\rangle, \quad A_I(t) = U_0^\dagger(t)A_S(t)U_0(t)$$

with the operator evolution chosen to preserve expectation values.

- Define the time evolution operator in the interaction picture as

$$|\psi_I(t)\rangle = W(t)|\psi_I(0)\rangle.$$

Combining the above results, we find

$$W(t) = U_0(t)^\dagger U(t).$$

That is, we evolve forward in time according to the exact Hamiltonian, then evolve backward under the unperturbed Hamiltonian.

- Differentiating and simplifying gives

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial W(t)}{\partial t} = H_{1I}(t)W(t)$$

where $H_{1I}(t)$ is the perturbation term in the interaction picture. Integrating this gives

$$W(t) = 1 + \frac{1}{i\hbar}\int_0^t dt'\, H_{1I}(t')W(t')$$

and plugging this equation into itself gives a series solution for $W(t)$, the Dyson series.

- A succinct way to write the full result is by a time-ordered exponential,

$$W(t) = T\exp\left(\frac{1}{i\hbar}\int_0^t dt'\, H_{1I}(t')\right).$$

This is the generic solution to a Schrodinger equation with time-dependent Hamiltonian.

- In general, we can always split the Hamiltonian so that one piece contributes to the time evolution of the operators (by the Heisenberg equation) and the other contributes to the time evolution of the states (by the Schrodinger equation). Interaction picture is just the particular splitting into H_0 and $H_1(t)$.

Now we set up time-dependent perturbation theory. For simplicity, we begin with the case where H_0 has a discrete spectrum, $H_0|n\rangle = E_n|n\rangle$, with initial state $|i\rangle$.

- Applying the Dyson series, the interaction picture state at a later time is

$$|\psi_I(t)\rangle = |i\rangle + \frac{1}{i\hbar}\int_0^t dt'\, H_{1I}(t')|i\rangle + \frac{1}{(i\hbar)^2}\int_0^t dt'\int_0^{t'} dt''\, H_{1I}(t')H_{1I}(t'')|i\rangle + \cdots.$$

- Our goal is to calculate the coefficients

$$|\psi_I(t)\rangle = \sum_n c_n(t)|n\rangle.$$

  The $c_n(t)$ differ from the transition amplitudes mentioned earlier because they lack the rapidly oscillating phase factors $e^{iE_n t/\hbar}$; such factors don't affect transition probabilities. (Note that the eigenstates $|n\rangle$ are the same in all pictures; states evolve in time but eigenstates don't.)

- Using the Dyson series, we can expand each coefficient in a power series

$$c_n(t) = \delta_{ni} + c_n^{(1)}(t) + c_n^{(2)}(t) + \dots.$$

  The first term is

$$c_n^{(1)}(t) = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_0^t dt' \, \langle n|H_{1I}(t')|i\rangle = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_0^t dt' \, e^{i\omega_{ni}t'} \langle n|H_1(t')|i\rangle, \quad \omega_{ni} = \frac{E_n - E_i}{\hbar}$$

  where we converted H_1 back to Schrodinger picture.

- Similarly, the second order term is

$$c_n^{(2)}(t) = \frac{1}{(i\hbar)^2} \int_0^t dt' \int_0^{t'} dt'' \sum_k e^{i\omega_{nk}t' + i\omega_{ki}t''} \langle n|H_1(t')|k\rangle \langle k|H_1(t'')|i\rangle.$$

  Here, we added a resolution of the identity; the second order term evidently accounts for transitions through one intermediate state.

- To make further progress, we need to specify more about the perturbation H_1. For example, for a constant perturbation, the phase factors come out of the integral, giving

$$c_n^{(1)}(t) = \frac{2}{i\hbar} e^{i\omega_{ni}t/2} \frac{\sin \omega_{ni}t/2}{\omega_{ni}} \langle n|H_1|i\rangle.$$

  The corresponding transition frequency, to first order, is

$$P_n(t) = \frac{4}{\hbar^2} \frac{\sin^2 \omega_{ni}t/2}{\omega_{ni}^2} |\langle n|H_1|i\rangle|^2.$$

  We see the probability oscillates sinusoidally in time, to first order in H_1. For small ω_{ni}, this can become larger than one, indicating that we need to go to higher order in perturbation theory.

- The next simplest example is sinusoidal driving. The most general example is

$$H_1(t) = K e^{-i\omega_0 t} + K^\dagger e^{i\omega_0 t}$$

  where K need not be Hermitian. As a result, the expression for $c_n^{(1)}$ has two terms, with denominators of $\omega_{ni} \pm \omega_0$. Therefore, the effect of a sinusoidal driving can be very large when it is on resonance with a transition.

- When $\omega_{ni} \approx \omega_0$, the K term dominates, so we may make the "rotating wave approximation" and drop $K^\dagger$. We then have

$$P_n(t) = \frac{4}{\hbar^2} \frac{\sin^2(\omega_{ni} - \omega_0)t/2}{(\omega_{ni} - \omega_0)^2} |\langle n|K|i\rangle|^2.$$

Physically, this could translate to absorption of light, where a sinusoidal electromagnetic field is the driving; the response is a Lorentzian in frequency. Since the $K^\dagger$ term must be there as well, we also get resonance for $\omega_{ni} \approx -\omega_0$, which corresponds to stimulated emission. Generally, the probability is proportional to $1/(\Delta\omega)^2$ and initially grows as t^2. Again, the probability can exceed unity if we are too close to resonance, signaling that we need to go to higher order.

Next, we consider a continuum of final states, which yields Fermi's golden rule at first order.

- In this case, it doesn't matter if the perturbation is constant or sinusoidal, but we'll continue to work with K for continuity. (THe logic still works if we set the sinusoidal frequency to zero to recover the constant case, but we pick up a factor of 2.) Shifting the frequency variable ω to be zero on resonance, the total transition probability to all states near resonance, at first order, is

$$P(t) \approx \frac{4}{\hbar^2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\omega \, \frac{\sin^2 \omega t/2}{\omega^2} g(\omega) |\langle f_\omega|H_1|i\rangle|^2$$

where $g(\omega)$ is the density of states.

- The function $\sin^2(\omega t/2)/\omega^2$ is peaked around $|\omega| \lesssim 1/t$ to a height of $t^2/4$, so area of the central lobe is $O(t)$. Away from the lobe, for $|\omega| \gtrsim 1/t$, we have oscillations of amplitude $1/\omega^2$. Integrating, the total area of the side lobes also grows as t. We thus expect the total area to grow as t, and contour integrating shows

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\omega \, \frac{\sin^2 \omega t/2}{\omega^2} = \frac{\pi t}{2}.$$

- As $t \to \infty$, the integral's contribution becomes concentrated about $\omega = 0$, so

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{1}{t} \frac{\sin^2 \omega t/2}{\omega^2} = \frac{\pi}{2}\delta(\omega).$$

More generally, for arbitrary t, we can define

$$\frac{1}{t} \frac{\sin^2 \omega t/2}{\omega^2} = \frac{\pi}{2}\Delta_t(\omega).$$

Plugging this into our integral and taking the long time limit gives

$$P(t) \approx \frac{2\pi t}{\hbar^2} g(\omega_{ni}) |\mathcal{M}|^2, \quad \mathcal{M} = \langle f|K|i\rangle$$

where f is a representative final state. This is called Fermi's golden rule.

- The transition probability grows linearly in time, which fits with our classical intuition (i.e. for absorption of light), as the system has a constant 'cross section'. For long times, the probability exceeds unity, again signaling that first order perturbation theory breaks down.

- For very early times, the rule also fails, and we recover the t^2 dependence. To do this, note that $\lim_{t\to 0} \Delta_t(\omega) = t^2/4$. Therefore, we can pull $\Delta_t(\omega)$ out of the integral to get

$$P(t) \propto t^2 \int d\omega\, g(\omega) |\langle f_\omega | K | i \rangle|^2 \propto t^2.$$

  Fermi's golden rule becomes valid once the variation of $g(\omega)|\langle f_\omega | K | i \rangle|^2$ is slow compared to the variation of $\Delta_t(\omega)$, and we can pull the former out of the integral instead.

- At the level of amplitudes, what's going on is that initially, all the possible final states have amplitudes going up as t, and thus a total transition probability going up as t^2. As time goes on, the amplitudes of the final states off resonance start oscillating instead of growing. The number of states where the amplitude keeps growing scales as $1/t$, so the total transition probability grows as t. **(add Wigner–Weisskopf)**

Note. Suppose we expose an atom to coherent light of frequency ω for a finite time Δt. During this time interval, the results above apply. But $\Delta_t(\omega)$ has support for $\omega \neq 0$ when t is finite, which means that after the driving is over, we could have a situation where the atom has absorbed a photon of energy $\hbar\omega$, but transitioned to a state whose energy is higher by more or less than $\hbar\omega$. This seems to be a clear violation of energy conservation, which leads many people to say that energy conservation can be violated in quantum mechanics, just as the energy-tine uncertainty principle says.

But this logic is completely wrong. The total energy of the electromagnetic field and atom is exactly conserved, because their joint Hamiltonian is time translation invariant. What's really going on is that, if the field came in a finite wavepacket, then the photons did not have well-defined wavelength to begin with, which means they didn't have well-defined energy. That is, the energy-time uncertainty principle does not say the atom can violate energy conservation by $\Delta E \sim \hbar/\Delta t$. It instead says that the photons already arrived with an energy uncertainty of $\Delta E \sim \hbar/\Delta t$. This preexisting uncertainty is simply transferred to the atom.

As we'll see below, Fermi's golden rule is very useful for treating the absorption or emission of light, but many processes require us to go to higher order in perturbation theory. For instance, two-photon absorption or emission, and photon scattering are second order.

- We assume the perturbation is time-independent and integrate our previous expression for $c_n^{(2)}(t)$ to find

$$c_n^{(2)}(t) = \frac{1}{(i\hbar)^2} \int_0^t dt' \sum_k e^{i\omega_{nk}t'} \left(\frac{e^{i\omega_{ki}t'} - 1}{i\omega_{ki}} \right) \langle n|H_1|k\rangle\langle k|H_1|i\rangle$$

$$= \frac{1}{(i\hbar)^2} \sum_k \frac{1}{i\omega_{ki}} \left(\frac{e^{i\omega_{ni}t} - 1}{i\omega_{ni}} - \frac{e^{i\omega_{nk}t} - 1}{i\omega_{nk}} \right) \langle n|H_1|k\rangle\langle k|H_1|i\rangle.$$

- There are now a few things we could do with this expression. If we're interested in scattering, then we have a continuum of final states and we want to know the final state after the scattering happens, so we take $t \to \infty$. As in Fermi's golden rule, the first term in parentheses ends up giving a delta function conserving energy and a probability linearly increasing in time; the second term is just an irrelevant transient. (It is a consequence of abruptly turning on the perturbation at $t = 0$ starting from an unperturbed state; the proper way to do the calculation is to start at $t = -\infty$ with an incoming wavepacket.)

- Specifically, the result ends up being the same as Fermi's golden rule, except that the relevant matrix element becomes

$$\mathcal{M} = \langle n|H_1|i\rangle + \sum_k \frac{\langle n|H_1|k\rangle\langle k|H_1|i\rangle}{E_i - E_k}.$$

  The appearance of the energy denominator is similar to what we found in time-independent perturbation theory, and makes sense because the Hamiltonian is time-independent.

- On the other hand, if the state space is discrete, or the perturbation is time-dependent in a nontrivial way, such as a laser pulse we turn on and off, then we need to go back to the original expression for $c_n^{(2)}(t)$. It can be simplified, but the simplification we do depends on the context; we'll give examples in a later section.

11.2   The Born Approximation

We apply time-dependent perturbation theory to scattering, first reviewing classical scattering.

- In classical scattering, we consider a collimated beam of particles with momentum $\mathbf{p}$ parametrized by impact parameter $\mathbf{b}$ which hits a localized potential $U(\mathbf{x})$ centered at the origin. The particles are scattered in the asymptotic direction $\hat{\mathbf{n}}(\mathbf{b})$.

- We define the differential cross section $d\sigma/d\Omega$ by

$$d\sigma = \frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}d\Omega$$

  where the left-hand side is an area in impact-parameter space; it is a function of θ and ϕ.

- To convert a cross section to a count rate, we let $\mathbf{J}$ be the flux of incident particles and w be the total count rate of scattered particles. Then

$$w = J\sigma, \quad \sigma = \int d\Omega\, \frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}$$

  where σ is the total cross section, and the integral omits the forward direction.

- For example, for hard-sphere scattering off an obstacle of radius r, the cross section is $\sigma = \pi r^2$. However, classically the total cross section is often infinite, as we count particles that are scattered even a tiny amount.

- In the case of two-body scattering, we switch to the center-of-mass frame, with variables

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2, \quad \mathbf{p} = \frac{m_1\mathbf{p}_2 - m_2\mathbf{p}_1}{m_1 + m_2}.$$

  The momentum $\mathbf{p}$ is simply chosen to be the conjugate momentum to $\mathbf{r}$. It is the momentum of one of the particles in the center-of-mass frame.

- In the case of two beams scattering off each other, with number density n_1 and n_2 and relative velocity v,

$$\frac{dw}{d\Omega} = \frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}v\int d\mathbf{x}\, n_1 n_2.$$

We now set up the same situation in quantum mechanics.

- We split the Hamiltonian as $H_0 = p^2/2m$ and $H_1 = V(\mathbf{x})$. The perturbation is not time-dependent, but the results above hold just as well.

- We take periodic boundary conditions in a cube of volume $V = L^3$ with plane wave states $|\mathbf{k}\rangle$ with wavefunctions

$$\psi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}) = \langle \mathbf{x}|\mathbf{k}\rangle = \frac{e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}}}{\sqrt{V}}.$$

These are the eigenstates of H_0. We take the initial state to be $|\mathbf{k}_i\rangle$.

- The first order transition amplitude to $|\mathbf{k}\rangle$ is

$$c_{\mathbf{k}}^{(1)}(t) = \frac{2}{i\hbar} e^{i\omega t/2} \left(\frac{\sin(\omega t/2)}{\omega} \right) \langle \mathbf{k}|U(\mathbf{x})|\mathbf{k}_i\rangle, \quad \omega = \frac{\hbar}{2m}(k^2 - k_i^2).$$

We consider the rate of scattering into a cone of solid angle $\Delta\Omega$,

$$\frac{dw}{d\Omega}\Delta\Omega = \sum_{\mathbf{k}\in\text{cone}} \frac{2\pi}{\hbar^2} \Delta_t(\omega) |\langle \mathbf{k}|U(\mathbf{x})|\mathbf{k}_i\rangle|^2,$$

where w is now interpreted as probability per time, corresponding to a classical count rate. The incident flux is also interpreted as a probability flux, $J = n_i v_i = \hbar k_i/mV$.

- For sufficiently long times t, we have

$$\Delta_t(\omega) \approx \delta(\omega) = \frac{m}{\hbar k_i}\delta(k - k_i).$$

Moreover, in the limit $V \to \infty$, we have

$$\sum_{\mathbf{k}\in\text{cone}} \rightarrow \frac{V}{(2\pi)^3}\Delta\Omega \int_0^\infty k^2 \, dk.$$

- Plugging everything in and using the symmetric convention for the Fourier transform,

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar^2} \left(\frac{m}{\hbar k_i} \right)^2 \int_0^\infty dk \, k^2 \delta(k - k_i) |\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_i)|^2 = \frac{2\pi m^2}{\hbar^4} |\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{k}_f - \mathbf{k}_i)|^2$$

where $\mathbf{k}_f \parallel \mathbf{k}$, and we have $k_f = k_i$ by energy conservation. This is the first Born approximation.

- If the potential $U(\mathbf{x})$ has lengthscale a, then $\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{k})$ has scale $1/a$. Hence Fermi's golden rule applies for times $t \gg a/v$ where v is the velocity. Physically, we can understand this by looking at the initial state $|\mathbf{k}\rangle$. This state is unphysical because it has uniform momentum everywhere, including within the potential itself. By thinking of the quantum state as an ensemble of particles, the time a/v can be interpreted as the time needed for these transient, "unphysical" particles to get out of the way.

- After a time $t \gg a/v$, the evolved wavefunction $U(t)|\mathbf{k}\rangle$ will look like an energy eigenstate in a region of radius about tv about the origin, as we have reached a "steady state" of particles coming in and being scattered out. This lends some intuition for why scattering rates can be computed using energy eigenstates alone.

Example. We consider scattering off the Yukawa potential

$$U(r) = A\frac{e^{-\kappa r}}{r}, \quad \widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q}) = \frac{2A}{(2\pi)^{1/2}}\frac{1}{\kappa^2 + q^2}$$

which arises in nuclear physics because it is the Green's function for the Klein-Gordan equation. Applying our scattering formula, $\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_i$ and hence $q^2 = 4k^2\sin^2(\theta/2)$, giving

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} = \frac{4A^2m^2}{\hbar^4}\frac{1}{(4k^2\sin^2(\theta/2) + \kappa^2)^2}.$$

In particular, in the case of Coulomb scattering, $\kappa \to 0$ and $A = Z_1Z_2e^2$, giving

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} = \frac{Z_1^2Z_2^2e^4m^2}{4\hbar^4k^4}\frac{1}{\sin^4(\theta/2)}.$$

This is the Rutherford cross section, the exact result for classical nonrelativistic Coulomb scattering. It is also the exact result in nonrelativistic quantum mechanics if the particles are distinguishable, though we couldn't have known this as we only computed the first term in a perturbation series.

However, the scattering *amplitude* for the Coulomb potential turns out to be incorrect by phase factors, because the Coulomb potential doesn't fall off quickly enough. This doesn't matter for distinguishable particles, but for identical particles it renders our answer incorrect because we must combine distinct scattering amplitudes with phases intact. The correct answer for two electrons is called the Mott cross section.

11.3 Atoms in Fields

To begin, we consider the photoelectric effect as an extended example.

- We consider photons of energy $E_0 = \hbar\omega_0$ and momentum $\mathbf{p}_0 = \hbar\mathbf{k}_0$ incident on a single-electron atom in the ground state $|g\rangle$ with energy E_g, and compute the rate at which the electron is ejected into a plane-wave final state $|\mathbf{k}\rangle$.

- By conservation of energy, we must have $\hbar\omega_0 > |E_g|$, and we further assume that

$$\hbar\omega_0 \gg |E_g|.$$

  This is necessary because of the long-range Coulomb field of the nucleus; by assuming this, we can ignore the field and consider the ejected electron to be approximately free.

- We also require that the electron be nonrelativistic, with final energy

$$E = \hbar\omega_0 + E_g \ll mc^2.$$

  For hydrogen, these constraints imply $100\,\mathrm{eV} \lesssim \hbar\omega_0 \lesssim 100\,\mathrm{keV}$, which contains the far UV and X-ray ranges.

- We model the light wave *classically*, with potentials

$$\phi = 0, \quad \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x}, t) = A_0\boldsymbol{\epsilon}e^{i(\mathbf{k}_0\cdot\mathbf{x} - \omega t)}.$$

  This is a common choice for treating plane waves in a nonrelativistic context. Using the transversality condition $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}\cdot\mathbf{k}_0 = 0$ shows that the vector potential is in Coulomb gauge, $\nabla\cdot\mathbf{A} = 0$, and hence as operators, $\mathbf{p}\cdot\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}\cdot\mathbf{p}$. (Note that at the quantum level, $\mathbf{k}_0$ is not an operator but $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{p}$ above both are.)

- We use the standard replacement $\mathbf{p} \to \mathbf{p} + e\mathbf{A}/c$, which gives perturbing Hamiltonian

$$H_1 = \frac{e}{mc}\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{A}.$$

Since we are working to first order, we neglect the A^2 term.

- In particular, this is of a sinusoidal form with

$$K = \frac{eA_0}{mc}(\boldsymbol{\epsilon} \cdot \mathbf{p})e^{i\mathbf{k}_0 \cdot \mathbf{x}}.$$

Hence the transition rate is, by Fermi's golden rule,

$$\frac{dw}{d\Omega}\Delta\Omega = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar^2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}\in\text{cone}} |\langle \mathbf{k}|K|g\rangle|^2 \Delta_t(\omega), \quad \omega = \frac{E - \hbar\omega_0 - E_g}{\hbar},$$

where we take the sum over final states in a cone of solid angle $\Delta\Omega$.

- We next convert from $dw/d\Omega$ to a cross-section $d\sigma/d\Omega$ using

$$\frac{dw}{d\Omega} = n_i v_i \frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega}.$$

Now, the velocity is simply $v_i = c$, while the number density can be found by computing the energy in two different ways,

$$u = n_i \hbar\omega_0, \quad u = \frac{E^2 + B^2}{8\pi} = \frac{\omega_0^2 A_0^2}{2\pi c^2}$$

which tells us that

$$n_i = \frac{k_0 A_0^2}{2\pi\hbar c}.$$

- Next, we compute the matrix element. We have

$$\langle \mathbf{k}|(\boldsymbol{\epsilon} \cdot \mathbf{p})e^{i\mathbf{k}_0 \cdot \mathbf{x}}|g\rangle = \hbar(\boldsymbol{\epsilon} \cdot \mathbf{k})\langle \mathbf{k}|e^{i\mathbf{k}_0 \cdot \mathbf{x}}|g\rangle.$$

The remaining factor is proportional to $\widetilde{\psi}_g(\mathbf{q})$ where $\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_0$ by logic we've seen before. Note that for typical optics applications, where k_0 is in the visible range and hence $e^{i\mathbf{k}_0 \cdot \mathbf{x}}$ varies slowly, we often expand the exponential instead, yielding a multipole expansion. We will describe this in more detail in the notes on Optics.

- Putting everything together, taking $\Delta_t(\omega) \to \delta(\omega)$, and simplifying gives

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} = (2\pi)^2 \frac{e^2}{mc^2} \frac{k_f}{k_0}(\boldsymbol{\epsilon} \cdot \mathbf{k}_f)^2 |\widetilde{\psi}_g(\mathbf{q})|^2$$

where the magnitude of the final momentum $\mathbf{k}_f$ is set by energy conservation. We can then proceed further with an explicit form for $|g\rangle$, which would show that harder (higher energy) X-rays penetrate further, and that larger atoms are more effective at stopping them.

- Why isn't momentum conserved here, if energy is? Momentum is absorbed by the nucleus, which we have implicitly assumed to be infinitely heavy by taking the potential as static; a proper treatment of the nucleus would be able to compute its recoil.

- Without the nucleus present, the reaction $\gamma + e \to e$ would be forbidden. The same effect is observed in Bremsstrahlung, $e \to e + \gamma$, which only occurs when matter is nearby to absorb the momentum. (However, note that gamma decay in isolated nuclei is allowed, as is photon emission from isolated atoms. This is because the initial and final nuclei/atoms have different rest masses.)

- Note that this derivation has treated the electromagnetic field as completely classical. Contrary to what is usually taught, the photoelectric effect is not direct evidence for photons: quantizing the matter alone is sufficient to make its energy transfer with the field discrete, even if the field is treated classically! However, the photoelectric effect did play an important historical role in the advent of quantum mechanics.

- Of course, we could also have treated this entirely within quantum mechanics. We quantize the electromagnetic field, and put it in a coherent state. The coupling between the atom and field is still $H_1 \propto \mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{A}$, but now this perturbation is time-independent. The logic is still the same, though, and our time-dependent perturbation theory results can be applied and give the same answer. In general, time-dependence in perturbations only arises from objects "outside the system", whose dynamics we aren't modeling quantum mechanically.

We now make some remarks about treating the electromagnetic field.

- In our study of atomic physics, we neglected the dynamics of the electromagnetic field entirely, just assuming an instantaneous Coulomb attraction between charges. However, this isn't right even classically: one must account for magnetic fields, retardation, and radiation.

- If the velocities are low, and the retardation effects are negligible, one can account for magnetic fields by adding velocity-dependent terms to the Lagrangian, resulting in the Darwin Lagrangian. While we don't do this explicitly, the spin-orbit coupling was very much in this spirit.

- To account for retardation and radiation, we are forced to consider the dynamics of the field itself. In fact, for multi-electron atoms, retardation effects are of the same order as the fine structure. Radiation is also important, since it plays a role whenever an atom decays by spontaneous emission of a photon, but we've managed to get by treating this implicitly.

- Now suppose we do include the full dynamics of the field. Classically, there are two categories of "easy" electromagnetism problems: those in which the field is given, and those in which the charges and currents are given. Cases where we need to solve for both, as they affect each other, are very difficult.

- In the semiclassical theory of radiation, one treats the charges with quantum mechanics but the field as a fixed, classical background, neglecting the backreaction of the charges. As we have seen above, this approach can be used to compute the rate of absorption of radiation.

- It is more difficult to compute the rate of spontaneous emission, since the classical background is simply zero in this case, but it can be done indirectly with thermodynamics, using the Einstein coefficients. (In quantum field theory, one can compute the spontaneous emission rate directly, or heuristically describe it as stimulated emission due to "vacuum fluctuations", i.e. the residual dispersion of the field in the ground state.)

- Any attempt to incorporate backreaction while keeping the field classical is ultimately inconsistent. For example, one can measure a classical field perfectly, leading to a violation of the uncertainty principle.

- The semiclassical theory also leads to violation of conservation of energy. For instance, if an atom has a 50% chance of dropping in energy by $\hbar\omega$, then the energy of the classical field must be $\hbar\omega/2$ to preserve the expectation value of energy. But the whole point is that energy is transfered to the field in only multiples of $\hbar\omega$. Any option for the field's energy violates energy conservation, and fundamentally arises because quantum systems can have indefinite energy, while classical systems can't.

- The same problems occur in semiclassical theories of gravity. Instead, a proper description must involve the quantization of the electromagnetic field itself, carried out in the notes on Quantum Field Theory. For some examples where such a description is required, within the context of atomic physics, see The Concept of the Photon—Revisited. A fuller account of the interaction of atoms with quantized light is given in the notes on Optics.

11.4 Quantum Dynamics

In this section, we cover some useful examples of time evolution, which appear in atomic, molecular, and optical physics. Further examples are give in the notes on Optics.

- In general, we can define an alternative picture using any unitary operator,

$$|\psi_S(t)\rangle = U_T(t)|\psi_T(t)\rangle, \quad A_T(t) = U_T^\dagger(t)A_S(t)U_T(t).$$

Focusing solely on the time evolution, $|\psi_T(t)\rangle$ evolves according to the Schrodinger equation with Hamiltonian

$$H_T(t) = U_T^\dagger(t)H(t)U_T(t) - i\hbar U_T^\dagger(t)(\partial_t U_T(t)).$$

This includes our previous pictures as special cases. For example, if we pick $U_T(t)$ to be the exact time evolution operator, then $H_T(t) = 0$, recovering Heisenberg picture. Or, if the Hamiltonian can be written as $H(t) = H_0 + V(t)$, then setting $U_T(t) = e^{-iH_0 t/\hbar}$ recovers interaction picture.

- As an example, consider the driven harmonic oscillator,

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}m\omega_0^2 x^2 + 2F_\omega \cos(\omega_d t)x.$$

This can be simply written in terms of creation and annihilation operators as

$$H = \hbar\omega_0 a^\dagger a + x_{\text{zp}}F_\omega(a + a^\dagger)(e^{i\omega_d t} + e^{-i\omega_d t}), \quad x_{\text{zp}} = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{2m\omega_0}}.$$

- Now suppose that the drive is near resonance, $|\omega_d - \omega_0| \ll \omega_0$. In this case, we know that in interaction picture, two of the four driving terms evolve slowly, while the other two oscillate rapidly. We drop them with the rotating wave approximation, giving

$$H = \hbar\omega_0 a^\dagger a + x_{\text{zp}}F_\omega(e^{i\omega_d t}a + e^{-i\omega_d t}a^\dagger).$$

- If we went to interaction picture, we would get a Hamiltonian with only slowly varying terms. But often it's more convenient to have a Hamiltonian with no time dependence at all. We can achieve this by going into "the frame of the drive", setting $U_T(t) = e^{-i\omega_d a^\dagger a t}$. This is still simple enough so that it's trivial to go back to the Schrodinger picture states, but we now have

$$H_T = \hbar(\omega_0 - \omega_d)a^\dagger a + x_{\rm zp}F_\omega(a^\dagger + a).$$

In this form, it's clear that the only resonant frequency is $\omega_d = \omega_0$. If the perturbation is far off resonance, then if we start in state $|n\rangle$, all that happens is that the states $|n \pm 1\rangle$ get small coefficients, rapidly oscillating with amplitude $x_{\rm zp}F_\omega/\hbar(\omega_0 - \omega_d)$.

- As another example, consider a parametrically driven harmonic oscillator,

$$H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \frac{1}{2}m\omega_0^2(1 + \epsilon(t))x^2, \quad \epsilon(t) = \epsilon_0 \cos(2\omega_d t).$$

Assuming that $\omega_d \approx \omega_0$ and using the rotating wave approximation again gives

$$H = \hbar\omega_0 a^\dagger a + \hbar\omega_0 \frac{\epsilon_0}{8}(e^{2i\omega_d t}a^2 + e^{-2i\omega_d t}a^{\dagger 2}).$$

This can be made time-independent with the same transformation as in the previous example,

$$H_T = \hbar(\omega_0 - \omega_d)a^\dagger a + \hbar\omega_0 \frac{\epsilon_0}{8}(a^2 + a^{\dagger 2}).$$

Example. Consider a three-state system where the second state is a "potential barrier",

$$H = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \epsilon & 0 \\ \epsilon & 1 & \epsilon \\ 0 & \epsilon & 0 \end{pmatrix} \hbar\omega_0$$

and we treat the ϵ terms as a perturbation. If the system is prepared in state $|0\rangle$, then at first order in perturbation theory, nothing interesting happens: the coefficient of $|2\rangle$ is zero at this order, while the coefficient of $|1\rangle$ rapidly oscillates, with amplitude ϵ. But at second order, the state can "tunnel" through $|1\rangle$ to reach $|2\rangle$,

$$c_2^{(2)}(t) = \frac{(\epsilon\hbar\omega_0)^2}{(i\hbar)^2} \int_0^t dt' \int_0^{t'} dt'' e^{-i\omega_0 t'} e^{i\omega_0 t''}.$$

The integral has one dimension along which it doesn't oscillate, which means it scales as t/ω_0. The coefficient thus grows as $c_2^{(2)}(t) \sim \epsilon^2\omega_0 t$, which can become substantial. Summing the full perturbation series shows that the state flips between $|0\rangle$ and $|2\rangle$ on timescale $1/\epsilon^2\omega_0$, while the coefficient of $|1\rangle$ always stays small.

In atomic physics, this kind of setup is unfortunately commonly described by saying something like: "the system goes to state $|2\rangle$ through a virtual transition, where it climbs up to the virtual state $|1\rangle$ by violating energy conservation". Of course, energy is always exactly conserved in quantum mechanics. The expectation value of the *unperturbed* Hamiltonian H_0 isn't, but there's no reason to expect it to be. Another bad feature of this language is that it suggests that the system's state suddenly jumps at some random time, while in reality the coefficient of $|2\rangle$ smoothly goes up. That language is used because the perturbation series integrals involve H_1 evaluated at particular times – but we smoothly integrate over all those possible times.

Note. Parametric driving is more subtle than ordinary driving, because it is also resonant when $\omega_d = n\omega_0$, but such an effect seems to be invisible in the above H_T, which is very similar to that of ordinary driving. What's going on? The problem is that the rotating wave approximation is not suitable. Taking $n = 2$ for concreteness and restoring the dropped terms gives

$$H = \hbar\omega_0 a^\dagger a + \hbar\omega_0 \frac{\epsilon_0}{8}(e^{4i\omega_0 t} + e^{-4i\omega_0 t})(a^2 + a^{\dagger 2} + a^\dagger a + aa^\dagger).$$

At first order in perturbation theory, there is no resonance effect; all the $c_i^{(1)}$ just oscillate rapidly with small amplitudes. At second order, there are a few contributions, such as the one from $(e^{4i\omega_0 t}a^2) \times (e^{-4i\omega_0 t}a^{\dagger 2})$, but these don't change the excitation number. The parametric resonance shows up at third order, through terms like $(e^{-4i\omega_0 t}a^{\dagger 2})^2 \times (e^{4i\omega_0 t}aa^\dagger)$.

This exhausting analysis illustrates why these kinds of things are usually treated with operators instead of states. As we saw earlier, driving can be treated exactly fairly easily, because there are only two operators at play (x and p, or equivalently a and $a^\dagger$), rather than an infinite number of state coefficients. Indeed, when you go to quantum field theory, Heisenberg picture is used almost exclusively. One can even argue that this is the right choice philosophically, because operators directly represent observable quantities, which physics is all about. But states aren't useless; for instance, it would be very hard to understand a quantum computation without invoking states.

Example. The AC Stark shift. Consider a two-state atom driven off resonance,

$$H = \hbar \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Omega\cos(\omega_d t) \\ \Omega\cos(\omega_d t) & \omega_1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \omega_1 - \omega_d = \Delta.$$

If $\Delta \ll \omega_1$, then the atom is near resonance, but as long as $\Omega \ll \Delta$, the perturbation cannot cause substantial transitions from $|0\rangle$ to $|1\rangle$. The amplitude to end up in $|1\rangle$ is at most Ω/Δ, corresponding to a probability of $(\Omega/\Delta)^2$. In experiments, we typically don't care about this; what is much more interesting is that at second order, the perturbation shifts the oscillation frequencies of the two states by an amount of order Ω^2/Δ. This is a tiny amount, but can be significant because in practice we have very good frequency precision.

To analyze this system we go into a frame "rotating with the drive",

$$U_T(t) = e^{-i\omega_d t|1\rangle\langle 1|}, \quad H_T = \hbar \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Omega/2 \\ \Omega/2 & \Delta \end{pmatrix}$$

where we also applied the rotating wave approximation. At this point it would be trivial to diagonalize the matrix, but we do something different to illustrate a technique. For a constant perturbation, we found that the result of time-dependent perturbation theory up to second order only depended on the combination

$$\langle n|H_1|i\rangle + \sum_k \frac{\langle n|H_1|k\rangle\langle k|H_1|i\rangle}{E_i - E_k}.$$

Therefore, if we could construct an effective perturbation $H_{1,\text{eff}}$ such that

$$\langle n|H_{1,\text{eff}}|i\rangle = \sum_k \frac{\langle n|H_1|k\rangle\langle k|H_1|i\rangle}{E_i - E_k}$$

then its first-order results would match the second-order results we're looking for here. We have

$$H_{1,\text{eff}} = \hbar \begin{pmatrix} -\Omega^2/4\Delta & 0 \\ 0 & \Omega^2/4\Delta \end{pmatrix}$$

so the splitting is $\hbar\Omega^2/2\Delta$. Of course, this agrees with the exact result to $O(\Omega^2)$.

Next, we discuss a powerful general method to construct effective Hamiltonians.

- In many situations, the dynamics have a rapidly oscillating component we don't care about, and a slower component that we want to isolate. That is, we care about the time average $\langle \psi(t) \rangle$ of the state over some suitable timescale τ, which is longer than the fast dynamics and shorter than the slow dynamics.

- We work in interaction picture, where the evolution operator obeys

$$i\hbar \partial_t U(t, t_0) = H_I(t) U(t, t_0), \quad |\psi_I(t)\rangle = U(t, t_0)|\psi_I(t_0)\rangle$$

  and we suppose that H_I is small. We would like to construct an effective Hamiltonian that describes the evolution of $\langle \psi_I(t) \rangle$. Naively, we could do this by simply averaging $H_I(t)$, but this is too crude of an approximation; for instance, doing that in the previous example would have just thrown out the AC Stark shift altogether.

- Instead, we note that

$$\begin{aligned} i\hbar \partial_t \langle |\psi_I(t)\rangle \rangle &= i\hbar \partial_t \langle U(t, t_0)\rangle |\psi_I(t_0)\rangle \\ &= \langle H_I(t) U(t, t_0)\rangle |\psi_I(t_0)\rangle \\ &= \langle H_I(t) U(t, t_0)\rangle \langle U(t, t_0)\rangle^{-1} \langle |\psi_I(t)\rangle \rangle \end{aligned}$$

  where we used the time-averaged versions of the above two equations. Therefore,

$$i\hbar \partial_t \langle |\psi_I(t)\rangle \rangle = \mathcal{H}_{\text{eff}}(t) \langle |\psi_I(t)\rangle \rangle, \quad \mathcal{H}_{\text{eff}}(t) = \langle H_I(t) U(t, t_0)\rangle \langle U(t, t_0)\rangle^{-1}.$$

- We can now expand $U(t, t_0)$ with the Dyson series, giving a perturbative expansion for $\mathcal{H}_{\text{eff}}$. For our purposes, we only care about going to second order in H_I, and since $\mathcal{H}_{\text{eff}}$ already contains a factor of H_I, this means we can expand the $U(t, t_0)$ to first order,

$$U(t, t_0) = 1 + U_1(t), \quad U_1(t, t_0) = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_{t_0}^t dt' \, H_I(t').$$

  Performing this expansion and suppressing the t_0 argument,

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{eff}}(t) = \langle H_I(t) \rangle + \langle H_I(t) U_1(t) \rangle - \langle H_I(t) \rangle \langle U_1(t) \rangle.$$

- Now, while $|\psi_I(t)\rangle$ maintains its normalization, $\langle |\psi_I(t)\rangle \rangle$ doesn't, because the averaging removes the rapidly oscillating parts of the amplitudes. Thus, $\mathcal{H}_{\text{eff}}(t)$ is not Hermitian. Since we don't care about the rapidly oscillating parts, we suppress this issue by taking the Hermitian part,

$$H_{\text{eff}}(t) = \frac{\mathcal{H}_{\text{eff}}(t) + \mathcal{H}_{\text{eff}}^\dagger(t)}{2} = \langle H_I(t) \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \left(\langle [H_I(t), U_1(t)] \rangle - [\langle H_I(t) \rangle, \langle U_1(t) \rangle] \right)$$

  where we used the fact that $U_1(t)$ is anti-Hermitian.

Example. The AC Stark shift in a cavity QED system. Now we suppose that the atom is coupled to an electromagnetic mode of a cavity. In other words, we now treat the electromagnetic field as quantum as well. The Hamiltonian in the rotating wave approximation is

$$H = \omega_c a^\dagger a + \frac{1}{2} \omega_a \sigma_z + g(a^\dagger \sigma_- + a \sigma_+)$$

where g is the coupling strength. Note that under this convention, the zeroth and first states of the atom are the excited and ground states, respectively, so that σ_z can enter with a positive sign. The atom raising and lowering operators are $\sigma_+ = |e\rangle\langle g|$ and $\sigma_- = |g\rangle\langle e|$.

Letting the detuning be $\Delta = \omega_c - \omega_a$, we assume $g, \Delta \ll \omega_c, \omega_a$. In the interaction picture,

$$H_I(t) = g(a^\dagger \sigma_- e^{i\Delta t} + a\sigma_+ e^{-i\Delta t}), \quad U_1(t) = -\frac{g}{\Delta}(a^\dagger \sigma_- e^{i\Delta t} - a\sigma_+ e^{-i\Delta t}).$$

We choose to integrate over a time $\tau \gg \Delta^{-1}$, which means $\langle H_I(t)\rangle = 0$. Thus,

$$H_{\text{eff}}(t) = \frac{1}{2}\langle [H_I(t), U_1(t)]\rangle = \frac{g^2}{\Delta}[a^\dagger \sigma_-, a\sigma_+].$$

Using $[a, a^\dagger] = 1$ and $[\sigma_+, \sigma_-] = \sigma_z$, the commutator simplifies as

$$[a^\dagger \sigma_-, a\sigma_+] = -\sigma_z(a^\dagger a + 1/2) - 1/2.$$

Dropping the constant, we find

$$H_{\text{eff}}(t) = -\frac{g^2}{\Delta}\sigma_z(a^\dagger a + 1/2).$$

The new feature is the addition of the $1/2$, which means the AC Stark shift occurs even in vacuum, as a result of coupling to "vacuum fluctuations". Of course, this system can also be treated exactly without too much trouble, as is done in the notes on Optics. Our result corresponds to the $O(g^2)$ part of the exact result.

Note that this computation only works if $g\sqrt{n} \ll \Delta$ where n is the typical number of photons in the mode, which is the analogue of demanding $\Omega \ll \Delta$ in our previous calculation. If this isn't true, then there's no choice of τ for which setting $\langle H_I(t)\rangle = 0$ but keeping the order $g^2 n/\Delta$ term in $H_{\text{eff}}(t)$ are simultaneously good approximations. If τ is short, the former contribution ends up more important than the latter, and if τ is long, the dynamics due to the latter contribution get averaged out.

Example. A more nontrivial example is a trapped ion in a laser field. We let the ion have an optical transition with creation operator σ_+. It experiences a harmonic potential in the trap, which we can quantize to yield phonons, with annihilation operator b. The interaction Hamiltonian is

$$H_I(t) = \frac{\hbar\Omega}{2}\sigma_- e^{i\Delta t} e^{-ikz(t)} + \text{h.c.}, \quad z(t) = z_{\text{zp}}(be^{-i\omega_m t} + b^\dagger e^{i\omega_m t}), \quad z_{\text{zp}} = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar}{2m\omega_m}}.$$

For a typical trap, $\omega_m \sim$ MHz and $z_{\text{zp}} \sim 10\,\text{nm}$ for low-lying energy levels, which means we can expand the exponential in the Lamb–Dicke parameter $\eta = kz_{\text{zp}}$. At lowest order,

$$H_I(t) = \frac{\hbar\Omega}{2}\sigma_-(e^{i\Delta t} + \eta b e^{i(\Delta - \omega_m)t} + \eta b^\dagger e^{i(\Delta + \omega_m)t}) + \text{h.c.}$$

and applying the same method as above gives the modified AC Stark shift

$$H_{\text{eff}}(t) = -\frac{\hbar\Omega^2}{4\Delta}\left(1 + 2\frac{\eta^2 \Delta^2}{\Delta^2 - \omega_m^2}(b^\dagger b + 1/2)\right)\sigma_z.$$

The new, $O(\eta^2)$ term can dominate if $\Delta \approx \omega_m$.

12   Scattering

12.1   Introduction

In the previous section, we considered scattering from a time-dependent point of view. In this section, we instead solve the time-independent Schrodinger equation.

- We consider scattering off a potential $V(\mathbf{x})$ which goes to zero outside a cutoff radius $r > r_{\text{co}}$. Outside this radius, energy eigenstates obey the free Schrodinger equation.

- As argued earlier, if we feed in an incident plane wave, the wavefunction will approach a steady state after a long time, with constant probability density and current; hence it approach an energy eigenstate. Thus we can also compute scattering rates by directly looking at energy eigenstates; such eigenstates are all nonnormalizable.

- We look for energy eigenstates $\psi(\mathbf{x})$ which contain an incoming plane wave, i.e.

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) = \psi_{\text{inc}}(\mathbf{x}) + \psi_{\text{scat}}(\mathbf{x}), \quad \psi_{\text{inc}}(\mathbf{x}) = e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}}.$$

  For large r, the scattered wave must be a spherical wave with the same energy as the original wave (i.e. same magnitude of momentum),

$$\psi_{\text{scat}}(\mathbf{x}) \sim \frac{e^{ikr}}{r} f(\theta, \phi).$$

  The function $f(\theta, \phi)$ is called the scattering amplitude.

- Now, if we wanted ψ_{scat} to be an exact eigenstate for $r > r_{\text{co}}$, then f would have to be constant, yielding an isotropic spherical wave. However, the correction terms for arbitrary f are subleading in r, and we only care about the large r behavior.

  Similarly, the incoming plane wave $e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}}$ isn't an eigenstate; the correction terms are included in $\psi_{\text{inc}}(\mathbf{x})$ and are subleading.

- Next, we convert the scattering amplitude to a cross section. The probability current is

$$\mathbf{J} = \frac{\hbar}{m} \text{Im}(\psi^* \nabla \psi).$$

  For the incident wave, $\mathbf{J}_{\text{inc}} = \hbar\mathbf{k}/m$. For the outgoing wave,

$$\mathbf{J}_{\text{scat}} \sim \frac{\hbar k}{m} \frac{|f(\theta, \phi)|^2}{r^2} \hat{\mathbf{r}}.$$

  The area of a cone of solid angle $\Delta\Omega$ at radius r is $r^2 \Delta\Omega$, and hence

$$\frac{d\sigma}{d\Omega} = \frac{r^2 J_{\text{scat}}(\Omega)}{J_{\text{inc}}} = |f(\theta, \phi)|^2$$

  which is a very simple result.

- We've ignored a subtlety above: the currents for the incident and scattered waves should interfere because $\mathbf{J}$ is bilinear. We ignore this because the incident wave has a finite area in reality, so it is zero for all angles except the forward direction. In the forward direction, the incident and scattered waves interfere destructively, as required by conservation of probability. Applying this quantitatively yields the optical theorem.

- The total cross section almost always diverges classically, because we count any particle scattered by an arbitrarily small amount. By contrast, in quantum mechanics we can get finite cross sections because an arbitrarily small push can instead become an arbitrarily small scattering amplitude, plus a high amplitude for continuing exactly in the forward direction. (However, the cross section can still diverge if $V(r)$ falls slowly enough.)

Note. Typical length scales for electrons.

- The typical wavelength of light emitted from hydrogen transitions is

$$\lambda \sim \begin{cases} 10^{-7}\,\text{m} & \text{SI,} \\ 1/\alpha & \text{atomic} \\ 4\pi/\alpha^2 m \sim (3\,\text{eV})^{-1} & \text{natural.} \end{cases}$$

- The Bohr radius quantifies the size of an atom, and is

$$a_0 \sim \begin{cases} 5 \times 10^{-11}\,\text{m} & \text{SI,} \\ 1 & \text{atomic,} \\ 1/\alpha m \sim (4\,\text{keV})^{-1} & \text{natural.} \end{cases}$$

- The electron Compton wavelength is the scale where pair production can occur, and is

$$\frac{\lambda_c}{2\pi} \sim \begin{cases} 4 \times 10^{-13}\,\text{m} & \text{SI,} \\ \alpha & \text{atomic,} \\ 1/m \sim (0.5\,\text{MeV})^{-1} & \text{natural.} \end{cases}$$

- The classical electron radius is the size of an electron where the electrostatic potential energy matches the mass, i.e. the scale where QED renormalization effects become important. It is

$$r_e \sim \begin{cases} 3 \times 10^{-15}\,\text{m} & \text{SI,} \\ \alpha^2 & \text{atomic,} \\ \alpha/m \sim (60\,\text{MeV})^{-1} & \text{natural.} \end{cases}$$

It is also the length scale for Thomson scattering.

Note. Examples of the scattering of radiation.

- Low-frequency elastic scattering is known as Rayleigh scattering.

- High-frequency elastic scattering, or elastic scattering off a nonrelativistic free electron, is known as Thomson scattering. If the frequency is high enough to require relativistic corrections, it becomes Compton scattering, which is described by the Klein–Nishina formula.

- Raman scattering is the inelastic scattering of photons by matter, which typically is associated with inducing vibrational excitation or deexcitation in molecules.

12.2 Partial Waves

We now focus on the case of a central force potential.

- Solutions to the Schrodinger equation separate,

$$\psi_{k\ell m}(\mathbf{x}) = R_{k\ell}(r)Y_{\ell m}(\theta, \phi).$$

  The quantum number k parametrizes the energy by $E = \hbar^2 k^2/2m$. It is the wavenumber of the incident and scattered waves far from the potential, i.e. $R_{kl}(r) \propto e^{ikr}$.

- Defining $u_{k\ell}(r) = rR_{k\ell}(r)$, the radial Schrodinger equation is

$$\frac{1}{r^2}\frac{d}{dr}\left(r^2 \frac{dR_{k\ell}}{dr}\right) + k^2 R_{k\ell}(r) = W(r)R_{k\ell}(r), \quad u_{k\ell}''(r) + k^2 u_{k\ell}(r) = W(r)u_{k\ell}(r)$$

  where

$$W(r) = \frac{\ell(\ell+1)}{r^2} + \frac{2m}{\hbar^2}V(r).$$

- Therefore, the general solution of energy E is

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{\ell m} A_{\ell m} R_{k\ell}(r)Y_{\ell m}(\theta, \phi).$$

  Our next task is to find the expansion coefficients $A_{\ell m}$ to get a scattering solution.

- In the case of the free particle, the solutions for the radial wavefunction $R_{k\ell}$ are the spherical Bessel functions $j_\ell(kr)$ and $y_\ell(kr)$, where

$$j_\ell(\rho) \approx \frac{1}{\rho}\sin\left(\rho - \ell\pi/2\right), \quad y_\ell(\rho) \approx -\frac{1}{\rho}\cos(\rho - \ell\pi/2)$$

  for $\rho \gg \ell$, and the y-type Bessel functions are singular at $\rho = 0$.

- Since the incident wave $e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}}$ describes a free particle, it must be possible to write in terms of the j-type Bessel functions. One can show

$$e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}} = 4\pi \sum_{\ell m} i^\ell j_\ell(kr)Y_{\ell m}^*(\hat{\mathbf{k}})Y_{\ell m}(\hat{\mathbf{r}}).$$

  Next, using the addition theorem for spherical harmonics,

$$P_\ell(\cos\gamma) = \frac{4\pi}{2\ell+1}\sum_m Y_{\ell m}^*(\hat{\mathbf{k}})Y_{\ell m}(\hat{\mathbf{r}})$$

  where γ is the angle between $\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{r}$, we have

$$e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}} = \sum_\ell i^\ell (2\ell+1)j_\ell(kr)P_\ell(\cos\gamma).$$

- Next, we find the asymptotic behavior of the radial wavefunction $R_{k\ell}(r)$ for large r. If the potential $V(r)$ cuts off at a finite radius r_0, then the solutions are Bessel functions of both the j and y-type, since we don't care about the region $r < r_0$, giving $u_{k\ell}(r) \sim e^{\pm ikr}$.

- If there is no sharp cutoff, parametrize the error as $u_{k\ell}(r) = e^{g(r)\pm ikr}$, giving

$$g'' + g'^2 \pm 2ikg' = W(r).$$

We already know the centrifugal term alone gives Bessel functions, so we consider the case where the potential dominates for long distances, $V(r) \sim 1/r^p$ where $0 < p < 2$. Taking the leading term on both sides gives $g(r) \sim 1/r^{p-1}$, so the correction factor g goes to zero for large r only if $p > 1$. In particular, the Coulomb potential is ruled out, as it gives logarithmic phase shifts $e^{i \log(kr)}$. This can also be shown using the first-order WKB approximation.

- Assuming that $V(r)$ does fall faster than $1/r$, we may write

$$R_{k\ell} \sim \frac{\sin(kr - l\pi/2 + \delta_\ell)}{kr}$$

for large r. To interpret the phase shift δ_ℓ, note that we would have $\delta_\ell = 0$ in the case of a free particle, by the expansion of $j_\ell(kr)$. Thus the phase shift tells us how the potential asymptotically modifies radial phases.

Finally, we combine these ingredients to get our desired incident-plus-scattering states.

- We write the general solution as

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) = 4\pi \sum_{\ell m} i^\ell A_{\ell m} R_{k\ell}(r) Y_{\ell m}(\hat{\mathbf{r}}).$$

Subtracting off a plane wave, we have

$$\psi_{\text{scat}}(\mathbf{x}) = 4\pi \sum_{\ell m} i^\ell \left[A_{\ell m} R_{k\ell}(r) - j_\ell(kr) Y_{\ell m}^*(\hat{\mathbf{k}}) \right] Y_{\ell m}(\hat{\mathbf{r}}).$$

- For large r, the quantity in square brackets can be expanded as the sum of incoming and outgoing waves e^{-ikr}/r and e^{ikr}/r, and we only want an outgoing component, which gives

$$A_{\ell m} = e^{i\delta_\ell} Y_{\ell m}^*(\hat{\mathbf{k}}).$$

Substituting this in and simplifying, we have

$$\psi_{\text{scat}}(\mathbf{x}) \sim 4\pi \frac{e^{ikr}}{kr} \sum_{\ell m} e^{i\delta_\ell} \sin(\delta_\ell) Y_{\ell m}^*(\hat{\mathbf{k}}) Y_{\ell m}(\hat{\mathbf{r}}) = \frac{e^{ikr}}{kr} \sum_\ell (2\ell+1) e^{i\delta_\ell} \sin(\delta_\ell) P_\ell(\cos\theta)$$

where we used the addition theorem for spherical harmonics and set $\hat{\mathbf{k}} = \hat{\mathbf{z}}$.

- The above result is known as the partial wave expansion. It gives the scattering amplitude

$$f(\theta, \phi) = \frac{1}{k} \sum_\ell (2\ell+1) e^{i\delta_\ell} \sin(\delta_\ell) P_\ell(\cos\theta).$$

There is no dependence on ϕ and hence no angular momentum in the z-direction because the problem is symmetric about rotations about $\hat{\mathbf{z}}$. Instead the scattered waves are parametrized by their total angular momentum ℓ. The individual terms are $m = 0$ spherical harmonics, and are called the s-wave, the p-wave, and so on. Each of these contributions are present in the initial plane wave and scatter independently, since L^2 is conserved.

- The differential cross section has interference terms, but the total cross section does not due to the orthogonality of the Legendre polynomials, giving

$$\sigma = \frac{4\pi}{k^2} \sum_\ell (2\ell + 1) \sin^2 \delta_\ell.$$

This is the partial wave expansion of the total cross section.

- For any localized potential with lengthscale a, then when $ka \lesssim 1$, s-wave scattering ($\ell = 0$) dominates and the scattered particles are spherically symmetric. To see this, note that the centrifugal potential is equal to the energy when

$$\frac{\ell(\ell + 1)\hbar^2}{2ma^2} = E = \frac{\hbar^2 k^2}{2m}$$

which has solution $\ell \approx ka$. Then for $ka \lesssim 1$ the particle cannot classically reach the potential at all, so it has the same phase as a free particle and hence no phase shift.

- In reality, the phase shift will be small but nonzero for $ka > 1$ because of quantum tunneling, but drops off exponentially to zero. In the case where the potential is a power law (long-ranged), the phase shifts instead drop off as powers.

- In many experimental situations, s-wave scattering dominates (e.g. neutron scattering off nuclei in reactors). In this case we can replace the potential $V(r)$ with any potential with the same δ_0. A common and convenient choice is a δ-function potential.

- We can also import some heuristic results from our knowledge of Fourier transforms, though the partial wave expansions is in Legendre polynomials instead. If the scattering amplitude is dominated by terms up to ℓ_{cutoff}, the maximum angular size of a feature is about $1/\ell_{\text{cutoff}}$. Moreover, if the phase shifts fall off exponentially, then the scattering amplitude will be analytic. Otherwise, we generally get singularities in the forward direction.

- Each scattering term σ_ℓ is bounded by $(4\pi/k^2)(2\ell + 1)$. This is called the unitarity bound; it simply says we can't scatter out more than we put in.

Example. Hard sphere scattering. We let

$$V(r) = \begin{cases} \infty & r < a \\ 0 & r > a. \end{cases}$$

The radial wavefunction takes the form

$$R_{k\ell}(r) = \cos(\delta_\ell)j_\ell(kr) - \sin(\delta_\ell)y_\ell(kr)$$

for $r > a$, where δ_ℓ is the phase shift, as can be seen by taking the $r \to \infty$ limit. The boundary condition $R_{k\ell}(a) = 0$ gives

$$\tan(\delta_\ell) = \frac{j_\ell(ka)}{y_\ell(ka)}.$$

First we consider the case $ka \ll 1$. Applying the asymptotic forms of the Bessel functions,

$$\sin(\delta_\ell) \approx \delta_\ell \approx -\frac{(ka)^{2\ell+1}}{(2\ell - 1)!!(2\ell + 1)!!}.$$

In particular this means the scattering is dominated by the s-wave, giving

$$\sigma = \frac{4\pi}{k^2}(ka)^2 = 4\pi a^2$$

which is several times larger than the classical result $\sigma = \pi a^2$. Next we consider the case $ka \gg 1$. For terms with $\ell \ll ka$, using the asymptotic forms of the Bessel functions (this time for large argument) gives

$$\delta_\ell = -ka + \frac{\ell\pi}{2}.$$

As ℓ approaches ka, the phase shifts go to zero, cutting off the partial wave expansion. Intuitively, this is because when $ka \gg 1$ the scattering is essentially classical, with the incoming wave acting like a discrete particle. If a particle is scattered off a sphere of radius a, its angular momentum is

$$L = pa\sin\theta \leq \hbar ka.$$

The total cross section is

$$\sigma \approx \frac{4\pi}{k^2}\sum_{\ell=0}^{ka}(2\ell+1)(1/2) \approx 2\pi a^2$$

where we replaced the rapidly oscillating factor $\sin^2(\delta_\ell)$ with its average, $1/2$. It is puzzling that we get twice the classical cross section. Physically, the extra πa^2 comes from diffraction around the edge of the sphere which 'fills in' the shadow. This gives a sharp scattering peak in the forward diffraction, formally the same as the central peak in light diffraction with a circular aperture.

Note. The optical theorem relates the total cross section to the forward scattering amplitude. For central force potentials, we simply note that

$$f(0) = \frac{1}{k}\sum_\ell (2\ell+1)e^{i\delta_\ell}\sin(\delta_\ell).$$

Comparing this with the total cross section immediately gives

$$\sigma = \frac{4\pi}{k}\text{Im}(f(0)).$$

If we expand f in a series, the optical theorem relates terms of different orders, since $d\sigma/d\Omega \sim |f|^2$ but $\sigma \sim f$. This makes an appearance in quantum field theory through 'cut' diagrams.

The optical theorem can also be derived more generally by looking at the probability flux. By conversation of probability, we must have

$$\int \mathbf{J}\cdot d\mathbf{S} = 0$$

over a large sphere. The flux $\mathbf{J}$ splits into three terms: the incident wave (which contributes zero flux), the scattered wave (which contributes $v\sigma$), and the interference term,

$$\mathbf{J}_{\text{int}} = \frac{\hbar}{m}\text{Im}\left(\psi_{\text{scat}}^*\nabla\psi_{\text{inc}} + \psi_{\text{inc}}^*\nabla\psi_{\text{scat}}\right) = vr\,\text{Re}\left(f(\theta,\phi)^*e^{ik(x-r)}\hat{\mathbf{x}} + f(\theta,\phi)e^{ik(r-x)}\hat{\mathbf{r}}\right).$$

Integrating over a sphere of radius r, we must have

$$\sigma = r\,\text{Re}\left[\int d\phi \int \sin\theta d\theta\, e^{ikr(1-\cos\theta)}f(\theta,\phi)(1+\cos\theta)\right]$$

in the limit $r \to \infty$. Then the phase factor is rapidly oscillating, so the only contribution comes from the endpoints $\theta = 0, \pi$ since there are no points of stationary phase. The contribution at $\theta = \pi$ is zero due to the $(1+\cos\theta)$ factor, while the $\theta = 0$ peak gives the desired result.

Example. Resonances. Intuitively, a resonance is a short-lived excitation that is formed in a scattering process. To understand them, we apply the WKB approximation to a potential

$$V_{\text{tot}}(r) = V(r) + \frac{\ell(\ell+1)\hbar^2}{2mr^2}$$

which has a well between the turning points $r = r_0$ and $r = r_1$, and a classically forbidden region between $r = r_1$ and the turning point $r = r_2$. We define

$$p(r) = \sqrt{2m(E - V_{\text{tot}}(r))}, \quad \Phi = \frac{2}{\hbar} \int_{r_0}^{r_1} p(r)\, dr, \quad \kappa = \frac{1}{\hbar} \int_{r_1}^{r_2} |p(r)|\, dr.$$

Note that Φ is the action for an oscillation inside the well, so the bound state energies satisfy

$$\Phi(E_n) = 2\pi(n + 1/2).$$

Starting with an exponentially decaying solution for $r < r_0$, the connection formulas give

$$u(r) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{p(r)}} \left(2e^K \cos\frac{\Phi}{2} + \frac{i}{2} e^{-K} \sin\frac{\Phi}{2} \right) e^{iS(r)/\hbar - i\pi/4} + \text{c.c.}, \quad S(r) = \int_{r_2}^{r} p(r)\, dr$$

in the region $r > r_2$, where $\cos(\Phi/2) = 0$ for a bound state. Suppose the forbidden region is large, so $e^K \gg 1$. Then away from bound states, the e^{-K} term does not contribute; we get the same solution we would get if there were no potential well at all. In particular, assuming $V(r)$ is negligible for $r > r_2$, the particle doesn't feel its effect at all, so $\delta_\ell = 0$.

Now suppose we are near a bound state, $E = E_n + \delta E$. Then

$$\Phi(E) = 2\pi(n + 1/2) + \frac{\delta E}{\hbar\omega_c}$$

according to the theory of action-angle variables, and expanding to lowest order in δE gives

$$e^{2i\delta_\ell} = \frac{-\delta E + i\Gamma/2}{-\delta E - i\Gamma/2}, \quad \Gamma = \hbar\omega_c e^{-2K}.$$

That is, across a resonance, the phase shift rapidly changes by π. Then we have a Lorentzian resonance in the cross-section,

$$\sin^2 \delta_\ell = \frac{\Gamma^2/4}{(E - E_n)^2 + \Gamma^2/4}.$$

Since we have assumed K is large, the width Γ is much less than the spacing between energy levels $\hbar\omega_c$, so the cross-section has sharp spikes as a function of E. Such spikes are common in neutron-nucleus scattering. Physically, we imagine that the incoming particle tunnels through the barrier, gets 'stuck inside' bouncing back and forth for a timescale $1/\Gamma$, then exits. This is the physical model for the production of decaying particles in quantum field theory.

12.3 Green's Functions

In this section we make some formal definitions, which will be put to use in the next section. We begin with a heuristic example from electromagnetism.

- Schematically, Maxwell's equation read $\Box A = J$. The corresponding homogeneous equation is $\Box A_h = 0$, and the general solution of the inhomogeneous equation is

$$A(x) = A_h(x) + \int dx' \, G(x, x') J(x'), \quad \Box G(x, x') = \delta(x - x')$$

where $\Box$ acts on the x coordinate.

- In general, we see that solutions to inhomogeneous equations are ambiguous up to adding a homogeneous solution. In particular, the Green's function is defined by an inhomogeneous equation, so it is ambiguous too; we often specify it with boundary conditions.

- Now we consider the case where the source is determined by A itself, $J = \sigma A$. Then Maxwell's equations read

$$\Box A = \sigma A, \quad (\Box - \sigma) A = 0.$$

We have arrived at a homogeneous equation, but now A must be determined self-consistently; it will generally be the sum of an incident and scattered term, both sourcing current.

- As a specific example, consider reflection of an incident wave off a mirror, which is a region of high σ. The usual approach is to search for a solution of $\Box A = 0$ containing an incoming wave, satisfying a boundary condition at the mirror. But as shown above, we can also solve self-consistently, letting $A = A_{\text{inc}} + A_{\text{scat}}$ where $\Box A = \sigma A$. We would then find that A_{scat} cancels A_{inc} inside the mirror and also contains a reflected wave.

- Similarly, defining $H_0 = p^2/2m$, the time-independent Schrodinger equation for potential scattering is

$$(H_0 + V)\psi = E\psi, \quad (E - E_0)\psi = V\psi.$$

The latter equation is formally like the equation $\Box A = \sigma A$. We can think of solving for $\psi = \psi_{\text{inc}} + \psi_{\text{scat}}$ where both terms collectively produce the 'source' term $V(\mathbf{x})\psi(\mathbf{x})$.

- Given a Green's function for ψ, we will not have a closed form for ψ. Instead, we'll get a self-consistent expression for ψ in terms of itself, which we can expand to get a series solution.

We now define time-dependent Green's functions for the Schrodinger equation.

- The inhomogeneous time-dependent Schrodinger equation is

$$\left(i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - H(t) \right) \psi(\mathbf{x}, t) = S(\mathbf{x}, t).$$

We define a Green's function to satisfy this equation for the source $i\hbar\delta(t - t')\delta^3(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}')$, where the $i\hbar$ is by convention. We always indicate sources by primed coordinates.

- Earlier, we defined the propagator as

$$K(\mathbf{x}, t, \mathbf{x}', t') = \langle \mathbf{x} | U(t, t') | \mathbf{x} \rangle.$$

It is not a Green's function, as it satisfies the homogeneous Schrodinger equation; it instead propagates effects forward and backward in time.

- The outgoing (or retarded) time-dependent Green's function is

$$K_+(\mathbf{x}, t, \mathbf{x}', t') = \Theta(t - t')K(\mathbf{x}, t, \mathbf{x}', t').$$

  The additional step function gives the desired δ-function when differentiated. This Green's function is zero for all $t < t'$. In terms of a water wave analogy, it describes the surface of a lake which is previously still, which we poke at $(\mathbf{x}', t')$.

- Using the outgoing Green's function gives the solution

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}, t) = \psi_h(\mathbf{x}, t) + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt' \int d\mathbf{x}' \, K_+(\mathbf{x}, t, \mathbf{x}', t')S(\mathbf{x}', t').$$

  If we want a causal solution, then $\psi_h(\mathbf{x}, t)$ must also vanish before the driving starts, but this implies it must vanish for all times. Therefore

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}, t) = \int_{-\infty}^{t} dt' \int d\mathbf{x}' \, K(\mathbf{x}, t, \mathbf{x}', t')S(\mathbf{x}', t')$$

  is the unique causal solution.

- Similarly, we have the incoming (or advanced) Green's function

$$K_-(\mathbf{x}, t, \mathbf{x}', t') = -\Theta(t' - t)K(\mathbf{x}, t, \mathbf{x}', t').$$

  For $t \to 0^-$, it approaches $-\delta^3(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}')$. In terms of water waves, it describes waves in a lake forming for $t < t'$, then finally coalescing into a spike at $t = t'$ which is absorbed by our finger. For practical problems, we thus prefer the outgoing Green's function.

- We define the Green's operators $\hat{K}_\pm$ to satisfy

$$K_\pm(\mathbf{x}, t, \mathbf{x}', t') = \langle \mathbf{x} | \hat{K}_\pm(t, t') | \mathbf{x}' \rangle$$

  which satisfy

$$K_\pm(t, t') = \pm\Theta(\pm(t - t'))U(t, t'), \quad (i\hbar - H(t))\,\hat{K}_\pm(t, t') = i\hbar\delta(t - t').$$

  This form is often more useful it does not privilege the position basis. In particular, Green's operators can be defined for systems with a much broader range of Hilbert spaces, such as spin systems or field theories.

Example. In the case of a time-independent Hamiltonian, we will replace the arguments t and t' with one argument, t for the time difference. For example, for a free particle in three dimensions,

$$K_0(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}', t) = \left(\frac{m}{2\pi i \hbar t}\right)^{3/2} \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\frac{m(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}')^2}{2t}\right)$$

as we found in the section on path integrals.

Next, we turn to energy-dependent Green's functions, which are essentially the Fourier transforms of time-dependent ones.

- We consider the inhomogeneous time-dependent Schrodinger equation,

$$(E - H)\psi(\mathbf{x}) = S(\mathbf{x})$$

  where H is a time-independent Hamiltonian. An energy-dependent Green's function $G(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}', E)$ satisfies this equation with energy E and source $\delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}')$.

- Given an energy-dependent Green's function, the general solution is

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) = \psi_h(\mathbf{x}) + \int d\mathbf{x}\, G(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}', E) S(\mathbf{x}').$$

  Note that the homogeneous solution $\psi_h(\mathbf{x})$ is simply a stationary state with energy E.

- We imagine the energy-dependent Green's functions as follows. We consider a lake with finite area which is quiet for $t < 0$. At $t = 0$, we begin driving a point $\mathbf{x}'$ sinusoidally with frequency E. After a long time, the initial transients die out by dissipation and the surface approaches a sinusoidally oscillating steady state; this is $G(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}', E)$.

- If we drive exactly at an eigenfrequency of a lake, the corresponding eigenmode has a high amplitude which goes to infinity as the dissipation $\epsilon \to 0$, so the Green's function does not exist without dissipation.

- Finally, we can consider driving at an eigenfrequency in a continuous spectrum. This is only realizable in an infinite lake, as the corresponding eigenmodes are unbounded. We find a wave field with size $1/\epsilon$, where energy continually radiates out from the driving point $\mathbf{x}'$. In the limit $\epsilon \to 0$ the wave field becomes infinite, and we see that energy is transported out to infinity. However, this wave pattern is not an eigenfunction because eigenfunctions have zero net energy flux through any closed boundary.

- We can recast the energy-dependent Green's function as an operator,

$$G(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}', E) = \langle \mathbf{x} | \hat{G}(E) | \mathbf{x}' \rangle, \quad (E - H)\hat{G}(E) = 1.$$

  Then naively we have the solution $\hat{G}(E) = 1/(E - H)$, but this is generally not well defined. As usual, the ambiguity that exists comes from freedom in the boundary conditions.

- Note that we are not explicitly distinguishing the operator H, which acts on the Hilbert space, and the coordinate form of H, which is a differential operator that acts on wavefunctions.

Next, we carefully define energy-dependent Green's operators.

- As a first attempt, we try to define

$$\hat{G}_+(E) = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt\, e^{iEt/\hbar} \hat{K}_+(t).$$

  then we have

$$\hat{G}_+(E) = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_0^{\infty} dt\, e^{iEt/\hbar} U(t) = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_0^{\infty} dt\, e^{i(E-H)t/\hbar} = -\frac{e^{i(E-H)t/\hbar}}{E - H} \Big|_0^{\infty}$$

  where all functions of operators are defined by power series. Then $\hat{G}_+(E)$ would be a Green's operator if we could neglect the upper limit of integration.

- The problem above is due to the fact that the Schrodinger equation has no damping, so initial transients never die out. Instead we replace $H \to H - i\epsilon$, giving exponential decay, or equivalently $E \to E + i\epsilon$. Then generally we may define

$$\hat{G}_+(z) = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_0^\infty e^{izt/\hbar} U(t) = \frac{1}{z - H}$$

for any $z = E + i\epsilon$ with $\epsilon > 0$.

- For $\text{Im} \, z > 0$, the Green's operator has a complete set of eigenfunctions (since H does), though it is not Hermitian. Moreover, none of the eigenvalues are vanishing because they all have nonzero imaginary part. Thus the inverse of $z - H$ exists and is unique. (We ignore subtle mathematical issues, such as nonnormalizable eigenfunctions.)

- Suppose that H has a discrete spectrum with negative energies E_n and a continuous spectrum with positive energies E, as is typical for scattering problems,

$$H|n\alpha\rangle = E_n|n\alpha\rangle, \quad H|E\alpha\rangle = E|E\alpha\rangle.$$

Using standard normalization, the resolution of the identity is

$$1 = \sum_{n\alpha} |n\alpha\rangle\langle n\alpha| + \int_0^\infty dE \sum_\alpha |E\alpha\rangle\langle E\alpha|.$$

Therefore the Green's operator can be written as

$$\hat{G}_+(E + i\epsilon) = \frac{1}{E + i\epsilon - H} = \sum_{n\alpha} \frac{|n\alpha\rangle\langle n\alpha|}{E + i\epsilon - E_n} + \int_0^\infty dE' \sum_\alpha \frac{|E'\alpha\rangle\langle E'\alpha|}{E + i\epsilon - E'}.$$

- From the above expression we conclude that $\hat{G}_+(E + i\epsilon)$ is well-defined in the upper-half plane, but may become singular in the limit $\epsilon \to 0$. We define

$$\hat{G}_+(E) = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0} \hat{G}_+(E + i\epsilon)$$

where the right-hand side is often written as $\hat{G}_+(E + i0)$. When E is not an eigenvalue, then the limit exists by the decomposition above. When E is a discrete eigenvalue, the limit is singular and the Green's function fails to exist. Finally, when $E > 0$ the integrand above diverges, though it turns out the limit of the integral exists, as we'll show in an example later. All these results are perfectly analogous to the water waves above.

- When $\hat{G}_+(E)$ is well-defined, it is a Green's operator, because

$$(E - H)\hat{G}_+(E) = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0}(E + i\epsilon - H - i\epsilon)\frac{1}{E + i\epsilon - H} = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0}(1 - i\epsilon\hat{G}(E + i\epsilon)) = 1.$$

- We similarly define the incoming energy-dependent Green's operator

$$\hat{G}_-(z) = -\frac{1}{i\hbar} \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{izt/\hbar} U(t) = \frac{1}{z - H}$$

where now $z = E - i\epsilon$. It is defined in the lower-half plane and limits to $\hat{G}_-(E)$ for $\epsilon \to 0$, where the limit is well defined if E is not equal to any of the E_n.

- In the water wave analogy, we have 'antidamping', and energy is continually absorbed by the drive. In the case $E < 0$, this makes no difference in the limit $\epsilon \to 0$, where the drive absorbs zero energy. But in the case of a continuous eigenfrequency $E > 0$, the drive will continuously absorb energy even for $\epsilon \to 0$ because it 'comes in from infinity', just as it continuously radiates energy out in the outgoing case.

- Note that since everything in the definitions of $\hat{G}_\pm$ is real except for the $i\epsilon$, the $\hat{G}_\pm$ are Hermitian conjugates.

With the above water wave intuition, we can understand the Green's operators analytically.

- Define the difference of the Green's operators by

$$\hat{\Delta}(E) = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0} \left[\hat{G}_+(E + i\epsilon) - \hat{G}_-(E - i\epsilon) \right] = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0} \left(\frac{1}{E + i\epsilon - H} - \frac{1}{E - i\epsilon - H} \right).$$

- This limit is easier to understand in terms of ordinary numbers,

$$\lim_{\epsilon \to 0} \left(\frac{1}{x - x_0 + i\epsilon} - \frac{1}{x - x_0 - i\epsilon} \right) = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0} \frac{-2i\epsilon}{(x - x_0)^2 + \epsilon^2} = -2\pi i \delta(x - x_0).$$

Therefore we have

$$\hat{\Delta}(E) = -2\pi i \delta(E - H).$$

The operator on the right-hand side is defined by each eigenvector, i.e. an eigenvector of H with eigenvalue E_0 becomes an eigenvector with eigenvalue $\delta(E - E_0)$. Explicitly,

$$\delta(E - H) = \sum_{n\alpha} |n\alpha\rangle\langle n\alpha| \delta(E - E_n) + \int_0^\infty dE' \sum_\alpha |E'\alpha\rangle\langle E'\alpha| \delta(E - E').$$

We see that $\hat{\Delta}(E)$ is zero when E is not an eigenvalue, diverges when $E = E_n$, and is finite when $E > 0$ with $\hat{\Delta}(E) = -2\pi i \sum_\alpha |E\alpha\rangle\langle E\alpha|$.

- Therefore $\hat{G}_-(z)$ is the analytic continuation of $\hat{G}_+(z)$ through the gaps between the discrete eigenvalues, so they are both part of the same analytic function called the resolvent,

$$\hat{G}(z) = \frac{1}{z - H}$$

which is defined for all z that are not eigenvalues of H. The resolvent has poles at every discrete eigenvalue, and a branch cut along the continuous eigenvalues.

- We can analytically continuous $\hat{G}_+(z)$ across the positive real axis, 'pushing aside' the branch cut to reach the second Riemann sheet of the resolvent. In this case we can encounter additional singularities in the lower-half plane, which correspond to resonances (e.g. long-lived bound states). **(need a good example for this!)**

Example. The free particle Green's functions $G_{0\pm}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}', E)$ in three dimensions. Setting $z = E + i\epsilon$,

$$G_{0+}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}', z) = \langle \mathbf{x}|(z - H_0)^{-1}|\mathbf{x}'\rangle = \int d\mathbf{p} \, d\mathbf{p}' \, \langle \mathbf{x}|\mathbf{p}\rangle\langle \mathbf{p}| \frac{1}{z - H_0} |\mathbf{p}'\rangle\langle \mathbf{p}'|\mathbf{x}'\rangle = \int \frac{d\mathbf{p}}{(2\pi\hbar)^3} \frac{e^{i\mathbf{p}\cdot(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}')/\hbar}}{z - p^2/2m}.$$

To simplify, we set $\mathbf{x}' = 0$ for simplicity, by translational invariance, let $\mathbf{p} = \hbar\mathbf{q}$, and let $z = E + i\epsilon = \hbar^2 w^2/2m$ for a complex wavenumber w (so that w is the first quadrant), giving

$$G_{0+}(\mathbf{x}, z) = -\frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\frac{2m}{\hbar^2}\int d\mathbf{q}\,\frac{e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{x}}}{q^2 - w^2} = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2}\frac{2m}{\hbar^2}\frac{i}{x}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dq\,\frac{q e^{iqx}}{(q-w)(q+w)}$$

where we performed the angular integration. To do the final integral, we close the contour in the upper-half plane, picking up the $q = w$ pole. Then

$$G_{0+}(\mathbf{x}, z) = -\frac{1}{4\pi}\frac{2m}{\hbar^2}\frac{e^{iwx}}{x}.$$

The incoming Green's function is similar, but now we choose the branch of the square root so that w lies in the fourth quadrant, so we pick up the $q = -w$ pole instead, giving e^{-iwx}. Converting back to wavenumbers, we have

$$G_{0\pm}(\mathbf{x}, E) = -\frac{1}{4\pi}\frac{2m}{\hbar^2}\begin{cases} e^{\pm ikx}/x, & E \geq 0, \\ e^{-\kappa x}/x, & E \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

where the quantities $k, \kappa \sim \sqrt{\pm E}$ are all real and positive. By taking this choice of branches, we have ensured that $G_{0\pm}$ is continuous across the negative real axis, but as a result it is discontinuous across the positive real axis, as expected.

12.4   The Lippmann–Schwinger Equation

Green's functions provide a powerful general formalism for scattering problems. Below we focus on potential scattering, though the same techniques work in many contexts, such as field theories.

- We are interested in solutions to the driven time-independent Schrodinger equation

$$(E - H_0)\psi(\mathbf{x}) = V(\mathbf{x})\psi(\mathbf{x})$$

where $E > 0$, and have shown that solutions can be written as

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) = \phi(\mathbf{x}) + \int d\mathbf{x}'\, G_0(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}', E)V(\mathbf{x}')\psi(\mathbf{x}')$$

where $\phi(\mathbf{x})$ solves the homogeneous equation (i.e. free particle with energy E).

- Since we are interested in scattering solutions, we take the outgoing Green's function G_{0+} and let the homogeneous solution be an incoming plane wave $|\phi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle = |\mathbf{k}\rangle$, which satisfies $E = \hbar^2 k^2/2m$. This yields the Lippmann–Schwinger equation. In terms of kets, it reads

$$|\psi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle = |\phi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle + \hat{G}_{0+}(E)V|\psi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle$$

We add the subscript $\mathbf{k}$ to emphasize that the solution depends on the choice of $\mathbf{k}$, not just on E, as it tells us which direction the particles are launched in. In terms of wavefunctions,

$$\psi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}) = \phi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}) - \frac{1}{4\pi}\frac{2m}{\hbar^2}\int d\mathbf{x}'\,\frac{e^{ik|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|}}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|}V(\mathbf{x}')\psi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}').$$

- There are many variations on the Lippmann–Schwinger equation. For example, in proton-proton scattering V is the sum of a Coulomb potential and the nuclear potential. Then we might include the Coulomb term in H_0, so that the incoming wave would be a Coulomb solution of positive energy, and we would use Green's functions for the Coulomb potential.

- Now suppose that the potential cuts off after a finite radius, and we observe the scattering at a much larger radius $r = |\mathbf{x}|$. Then $x' \ll r$ in the integral above, and we may expand in a power series in x'/r, throwing away all terms falling faster than $1/r$, giving

$$\psi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}) \approx \phi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}) - \frac{1}{4\pi} \frac{2m}{\hbar^2} \frac{e^{ikr}}{r} \int d\mathbf{x}' \, e^{-i\mathbf{k}' \cdot \mathbf{x}'} V(\mathbf{x}') \psi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}').$$

  In particular, this matches the 'incident plus scattered' form of the wavefunction postulated in the beginning of this section, with scattering amplitude

$$f(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}') = -\frac{(2\pi)^{3/2}}{4\pi} \frac{2m}{\hbar^2} \int d\mathbf{x}' \, e^{-i\mathbf{k}' \cdot \mathbf{x}'} V(\mathbf{x}') \psi_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{x}') = -\frac{4\pi^2 m}{\hbar^2} \langle \mathbf{k}' | V | \psi_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle.$$

  Thus we have proven that the wavefunction must have such a form in general. We can also prove a similar statement for rapidly decaying potentials, but it fails for the Coulomb potential.

- We can also use the incoming Green's function; this describes a solution where waves come in from infinity and combine to come out as a plane wave. Since the outgoing solution is much more realistic, we focus on it and may leave the plus sign implicit.

- Finally, when $E < 0$, we get an integral expression for bound states,

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) = -\frac{1}{4\pi} \frac{2m}{\hbar^2} \int d\mathbf{x}' \, \frac{e^{-\kappa|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{x}'|}}{|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'|} V(\mathbf{x}') \psi(\mathbf{x}')$$

  where there is no homogeneous term, because free particle solutions do not decay at infinity. Solutions only exist for discrete values of E. There is also no choice in Green's function as both agree on the negative real axis.

We can use the Lippmann–Schwinger equation to derive a perturbation series for scattering, called the Born series.

- We may rewrite the Lippmann–Schwinger equation in the form

$$|\mathbf{k}\rangle = (1 - G_{0+}(E)V)|\psi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle$$

  which has the formal solution

$$|\psi_{\mathbf{k}}\rangle = \Omega_+(E)|\mathbf{k}\rangle, \quad \Omega_+(E) = (1 - G_{0+}(E)V)^{-1}$$

  where $\Omega_+(E)$ is called the Moller scattering operator. Similarly we may define an incoming form $\Omega_-(E)$ and a general operator $\Omega(z)$ with complex energy and

$$\Omega(z) = (1 - G_0(z)V)^{-1}, \quad \Omega_\pm(E) = \lim_{\epsilon \to 0} \Omega(E \pm i\epsilon).$$

- Expanding in a series in V gives the Born series,

$$\Omega(z) = 1 + G_0(z)V + G_0(z)VG_0(z)V + \ldots$$

  which explicitly gives

$$|\psi_\mathbf{k}\rangle = |\mathbf{k}\rangle + G_{0+}(E)V|\mathbf{k}\rangle + G_{0+}(E)VG_{0+}(E)V|\mathbf{k}\rangle + \ldots.$$

  Substituting this into the expression for the scattering amplitude gives

$$f(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}') = -\frac{4\pi^2 m}{\hbar^2}\left[\langle\mathbf{k}'|V|\mathbf{k}\rangle + \langle\mathbf{k}'|VG_{0+}(E)V|\mathbf{k}\rangle + \ldots\right].$$

  When we truncate these series at V^n, we get the nth Born approximation. The Born series can also be derived by plugging the Lippmann–Schwinger equation into itself.

- The first Born approximation recovers our first-order result from time-dependent perturbation theory: the scattering amplitude is proportional to the Fourier transform of the potential. In general, the Dyson series (from time-dependent perturbation theory) is very similar to the Born series. They both expand in powers of V, but in the time/energy domain respectively.

- We can also phrase the results in terms of the exact Green's operator

$$G(z) = \frac{1}{z - H}.$$

  Playing around and suppressing the z argument, we have

$$G = G_0 + G_0 V G = G_0 + G V G_0$$

  which are Lippmann–Schwinger equations for G. This gives the exact Green's function as a series in the number of scatterings off the potential.

- By playing around some more, we find

$$\Omega = 1 + GV, \quad |\psi_\mathbf{k}\rangle = (1 + GV)|\mathbf{k}\rangle.$$

  In this picture, a scattering process occurs through an initial scattering, then propagation by the exact Green's function.

Example. We show the scattering states $|\psi_\mathbf{k}\rangle$ are orthonormal using Green's functions. We have

$$\langle\psi_{\mathbf{k}'}|\psi_\mathbf{k}\rangle = \langle\psi_{\mathbf{k}'}|\mathbf{k}\rangle + \langle\psi_{\mathbf{k}'}|G_+(E)V|\mathbf{k}\rangle = \langle\psi_{\mathbf{k}'}|\mathbf{k}\rangle + \lim_{\epsilon\to 0}\frac{1}{E + i\epsilon - E'}\langle\psi_{\mathbf{k}'}|V|\mathbf{k}\rangle$$

where $E' = \hbar^2 k'^2/2m$. Next, using the Lippmann–Schwinger equation on the first factor,

$$\langle\psi_{\mathbf{k}'}|\mathbf{k}\rangle = \langle\mathbf{k}'|\mathbf{k}\rangle + \langle\psi_{\mathbf{k}'}|VG_{0-}(E')|\mathbf{k}\rangle = \langle\mathbf{k}'|\mathbf{k}\rangle + \lim_{\epsilon\to 0}\frac{1}{E' - i\epsilon - E}\langle\psi_{\mathbf{k}'}|V|\mathbf{k}\rangle.$$

Then the extra terms cancel, giving $\langle\psi_{\mathbf{k}'}|\psi_\mathbf{k}\rangle = \langle\mathbf{k}'|\mathbf{k}\rangle = \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}')$. The completeness relation is

$$\sum_{n\alpha}|n\alpha\rangle\langle n\alpha| + \int d\mathbf{k}\,|\psi_\mathbf{k}\rangle\langle\psi_\mathbf{k}| = 1$$

where the first term includes bound states, which are orthogonal to all scattering states.

12.5   The S-Matrix

We introduce the S-matrix using the simple example of one-dimensional potential scattering.

- With an incoming right-moving wave, we may write the scattered wave as

$$\psi_R(x) \sim \begin{cases} e^{ikx} + re^{-ikx} & x \to -\infty, \\ te^{ikx} & x \to +\infty. \end{cases}$$

  Then $R = |r|^2$ and $T = |t|^2$ give the probability of reflection and transmission, as can be seen by computing the probability fluxes. Conservation of probability requires $R + T = 1$.

- Similarly, we can use left-moving waves, and define

$$\psi_L(x) \sim \begin{cases} t'e^{-ikx} & x \to -\infty, \\ e^{-ikx} + r'e^{ikx} & x \to +\infty. \end{cases}$$

- Since the potential is real, if ψ is a solution, then ψ^* is as well. This gives the identities

$$t' = t, \quad r' = -\frac{r^*t}{t^*}$$

  so that $|r| = |r'|$. These results also appear in classical scattering as a result of time-reversal symmetry. The same symmetry is acting here, as time reversal is complex conjugation.

- As an explicit example, the finite well potential $V(x) = -V_0\theta(x - a/2)\theta(x + a/2)$ has

$$r = \frac{(k^2 - q^2)\sin(qa)e^{-ika}}{(q^2 + k^2)\sin(qa) + 2iqk\cos(qa)}, \quad t = \frac{2iqke^{-ika}}{(q^2 + k^2)\sin(qa) + 2iqk\cos(qa)}, \quad q^2 = \frac{2mV_0}{\hbar^2} + k^2.$$

  We note that there is perfect reflection for low k, no reflection for high k, and also perfect transmission for k so that $\sin(qa) = 0$, i.e. resonant transmission. We also note that $r = r'$. This follows from parity symmetry, as we'll see below.

- We summarize our data in terms of the S-matrix,

$$\begin{pmatrix} \psi_R \\ \psi_L \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} I_R \\ I_L \end{pmatrix} + S\begin{pmatrix} O_R \\ O_L \end{pmatrix}, \quad S = \begin{pmatrix} t & r \\ r' & t' \end{pmatrix}$$

  where I_R is an incoming right-moving wave, O_L is an outgoing left-moving wave, and so on. Applying our identities above shows that S is unitary.

Next, we consider a general parity-symmetric potential $V(x) = V(-x)$.

- It is useful to switch to a parity basis,

$$I_+(x) = e^{-ik|x|}, \quad I_-(x) = \text{sign}(x)e^{-ik|x|}, \quad O_+(x) = e^{ik|x|}, \quad O_-(x) = -\text{sign}(x)e^{ik|x|}$$

  which is related by the change of basis

$$\begin{pmatrix} I_+ \\ I_- \end{pmatrix} = M\begin{pmatrix} I_R \\ I_L \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} O_+ \\ O_- \end{pmatrix} = M\begin{pmatrix} O_R \\ O_L \end{pmatrix}, \quad M = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

  Applying this transformation, the S-matrix in the parity basis is $S^P = MSM^{-1}$.

- For a parity-symmetric potential, $r = r'$ because $\psi_R(x) = \psi_L(-x)$. Then S^P simplifies to

$$S^P = \begin{pmatrix} S_{++} & \\ & S_{--} \end{pmatrix}, \quad S_{++} = t + r, \quad S_{--} = t - r.$$

The off-diagonal elements are zero because parity is conserved.

- Combining our identities shows that S_{++} and S_{--} are phases,

$$S_{++} = e^{2i\delta_+(k)}, \quad S_{--} = e^{2i\delta_-(k)}.$$

This is analogous to how we distilled three-dimensional central force scattering into a set of phases in the partial wave decomposition.

- The S-matrix can also detect bound states. Since the algebra used to derive $r(k)$ and $t(k)$ never assumed that k was real, the same expressions hold for general complex k. Consider a pure imaginary wavenumber $k = i\lambda$ with even parity,

$$\lim_{|x| \to \infty} \psi_+(x) = I_+(x) + S_{++}O_+(x), \quad I_+(x) = e^{\lambda|x|}, \quad O_+(x) = e^{-\lambda|x|}.$$

It looks like there can't be a bound state solution here, since the I_+ component diverges at infinity. The trick is to rewrite this as

$$\lim_{|x| \to \infty} \psi_+(x) = S_{++}^{-1} I_+(x) + O_+(x)$$

which gives a valid bound state as long as $S_{++}^{-1} = 0$, which corresponds to a pole in S_{++}. That is, we can identify bound states from poles in S-matrix elements! (The same reasoning works in the original left/right basis, though there are more terms.)

- Some careful algebra shows that

$$S_{++}(k) = -e^{-ika} \frac{q \tan(qa/2) - ik}{q \tan(qa/2) + ik}$$

which shows that bound states of even parity occur when $\lambda = q \tan(qa/2)$, a familiar result. We can recover the bound state energy from $E = -\hbar^2 \lambda^2 / 2m$.